



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

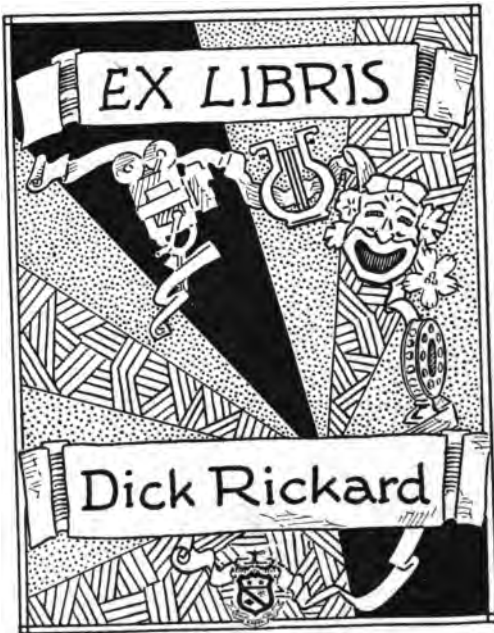
### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





Larry Ollivier



This One



P51S-R24-S7AR



# **Masterpieces of the English Drama**



**GENERAL EDITOR**  
**FELIX E. SCHELLING**

## MASTERPIECES OF THE ENGLISH DRAMA

FELIX E. SCHELLING, Ph.D., LL.D., GENERAL EDITOR

---

CHRISTOPHER MARLOWE: *Tamburlaine* (both parts).  
*Doctor Faustus. The Jew of Malta. Edward the Second.*  
With an Introduction by William Lyon Phelps, Professor  
of English Literature, Yale University.

GEORGE CHAPMAN: *All Fools. Eastward Ho. Bussy  
D'Ambois. The Revenge of Bussy D'Ambois.* With an  
Introduction by Havelock Ellis, editor of *The Mermaid  
Series* of English Dramatists, etc.

FRANCIS BEAUMONT AND JOHN FLETCHER: *The  
Maid's Tragedy. Philaster. The Faithful Shepherdess.  
Bonduca.* Edited by Felix E. Schelling, Professor of Eng-  
lish Literature, University of Pennsylvania.

BEN JONSON: *Every Man in His Humour. Volpone. Epi-  
cane. The Alchemist.* With an Introduction by Ernest  
Rhys, editor of Dekker's Plays, etc.

THOMAS MIDDLETON: *Michaelmas Term. A Trick to  
Catch the Old One. A Fair Quarrel. The Changeling.*  
Edited by Martin W. Sampson, Professor of English Liter-  
ature, Cornell University.

PHILIP MASSINGER: *The Roman Actor. The Maid of  
Honour. A New Way to Pay Old Debts. Believe as You  
List.* Edited by Lucius A. Sherman, Dean of the Graduate  
College and Head Professor of English Literature, Univer-  
sity of Nebraska.

JOHN WEBSTER AND CYRIL TOURNEUR: *The White  
Devil. The Duchess of Malfi. Appius and Virginia. —  
The Revenger's Tragedy.* With an Introduction by Ashley  
H. Thorndike, Professor of English, Columbia University.

WILLIAM CONGREVE: *The Double-Dealer. The Way  
of the World. Love for Love. The Mourning Bride.* With  
an Introduction by William Archer, editor of Farquhar's  
plays, etc.

OLIVER GOLDSMITH AND RICHARD BRINSLEY  
SHERIDAN: *The Good-natured Man. She Stoops to  
Conquer. — The Rivals. The School for Scandal. The  
Critic.* Edited by Louis A. Strauss and Isaac N. Demmon,  
of the Department of English, University of Michigan.







**MEMORIAL TO CHRISTOPHER MARLOWE  
AT HIS BIRTHPLACE, CANTERBURY**

Masterpieces of the English Drama

# CHRISTOPHER MARLOWE

WITH INTRODUCTION BY  
WILLIAM LYON PHELPS  
YALE UNIVERSITY



NEW YORK · CINCINNATI · CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

**COPYRIGHT, 1912, BY  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.**

**ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.**

---

**MARLOWE.**

**W. P. 5**

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	I
TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT. PART THE FIRST . . . . .	27
TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT. PART THE SECOND . . . . .	103
THE TRAGICAL HISTORY OF DOCTOR FAUSTUS . . . . .	181
THE JEW OF MALTA . . . . .	231
EDWARD THE SECOND . . . . .	313
NOTES . . . . .	406
GLOSSARY . . . . .	423





## MASTERPIECES OF THE ENGLISH DRAMA

FELIX E. SCHELLING, Ph.D., LL.D., GENERAL EDITOR

---

CHRISTOPHER MARLOWE: *Tamburlaine* (both parts). *Doctor Faustus*. *The Jew of Malta*. *Edward the Second*. With an Introduction by William Lyon Phelps, Professor of English Literature, Yale University.

GEORGE CHAPMAN: *All Fools*. *Eastward Ho*. *Bussy D'Ambois*. *The Revenge of Bussy D'Ambois*. With an Introduction by Havelock Ellis, editor of *The Mermaid Series of English Dramatists*, etc.

FRANCIS BEAUMONT AND JOHN FLETCHER: *The Maid's Tragedy*. *Philaster*. *The Faithful Shepherdess*. *Bonduca*. Edited by Felix E. Schelling, Professor of English Literature, University of Pennsylvania.

BEN JONSON: *Every Man in His Humour*. *Volpone*. *Epicæne*. *The Alchemist*. With an Introduction by Ernest Rhys, editor of *Dekker's Plays*, etc.

THOMAS MIDDLETON: *Michaelmas Term*. *A Trick to Catch the Old One*. *A Fair Quarrel*. *The Changeling*. Edited by Martin W. Sampson, Professor of English Literature, Cornell University.

PHILIP MASSINGER: *The Roman Actor*. *The Maid of Honour*. *A New Way to Pay Old Debts*. *Believe as You List*. Edited by Lucius A. Sherman, Dean of the Graduate College and Head Professor of English Literature, University of Nebraska.

JOHN WEBSTER AND CYRIL TOURNEUR: *The White Devil*. *The Duchess of Malfi*. *Appius and Virginia*. — *The Revenger's Tragedy*. With an Introduction by Ashley H. Thorndike, Professor of English, Columbia University.

WILLIAM CONGREVE: *The Double-Dealer*. *The Way of the World*. *Love for Love*. *The Mourning Bride*. With an Introduction by William Archer, editor of *Farquhar's plays*, etc.

OLIVER GOLDSMITH AND RICHARD BRINSLEY SHERIDAN: *The Good-natured Man*. *She Stoops to Conquer*. — *The Rivals*. *The School for Scandal*. *The Critic*. Edited by Louis A. Strauss and Isaac N. Demmon, of the Department of English, University of Michigan.







# **Masterpieces of the English Drama**



**GENERAL EDITOR**  
**FELIX E. SCHELLING**

## MASTERPIECES OF THE ENGLISH DRAMA

FELIX E. SCHELLING, Ph.D., LL.D., GENERAL EDITOR

---

CHRISTOPHER MARLOWE: *Tamburlaine* (both parts). *Doctor Faustus*. *The Jew of Malta*. *Edward the Second*. With an Introduction by William Lyon Phelps, Professor of English Literature, Yale University.

GEORGE CHAPMAN: *All Fools*. *Eastward Ho*. *Bussy D'Ambois*. *The Revenge of Bussy D'Ambois*. With an Introduction by Havelock Ellis, editor of *The Mermaid Series* of English Dramatists, etc.

FRANCIS BEAUMONT AND JOHN FLETCHER: *The Maid's Tragedy*. *Philaster*. *The Faithful Shepherdess*. *Bonduca*. Edited by Felix E. Schelling, Professor of English Literature, University of Pennsylvania.

BEN JONSON: *Every Man in His Humour*. *Volpone*. *Epicæne*. *The Alchemist*. With an Introduction by Ernest Rhys, editor of Dekker's Plays, etc.

THOMAS MIDDLETON: *Michaelmas Term*. *A Trick to Catch the Old One*. *A Fair Quarrel*. *The Changeling*. Edited by Martin W. Sampson, Professor of English Literature, Cornell University.

PHILIP MASSINGER: *The Roman Actor*. *The Maid of Honour*. *A New Way to Pay Old Debts*. *Believe as You List*. Edited by Lucius A. Sherman, Dean of the Graduate College and Head Professor of English Literature, University of Nebraska.

JOHN WEBSTER AND CYRIL TOURNEUR: *The White Devil*. *The Duchess of Malfi*. *Appius and Virginia*. — *The Revenger's Tragedy*. With an Introduction by Ashley H. Thorndike, Professor of English, Columbia University.

WILLIAM CONGREVE: *The Double-Dealer*. *The Way of the World*. *Love for Love*. *The Mourning Bride*. With an Introduction by William Archer, editor of Farquhar's plays, etc.

OLIVER GOLDSMITH AND RICHARD BRINSLEY SHERIDAN: *The Good-natured Man*. *She Stoops to Conquer*. — *The Rivals*. *The School for Scandal*. *The Critic*. Edited by Louis A. Strauss and Isaac N. Demmon, of the Department of English, University of Michigan.



source of the drama *Tamburlaine*. The details are largely the same; the cage, the crumbs of bread, the scraps of meat, and the title, Scourge of God, are all in the original.

It is difficult to speak calmly of this tremendous ten-act tragedy. If its author exceeded all bounds of restraint, the critics from that day to this have unconsciously followed his example. To some it is wisdom, to others foolishness; but both those who condemn and those who praise have drawn heavily on their stock of adjectives. Lamb did not take it seriously; but Swinburne in writing of it had one of his frequent fits of ecstasy. The play of course shows no regard for dramatic structure. There is no development, either of plot or of character; there might as well have been a hundred acts as ten. As some one has said of Hauptmann, the play does not end, it quits.

But the salient virtue of this drama, apart from its superb diction, is that we have, for the first time in English tragedy, one grand, consistent, unforgettable character. We do not ask of romantic heroes, either in Cooper or in Shakespeare, that they shall resemble actual life. All we demand is that they make a permanent impression on the imagination. This *Tamburlaine* assuredly does. No one who has ever once read the play can by any possibility forget the protagonist. He is the incarnation of the spirit of aspiration — the spirit of Marlowe, and the spirit of the Elizabethan age. He revels in the intoxication of boundless power. His swelling confidence hypnotizes his friends, and paralyses his enemies. His most bitter foes feel the resistless fascination of the man. Some of the best things said about him are uttered by his

antagonists. Tamburlaine trusts no earthly or divine agent; his God is himself.

His passionate love for Zenocrate is perfectly natural, and not in the least inconsistent. His wild pagan nature has its one ideal side — *beauty*. Of beauty in the abstract he speaks in language too familiar to quote, but which Shelley or Keats might have envied. Now beauty in the concrete, beauty incarnate, appears in the fair person of Zenocrate, and the strong man worships. Their marriage is an ideal union, strength and beauty; and it is easy to understand how Zenocrate falls under the spell of the man's dominant power, and returns his love with constant devotion.

There is no real humour in the drama, but there is terrible irony. Tamburlaine treats his victims as the cat handles the mouse. His mock courtesy is more awful than his positive cruelty. But there is a far deeper irony than this, and it is here that the drama ceases to be merely a resplendent romance; at this point it reaches the very basis of human tragedy, for it represents nothing less than the irony of life. So far as I know, this appears here for the first time in English drama. Some one has defined happiness as "freedom from limitations." Tamburlaine, drunken with success, believes that he has attained this liberty. The death of Zenocrate bewilders as much as it grieves him. And finally he, too, must yield to a foe stronger than himself. The advance of death is a tremendous shock to his aspiring heart; and he realizes, as other conquerors have realized, that instead of controlling fate he is its plaything. After all, he has his tether, and he has reached the end of it. Death is the only "check to egotism."

The passion of this play sweeps the reader along with it now, much as it did in the sixteenth century. Some one has compared the perusal of it to a debauch of mental passion, leaving the reader weak and exhausted. It was written hot from the brain, and is evidently full of those magnificent impromptus so frequent in Shakespeare. The late Richard Holt Hutton used to speak of the "sudden solemnizing power" of Browning — how after a long pedestrian passage, suddenly, without any warning or premonition to the reader, the great poet irresistibly carries us off into the ether. Such power is also peculiarly characteristic of the author of *Tamburlaine*. In the midst of sheer nonsense or vain bombast comes a passage that salutes our ears with strains divine.

In Elizabethan times, England knew France, Italy, and Spain very well. But Germany was an undiscovered country.<sup>1</sup> The English of 1540 and the English of 1590 looked at Germany from widely different view-points. In the early part of the century, the great German name was Luther, and the word Germany signified Protestantism. Then as the influence of the Renaissance grew and prevailed (and it should never be forgotten that the Renaissance was pagan, both in spirit and in power), and as England grew in military greatness and began to triumph on land and sea, Germany rather lost its religious significance, and assumed a new and literary interest unlike anything it had possessed before.

<sup>1</sup> The next few paragraphs owe much to Professor C. H. Herford's admirable book, *Studies in the Literary Relations of England and Germany* (1886). It is a model of what such a work should be.

In the latter part of the century, the word that Germany expressed in England was *mystery*; partly because it was so little known, partly because it had produced famous physicians who had already become legendary figures — Paracelsus, Faust, and others. To the Elizabethan dramatists Germany came to be necessarily associated with magic. For news of alchemy, astrology, sorcery, and all specimens of the black art, Englishmen naturally looked toward Germany. A twilight air of mystery enveloped the region of the Rhine.

Meanwhile England in a certain degree lost the respect she had entertained for German Protestantism, for England was now the great champion of the Reformation; and in civilization, colonial reach, political, naval, and military power England felt herself to be superior to her Teutonic neighbour. Travellers, statesmen, and serious students rather neglected Germany, and devoted themselves to France and Italy, where they thought to learn something. Thus actual political events in Germany do not appear in the Elizabethan drama with anything like the frequency of French.

The literary interest taken in Germany was of a different order, and proved to be fruitful. Strange and startling tales came over the North Sea. These were often made into "news-sheets" by enterprising journalists, and in this fashion hawked about the streets of London. Fantastic enough some of these sounded. Mr. Herford gives a number of illustrations:

A Bloody Tragedy Acted by Five Jesuits on Sixteen Young German Frows.

Account of Executions of Two Hundred and Fifty Witches.



Strange Sight of the Sun and the Elements at Basel.  
History of a Fasting Girl.

True Discourse of One Stubbe Peter, a Most Wicked Sorcerer, who in Likeness of a Wolf Committed Many Murders.

These are fair examples, and we see that they are somewhat similar to the subjects exploited in the yellow journalism of the twentieth century.

But the single greatest contribution that Germany made to literary England at this time — how great no one then dreamed — was the legend of Faust. Dr. John Faust was a real person, who flourished in the same century as Marlowe. He was a rather cheap medical quack, who lived about 1530.<sup>1</sup> Strange stories grew about him, and after his death they rolled along with the cumulative power of a snow-ball.

The relation between Marlowe's play, *The Tragical History of Doctor Faustus*, and its original source, is full of unsolved and apparently insoluble problems. The drama was not entered on the Stationers' Books till 1601, and the first known edition is dated 1604, with the inscription on the title-page: "Written by Ch. Marl." But this was eleven years after Marlowe's death. Now the story of Faust had not appeared in book form until 1587, when the so-called *Faustbuch*, which seems to be the source of Marlowe's play, was published in Germany. The first known edition of an English translation is in 1592, although that date on the title-page may mean 1591. It is assumed that Marlowe's play was acted in 1588 or 1589; but, as

<sup>1</sup> See A. W. Ward's scholarly and voluminous Introduction to his joint edition of *Faustus* and *Friar Bacon and Friar Bungay* (third edition, 1892). He has, however, silently expurgated the text.

a matter of fact, nobody knows. It is also assumed that Marlowe knew no German, and therefore founded his play on the English translation of the *Faustbuch*; and in order to account for this, many scholars further assume that there was an earlier edition of the English translation, and that this earlier edition appeared shortly after 1587 and is now lost. If we possessed this unknown book, and possessed also some definite knowledge as to the first performance of the English play, we should be within the limits of knowledge instead of in the fog of conjecture. The "earliest known reference" to the presentation of the play occurs in Henslowe, by which we learn that it was acted September thirtieth, 1594.

But whether the date of the composition of Marlowe's *Faustus* be 1589 or 1592, he has the credit of having produced the first play in any language on this immortal theme; and the short time (whatever theory we adopt) that intervened between the appearance of the *Faustbuch* in Germany and the play in England is nothing less than remarkable. Marlowe must have instantly perceived the splendid dramatic possibilities of the story, for he made out of them, notwithstanding all crudities and blemishes, a dramatic masterpiece.

It is not at all fair to Marlowe to compare the imperfect text of his hastily composed *Faustus* with the *Faust* of Goethe. The former was written by a young man with scarcely any literary background. Goethe had all the leisure of ease and mature years, with two centuries of culture behind him. After all, Marlowe's character of *Faustus* is essentially childish; he longs for magic power, like a boy who has read the *Arabian Nights*. Goethe's hero longs for life, which he has

missed, life with all its variety of experience. And into his mouth Goethe put the thoughts of one of the greatest literary geniuses that the world has seen since the death of Shakespeare. The qualities that win our admiration and respect for Marlowe's drama are the thrilling intensity of the climax, which in other hands might have been absurd, the wonderful height of pure poetry reached in certain passages, and the extraordinary conception of Mephistopheles. As a boy in Canterbury, Marlowe had in all probability seen representations of the devil on the local stage, for the mysteries and moralities were not extinct; he was of course familiar with the devil of Puritan imagination, and of the conception of hell as a definite place of fire. But instead of making Mephistopheles a grotesque bugaboo, compounded of mirth and horror, he made him a spirit of sombre melancholy, tortured with the eternal memory of his lost estate. And the geography of hell shows that Marlowe was in advance of his time.

"Hell hath no limits, nor is circumscribed  
In one self place: for where we are is hell,  
And where hell is there must we ever be."

That the miracles of one age are the commonplaces of another is curiously shown in this drama. The Duchess, on being requested to demand an illustration of the supernatural power of Faustus, asks what to Elizabethan minds was an impossible thing — grapes in January. Mephistopheles is gone only for a moment, and returns with the desired fruit; and in reply to the Duke's amazed inquiry, Faustus explains that although it is winter here it is summer in certain

parts of the world, and "by means of a swift spirit" the grapes are brought.

The final awful soliloquy of Faustus and the terrific climax of the play raise a rather interesting question in art. Marlowe's reputation in his own time was that of an atheist, and it is probable that he was a defiant unbeliever. But no Puritan sermon could have exceeded in religious force and effect the depiction of Faustus's fearful struggles with conscience, and the unspeakable horror of his departure. Now, either Marlowe, like Greene, felt occasional pangs of remorse (of which, however, there is no other evidence than this play) and the last soliloquy came from his own terror-stricken heart, or his artistic temperament was so completely ascendant that he was able to treat this sinner's dissolution with precisely the same artistic aloofness with which we should describe the sufferings of Prometheus. Such an attitude toward the Christian religion at that time is, to say the least, unusual; and it would require two things, the most absolute and assured unbelief, and an extraordinary power of artistic ventriloquism.

*The Famous Tragedy of the Rich Jew of Malta* was licensed for the press on May seventeenth, 1594, but the earliest known edition is a quarto of 1633, forty years after Marlowe's death. On the title-page appears "Written by Christopher Marlo." In spite of many hypotheses and conjectures, no one knows when it was written nor when it was first acted. We know that Alleyn added greatly to his renown by his wonderful portrayal of Barabas; on the stage this Jew was largely a comic character, and wore a huge false nose. The source of the drama is unknown; there

seems to have been an earlier play on a similar subject; but as the play is lost, all conjectures built on it are of no moment. This is undoubtedly Marlowe's best acting play, as *Faustus* is perhaps his literary masterpiece. The plot is wildly improbable, like most of the works of Shakespeare; but it is steadily interesting, and crowded with action. The critics seem mostly to have decided that the first two acts are fine, and that the last three indicate a sad falling off. With this judgment I find it impossible to agree. The interest in the story is maintained steadily to the powerful and unexpected conclusion; and the climax is of that kind that has particularly delighted spectators in all ages of theatrical history, "for 'tis the sport to have the enginer Hoist with his own petar."

With reference to the literary value of *The Jew of Malta* much wordy war has been waged. Swinburne says, "Only Milton has surpassed the opening soliloquy." This is exaggerative, for Shakespeare has surpassed it fifty times, as have other English poets, including Marlowe himself. It does not compare for an instant with several passages in *Tamburlaine*, nor with the apostrophe to Helen in *Faustus*. Indeed, I think that the Jew's soliloquy at the beginning of the *second* act is poetically superior. It is interesting, however, to compare this first "key-note" speech with the opening lines of Jonson's *Volpone*, spoken also in worship of the golden calf. Jonson's verse is noble, stately, and regular; but it is carefully constructed, and smells of the lamp. Marlowe's is careless in a royally splendid way.

This drama historically has its place in the Tragedy of Blood school that runs like a red stream through

the entire course of Elizabethan drama. The Tragedy of Blood began with Kyd's *Spanish Tragedy*, and *Titus Andronicus*, powerfully affected Marlowe and Chapman, reached a climax in Webster, and an anticlimax in Ford. Not only do the majority of the dramatis personæ die violently in the works of this school, but there is usually a hired assassin who believes in crime for crime's sake. He takes a joyous and artistic delight in deeds of the most revolting nature. The scoundrel Aaron, in *Titus Andronicus*, is typical of this stock figure:

"Even now I curse the day — and yet I think  
Few come within the compass of my curse —  
Wherein I did not some notorious ill:  
As kill a man, or else devise his death;  
Ravish a maid, or plot the way to do it;  
Accuse some innocent, and forswear myself:  
Set deadly enmity between two friends:  
Make poor men's cattle break their necks:  
Set fire on barns and haystacks in the night,  
And bid the owners quench them with their tears:  
Oft have I digg'd up dead men from their graves,  
And set them upright at their dear friends' doors.  
Even when their sorrows almost were forgot:  
And on their skins, as on the bark of trees,  
Have with my knife carved in Roman letters,  
'Let not your sorrow die, though I am dead.'  
Tut, I have done a thousand dreadful things  
As willingly as one would kill a fly:  
And nothing grieves me heartily indeed,  
But that I cannot do ten thousand more."

Now Ithamore, in *The Jew of Malta*, fills this rôle acceptably; for Barabas, to test him, describes some of the playful avocations of his own leisure moments:

"As for myself, I walk abroad o' nights  
And kill sick people groaning under walls:  
Sometimes I go about and poison wells."

To which virtuous sentiments Ithamore cheerfully replies:

"One time I was an ostler in an inn,  
And in the night-time secretly would I steal  
To travellers' chambers, and there cut their throats."

The fact is, that the theatrical villain of the Tragedy of Blood had the same zest in crime that the small boy of all time has in the perpetration of practical jokes on respectable citizens.

Marlowe in this play did not scruple to appeal to the popular prejudice against Jews by representing Barabas as an hellish monster; but just as Milton made a hero out of Satan, so Marlowe created a Jew of such colossal force, both in cunning and in courage, that one feels admiration for his vast ambition and tremendous power, without any sympathy. But Marlowe apparently does not love the Christians any more than the Jews; they too are represented as devoid of truth, honour and probity. The only decent people in the play are the heathen, intentionally or not.

A comparison of *The Jew of Malta* with *The Merchant of Venice* is even more damaging to Marlowe's reputation than the comparison of *Faustus* with Goethe's masterpiece; for Shakespeare wrote his play under conditions precisely similar to Marlowe's, and not far from the same time. The fundamental difference in the result is that whereas Barabas is an impossible monster, Shylock is wonderfully human. I do not believe for a moment that Shakespeare sym-

pathized with Shylock, or meant his audience to do so. I feel certain that the downfall of the man was greeted with tremendous applause. But none the less, he is a real character, a sharply defined individual, not a racial caricature; and Shakespeare allows him to speak cleverly and powerfully in his own defence, in the method later adopted by Browning. Where Shakespeare excels Marlowe is in his vastly superior power of psychological analysis, to say nothing of the glorious poetry of the conclusion, which ends in beautiful moonlight and harmonious laughter in Portia's gardens. Shakespeare had one artistic virtue simply unknown to Marlowe — moderation. In the felicitous words of William Watson:

“Your Marlowe's page I close, my Shakespeare's ope.  
How welcome — after gong and cymbal's din —  
The continuity, the long slow slope  
And vast curves of the gradual violin!”

Marlowe's influence on Shakespeare was in all probability very great; but it is interesting to cite a single famous passage from the latter poet, where it is easy to see which are the lines written in the Marlowesque and which those in the true Shakespearian manner.

“Where should Othello go?

Now, how dost thou look now? O ill-starr'd wench!  
Pale as thy smock! when we shall meet at compt,  
This look of thine will hurl my soul from heaven,  
And fiends will snatch at it. Cold, cold, my girl?  
Even like thy chastity. —  
O cursed, cursed slave! — Whip me, ye devils,  
From the possession of this heavenly sight!  
Blow me about in winds! roast me in sulphur!  
Wash me in steep-down gulfs of liquid fire!”



There are certain striking similarities in the three plays, *Tamburlaine*, *Faustus*, and *The Jew of Malta*. In all three, the emphasis is laid on one character; the others are merely sketched in. Concentration on a single hero was the aim, conscious or unconscious, of the dramatist. And in each instance, this hero is the personification of some mad, devouring ambition. The living breath of aspiration vitalizes not only this chief character, but sets the whole play aglow with poetic fire. In *Tamburlaine*, the desire is for earthly power: he will bestride the narrow world like a colossus, and the petty men must walk under his huge legs, and peep about to find themselves dishonourable graves. The critics have generally agreed that the splendid speech of Tamburlaine:

“Our souls, whose faculties can comprehend  
The wondrous architecture of the world,”

ends in a lamentable anticlimax:

“Until we reach the ripest fruit of all,  
That perfect bliss and sole felicity,  
The sweet fruition of an earthly crown.”

But Tamburlaine did not think so; nor, I am convinced, did the poet. The critics seem to be completely mistaken here; for they approve of the early part of the speech, with which modern thought would sympathize, and condemn the conclusion, because it grates harshly on latter-day ears. But in the days of Queen Elizabeth and Philip II, when royalty was surrounded with the panoply of supreme majesty, was it not brave to be a king? A god was not so glorious as a king.

As in *Tamburlaine* the ambition is for earthly power, so in *Faustus* the summum bonum is *magic* — the control of time and space. In *The Jew of Malta* it is wealth, and the power that wealth brings: he does not wish to be merely a rich man:

“Fie; what a trouble ’tis to count this trash.”

He will not rest until he has everything, until he sways empires with his wealth. The richest merchants must be beggars in comparison with him.

It is a different Marlowe that we see in *Edward II*; and although the play has been extravagantly praised, I believe it to be poetically markedly inferior to the other three. It is universally assumed to have been Marlowe’s last dramatic work; but the fact is, no one knows anything definite about this important matter. We do not know when it was written, nor when it was first put on the stage. It was licensed for printing July sixth, 1593, about a month after Marlowe was slain; but the first known edition is the quarto of 1594, *The Troublesome Reign and Lamentable Death of Edward the Second, King of England: with the Tragical Fall of Proud Mortimer*. The title-page informs us that it was “written by Chri. Marlow, Gent.”

In this drama the interest is not concentrated on one character, as it was in the others: the King, the Queen, Mortimer, and Gaveston all stand out sharply, and lesser persons are not crudely set forth. But it deals with a single elemental passion, as did *Tamburlaine*, *Faustus*, and *The Jew*: this passion is *friendship*. In order to understand it, one must look upon the passion of friendship from the Elizabethan point of view, which in this matter differs very largely from

our own. Compared to the friendships of the Elizabethan giants, our best college friendships to-day are pale. The English language has never exceeded in passion the lines of Shakespeare's sonnets; and most of the best ones were written to a man, which, when first discovered by very young students, invariably causes a painful shock. Not infrequently Elizabethans valued their friends higher than their wives, or any of the ties of blood. If one doubts this, read the words of Melantius in *The Maid's Tragedy*.

As Tamburlaine lost his life in the passion for earthly power, as Faustus lost his soul in the passion for forbidden magic, as the Jew died a horrible death in the pursuit of wealth, so Edward loses his character, his position, his influence, his queen, and finally his life, in the vain passion of friendship. For Marlowe here shows the same terrible irony displayed in his other works; the King, who longs for Gaveston's friendship, believing that in this one instance he is beloved as a man rather than as a king, is cruelly deceived; Gaveston's love is founded wholly on selfishness. The heart-hunger of royal personages, who so seldom hear the language of frankness and sincerity, has been repeatedly used as a motive in literature; we have only to remember Browning's *In a Balcony* and Daudet's *Les Rois en Exil*. Marlowe has employed it with great power and with a closer approach to humanity than in any other drama ascribed to him. From the modern point of view, this weak king seems idiotic; but one must understand Elizabethan ideas of friendship before one can understand that it was a terrible passion, elevating and degrading like other passions; and that just as kings have been ruined by wine and

by women, so in the sixteenth century it was possible to be ruined by a friend.

King Edward is indeed a pathetic figure in Marlowe's drama, as he was in history, from the contemporary chronicles of which the dramatist probably drew his material; and it is rather strange to find Marlowe, who delighted in representing in his other protagonists the very superlative of will-power, selecting here for portrayal a man damned with indecision. It can best be accounted for by remembering what has already been so emphasized, that the King's passion was too strong for his character. His death is horrible and his last speeches are full of pathos, especially the oft-quoted one in which he compares his present squalor with his former splendour, and wishes his wife to remember the contrast. But Charles Lamb's comment on this passage, which practically all editors of Marlowe quote as though it were holy writ, is fustian and nonsense: "The death-scene of Marlowe's king moves pity and terror beyond any scene, ancient or modern, with which I am acquainted." Twenty superior scenes might be cited, but we need think for the moment only of Lear's whisper,

"Cordelia, Cordelia, stay a little."

Lamb deserves the homage of all students of the Elizabethan drama for his incomparable services in making that drama known; but his hyperbole of criticism is as absurd in this instance as is his ridiculous comparison of the death of Calantha in the *Broken Heart* to Calvary and the Cross.

*Edward II* belongs to the group of "chronicle-histories" in English dramatic literature; it was one of

the first, and ranks deservedly high. Had Marlowe lived to middle age he might have done splendid work in this field; but at his best, and if he had lived to be a hundred, he could never have written a play like *Henry IV*, for the simple reason that he has given not the slightest indication of possessing a sense of humour. And the absence of this is not merely a positive loss — it destroys, as Mr. Saintsbury has pointed out, the power of self-criticism. Marlowe had no check on his own work; like Victor Hugo and Wordsworth, he could not always tell when he was sublime and when he was something very different. Yet self-control, which was apparently lacking in Marlowe's own life and character, might have prevented his muse from soaring to the vertiginous heights reached in *Tamburlaine* and *Faustus*. The real glory of Marlowe as a poet is his boundless aspiration; we may grant that *Edward II* shows a commendable absence of the rant and bluster that sometimes disfigure his other plays; still it unfortunately exhibits also an absence of his supreme gifts as a poet. If I had to give up any one of his four great dramas, I would most willingly spare the history of the forlorn king.

Marlowe's reticence in all his plays on the subject of the love between men and women is as notable as is Stevenson's in his romances. This topic, which has been the mainspring of the drama among all nations, probably did not interest him. Possibly he was so masculine in temperament that men's ambitions and powers were enough to draw all his intellectual attention. Perhaps in his short life he had never met a good woman. He has certainly created not a single feminine character that interests us deeply, or who

seems in any complex way true to life. Sin is the basis of his dramas; he has drawn no remarkable women and created no good men.

In summing up his great contributions to the development of English drama, we find that more than any other one man he established blank verse as the medium of expression, and splendidly illustrated its fitness: he set the pace for dramatic passion: he freed England from the tyranny of pseudo-classic domination, and made the drama of our race romantic and free. Had there been no Marlowe, no one can tell what the Elizabethan stage would have been; but it probably would not have been what it is, the chief glory of English literature and the wonder of the whole world. Marlowe is not the morning star; he is the sunrise.

We hear in his plays the great voice of Elizabethan England; he represents its overweening pride, the enthusiasm of discovery and conquest, the shout of success, the sky-piercing ambition which dared God out of heaven, the limitless aspiration of passion and of intellect, and the inflexible power of an abnormally developed will. In the twentieth century, whether for good or for evil, we are much closer to the Elizabethans in temperament than any of the generations that stand between. Marlowe is a writer whom we can perfectly understand, even while we secretly realize the folly of such spiritual leadership. As a deeply thoughtful writer<sup>1</sup> of to-day has remarked: "It is by their will that we recognize the Elizabethans, by the will that drove them over the seas of passion,

<sup>1</sup> Miss M. P. Willcocks, in her admirable novel, *The Wingless Victory*.

as well as over the seas that ebb and flow with the salt tides. It is by their thoughts, so much higher than their emotions, that we know the men of the eighteenth century; and by their quick sensibility to the sting of life, the men of the nineteenth. . . . For, from a sensitive correspondence with environment our race has passed into another stage; it is marked now by a passionate desire for the mastery of life — a desire, spiritualized in the highest lives, materialized in the lowest, so to mould environment that the lives to come may be shaped to our will. It is this which accounts for the curious likeness in our to-day with that of the Elizabethans; their spirit was the untamed will, but our will moves in other paths than theirs, paths beaten for our treading by the ages between."

Such words as these are well worth reflection, for they contain profound wisdom. Tamburlaine, Faustus, and Barabas — probably Marlowe himself — were nothing more nor less than Nietzsche's Superman; and we know very well what he is and what he wants. But his influence is already on the wane; for he is not only no God, he knows less of the meaning of life than a little child.

*W. L. Phelps*

# TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT

*PART THE FIRST*





# TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT

---

## THE PROLOGUE

FROM jiggling veins of rhyming mother wits,  
And such conceits as clownage keeps in pay,<sup>a</sup>  
We'll lead you to the stately tent of war,  
Where you shall hear the Scythian Tamburlaine  
Threatening the world with high astounding terms,  
And scourging kingdoms with his conquering sword.  
View but his picture in this tragic glass,  
And then applaud his fortune as you please.

<sup>a</sup> A superior n in the text indicates a note at the end of the volume

## *DRAMATIS PERSONÆ*

**MYCETES, King of Persia.**

**COSROE, his Brother.**

**ORTYGIUS,**

**CENEUS,**

**MEANDER,**

**MENAPHON,**

**THERIDAMAS,**

} **Persian Lords and Captains.**

**TAMBURLAINE, a Scythian Shepherd.**

**TECHELLES,**

**USUMCASANE,**

} **his Followers.**

**BAJAZETH, Emperor of the Turks.**

**KING OF ARABIA.**

**KING OF FEZ.**

**KING OF MOROCCO.**

**KING OF ARGIER (Algiers).**

**SOLDAN OF EGYPT.**

**GOVERNOR OF DAMASCUS.**

**AGYDAS,**

**MAGNETES,**

} **Median Lords.**

**CAPOLIN, an Egyptian Captain.**

**PHILEMUS, a Messenger.**

**ZENOCRATE, Daughter of the Soldan of Egypt.**

**ANIPPE, her Maid.**

**ZABINA, Wife of Bajazeth.**

**EBEA, her Maid.**

**Virgins of Damascus.**

# TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT

## *PART THE FIRST*

---

### ACT THE FIRST

#### SCENE I

*Enter MYCETES, COSROE, MEANDER, THERIDAMAS,  
ORTYGIUS, CENEUS, MENAPHON, with others*

*Myc.* Brother Cosroe, I find myself aggrieved,  
Yet insufficient to express the same;  
For it requires a great and thundering speech:  
Good brother, tell the cause unto my lords;  
I know you have a better wit than I.

*Cos.* Unhappy Persia, that in former age  
Hast been the seat of mighty conquerors,  
That, in their prowess and their policies,  
Have triumphed over Afric and the bounds  
Of Europe, where the sun scarce dares appear 10  
For freezing meteors and congealèd cold,  
Now to be ruled and governed by a man  
At whose birthday Cynthia with Saturn joined,  
And Jove, the Sun, and Mercury denied  
To shed their influence in his fickle brain!  
Now Turks and Tartars shake their swords at thee,  
Meaning to mangle all thy provinces.

*Myc.* Brother, I see your meaning well enough,  
And through your planets I perceive you think  
I am not wise enough to be a king; 20

But I refer me to my noblemen  
That know my wit, and can be witnesses.  
I might command you to be slain for this:  
Meander, might I not ?

*Meand.* Not for so small a fault, my sovereign lord.

*Myc.* I mean it not, but yet I know I might;  
Yet live; yea live, Mycetes wills it so.  
Meander, thou, my faithful counsellor,  
Declare the cause of my conceivèd grief,  
Which is, God knows, about that Tamburlaine, 30  
That, like a fox in midst of harvest time,  
Doth prey upon my flocks of passengers;  
And, as I hear, doth mean to pull my plumes:  
Therefore 'tis good and meet for to be wise.

*Meand.* Oft have I heard your majesty complain  
Of Tamburlaine, that sturdy Scythian thief,  
That robs your merchants of Persepolis  
Trading by land unto the Western Isles,  
And in your confines with his lawless train 40  
Daily commits incivil outrages,  
Hoping (misled by dreaming prophecies)  
To reign in Asia, and with barbarous arms  
To make himself the monarch of the East;  
But ere he march in Asia, or display  
His vagrant ensign in the Persian fields,  
Your grace hath taken order by Theridamas,  
Charged with a thousand horse, to apprehend  
And bring him captive to your highness' throne.

*Myc.* Full true thou speak'st, and like thyself, my  
lord,  
Whom I may term a Damon for thy love: 50  
Therefore 'tis best, if so it like you all,  
To send my thousand horse incontinent  
To apprehend that paltry Scythian.  
How like you this, my honourable lords?  
Is't not a kingly resolution?

*Cos.* It cannot choose, because it comes from you.

*Myc.* Then hear thy charge, valiant Theridamas,  
The chiefest captain of Mycetes' host,  
The hope of Persia, and the very legs  
Whereon our state doth lean as on a staff, 60  
That holds us up, and foils our neighbour foes:  
Thou shalt be leader of this thousand horse,  
Whose foaming gall with rage and high disdain  
Have sworn the death of wicked Tamburlaine.  
Go frowning forth; but come thou smiling home,  
As did Sir Paris with the Grecian dame;  
Return with speed — time passeth swift away;  
Our life is frail, and we may die to-day.

*Ther.* Before the moon renew her borrowed light,  
Doubt not, my lord and gracious sovereign, 70  
But Tamburlaine and that Tartarian rout,  
Shall either perish by our warlike hands,  
Or plead for mercy at your highness' feet.

*Myc.* Go, stout Theridamas, thy words are swords,  
And with thy looks thou conquerest all thy foes;  
I long to see thee back return from thence,  
That I may view these milk-white steeds of mine  
All loaden with the heads of killèd men,  
And from their knees e'en to their hoofs below  
Besmeared with blood that makes a dainty show. 80

*Ther.* Then now, my lord, I humbly take my leave.

*Myc.* Theridamas, farewell! ten thousand times.

[*Exit* THERIDAMAS.]

Ah, Menaphon, why stay'st thou thus behind,  
When other men press forward for renown?  
Go, Menaphon, go into Scythia;  
And foot by foot follow Theridamas.

*Cos.* Nay, pray you let him stay; a greater [task]  
Fits Menaphon than warring with a thief:  
Create him prærex of all Africa,  
That he may win the Babylonians' hearts 90  
Which will revolt from Persian government,  
Unless they have a wiser king than you.

*Myc.* "Unless they have a wiser king than you."  
These are his words; Meander, set them down.

*Cos.* And add this to them — that all Asia  
Laments to see the folly of their king.

*Myc.* Well, here I swear by this my royal seat —

*Cos.* You may do well to kiss it then.

*Myc.* Embossed with silk as best beseems my state,  
To be revenged for these contemptuous words. 100

Oh, where is duty and allegiance now?

Fled to the Caspian or the Ocean main?

What shall I call thee? brother? — no, a foe;

Monster of nature! — Shame unto thy stock

That dar'st presume thy sovereign for to mock!

Meander, come: I am abused, Meander.

*[Exeunt all but COSROE and MENAPHON.]*

*Men.* How now, my lord? What, mated and  
amazed

To hear the king thus threaten like himself!

*Cos.* Ah, Menaphon, I pass not for his threats;

The plot is laid by Persian noblemen 110

And captains of the Median garrisons

To crown me Emperor of Asia:

But this it is that doth excruciate

The very substance of my vexèd soul —

To see our neighbours that were wont to quake

And tremble at the Persian monarch's name,

Now sit and laugh our regiment to scorn;

And that which might resolve me into tears,

Men from the farthest equinoctial line

Have swarmed in troops into the Eastern India, 120

Lading their ships with gold and precious stones,

And made their spoils from all our provinces.

*Men.* This should entreat your highness to rejoice,

Since Fortune gives you opportunity

To gain the title of a conqueror

By curing of this maimèd empery.

Afric and Europe bordering on your land,

And continent to your dominions,  
How easily may you, with a mighty host,  
Pass into Græcia, as did Cyrus once, 130  
And cause them to withdraw their forces home,  
Lest you subdue the pride of Christendom.

[*Trumpet within.*]

*Cos.* But, Menaphon, what means this trumpet's  
sound?

*Men.* Behold, my lord, Ortygius and the rest  
Bringing the crown to make you Emperor!

*Enter ORTYGIUS and CENEUS, with others, bearing a  
crown*

*Orty.* Magnificent and mighty Prince Cosroe,  
We, in the name of other Persian states  
And commons of the mighty monarchy,  
Present thee with the imperial diadem.

*Cen.* The warlike soldiers and the gentlemen, 140  
That heretofore have filled Persepolis  
With Afric captains taken in the field,  
Whose ransom made them march in coats of gold,  
With costly jewels hanging at their ears,  
And shining stones upon their lofty crests,  
Now living idle in the wallèd towns,  
Wanting both pay and martial discipline,  
Begin in troops to threaten civil war,  
And openly exclaim against their king:  
Therefore, to stop all sudden mutinies, 150  
We will invest your highness Emperor,  
Whereat the soldiers will conceive more joy  
Than did the Macedonians at the spoil  
Of great Darius and his wealthy host.

*Cos.* Well, since I see the state of Persia droop  
And languish in my brother's government,  
I willingly receive the imperial crown,  
And vow to wear it for my country's good,



In spite of them shall malice my estate.

*Orty.* And in assurance of desired success, 160  
We here do crown thee monarch of the East,  
Emperor of Asia and Persia;  
Great Lord of Media and Armenia;  
Duke of Africa and Albania,  
Mesopotamia and of Parthia,  
East India and the late-discovered isles;  
Chief Lord of all the wide, vast Euxine Sea,  
And of the ever-raging Caspian Lake.

*All.* Long live Cosroe, mighty Emperor!

*Cos.* And Jove may<sup>n</sup> never let me longer live 170  
Than I may seek to gratify your love,  
And cause the soldiers that thus honour me  
To triumph over many provinces!  
By whose desire of discipline in arms  
I doubt not shortly but to reign sole king,  
And with the army of Theridamas  
(Whither we presently will fly, my lords)  
To rest secure against my brother's force.

*Orty.* We knew, my lord, before we brought the  
crown,  
Intending your investion so near 180  
The residence of your despisèd brother,  
The lords would not be too exasperate  
To injury or suppress your worthy title;  
Or, if they would, there are in readiness  
Ten thousand horse to carry you from hence,  
In spite of all suspected enemies.

*Cos.* I know it well, my lord, and thank you all.

*Orty.* Sound up the trumpets then. [*Trumpets sound.*

*All.* God save the King! [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE II

*Enter TAMBURLAINE leading ZENOCRATE, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE, AGYDAS, MAGNETES, Lords, and Soldiers, laden with treasure*

*Tamb.* Come, lady, let not this appal your thoughts;  
The jewels and the treasure we have ta'en  
Shall be reserved, and you in better state,  
Than if you were arrived in Syria,  
Even in the circle of your father's arms,  
The mighty Soldan of Ægyptia.

*Zeno.* Ah, shepherd! pity my distressed plight,  
(If, as thou seem'st, thou art so mean a man,)  
And seek not to enrich thy followers  
By lawless rapine from a silly maid,  
Who, travelling with these Median lords  
To Memphis, from my uncle's country of Media,  
Where all my youth I have been governèd,  
Have passed the army of the mighty Turk,  
Bearing his privy signet and his hand  
To safe conduct us thorough Africa.

10

*Mag.* And since we have arrived in Scythia,  
Besides rich presents from the puissant Cham,  
We have his highness' letters to command  
Aid and assistance, if we stand in need.

20

*Tamb.* But now you see these letters and commands  
Are countermanded by a greater man;  
And through my provinces you must expect  
Letters of conduct from my mightiness,  
If you intend to keep your treasure safe.  
But, since I love to live at liberty,  
As easily may you get the Soldan's crown  
As any prizes out of my precinct;  
For they are friends that help to wean my state  
'Till men and kingdoms help to strengthen it,

30

And must maintain my life exempt from servitude. —  
But, tell me, madam, is your grace betrothed?

*Zeno.* I am — my lord — for so you do import.

*Tamb.* I am a lord, for so my deeds shall prove:

And yet a shepherd by my parentage.

But, lady, this fair face and heavenly hue

Must grace his bed that conquers Asia,

And means to be a terror to the world,

Measuring the limits of his empery

By east and west, as Phoebus doth his course.

40

Lie here ye weeds that I disdain to wear!

This complete armour and this curtal-ax

Are adjuncts more beseeming Tamburlaine.

And, madam, whatsoever you esteem

Of this success and loss unvaluèd,

Both may invest you Empress of the East;

And these that seem but silly country swains

May have the leading of so great an host,

As with their weight shall make the mountains quake,

Even as when windy exhalations

50

Fighting for passage, tilt within the earth.

*Tech.* As princely lions, when they rouse themselves,

Stretching their paws, and threatening herds of beasts,

So in his armour looketh Tamburlaine.

Methinks I see kings kneeling at his feet,

And he with frowning brows and fiery looks,

Spurning their crowns from off their captive heads.

*Usum.* And making thee and me, Techelles, kings,

That even to death will follow Tamburlaine.

*Tamb.* Nobly resolved, sweet friends and followers! 60

These lords perhaps do scorn our estimates,

And think we prattle with distempered spirits;

But since they measure our deserts so mean,

That in conceit bear empires on our spears,

Affecting thoughts coequal with the clouds,

They shall be kept our forcèd followers,

Till with their eyes they view us emperors.

*Zeno.* The gods, defenders of the innocent,  
Will never prosper your intended drifts,  
That thus oppress poor friendless passengers. 70  
Therefore at least admit us liberty,  
Even as thou hopest to be eternized,  
By living Asia's mighty Emperor.

*Agyd.* I hope our ladies' treasure and our own  
May serve for ransom to our liberties:  
Return our mules and empty camels back,  
That we may travel into Syria,  
Where her betrothèd lord Alcidamas,  
Expects th' arrival of her highness' person.

*Mag.* And wheresoever we repose ourselves, 80  
We will report but well of Tamburlaine.

*Tamb.* Disdains Zenocrate to live with me?  
Or you, my lords, to be my followers?  
Think you I weigh this treasure more than you?  
Not all the gold in India's wealthy arms  
Shall buy the meanest soldier in my train.  
Zenocrate, lovelier than the love of Jove,  
Brighter than is the silver Rhodope,  
Fairer than whitest snow on Scythian hills —  
Thy person is more worth to Tamburlaine, 90  
Than the possession of the Persian crown,  
Which gracious stars have promised at my birth.  
A hundred Tartars shall attend on thee,  
Mounted on steeds swifter than Pegasus;  
Thy garments shall be made of Median silk,  
Enchased with precious jewels of mine own,  
More rich and valurous than Zenocrate's.  
With milk-white harts upon an ivory sled,  
Thou shalt be drawn amidst the frozen pools,  
And scale the icy mountains' lofty tops, 100  
Which with thy beauty will be soon resolved.  
My martial prizes with five hundred men,  
Won on the fifty-headed Volga's waves,  
Shall we all offer to Zenocrate —

And then myself to fair Zenocrate.

*Tech.* What now! — in love?

*Tamb.* Techelles, women must be flatterèd:  
But this is she with whom I am in love.

*Enter a Soldier*

*Sold.* News! news!

*Tamb.* How now — what's the matter? 110

*Sold.* A thousand Persian horsemen are at hand,  
Sent from the king to overcome us all.

*Tamb.* How now, my lords of Egypt, and Zenocrate!  
How! — must your jewels be restored again,  
And I, that triumphed so, be overcome?  
How say you, lordings — is not this your hope?

*Agyd.* We hope yourself will willingly restore them.

*Tamb.* Such hope, such fortune, have the thousand  
horse.

Soft ye, my lords, and sweet Zenocrate!  
You must be forcèd from me ere you go. 120

A thousand horsemen! — We five hundred foot! —  
An odds too great for us to stand against.  
But are they rich? — and is their armour good?

*Sold.* Their plumèd helms are wrought with beaten gold  
Their swords enamelled, and about their necks  
Hang massy chains of gold, down to the waist,  
In every part exceeding brave and rich.

*Tamb.* Then shall we fight courageously with them?  
Or look you I should play the orator?

*Tech.* No: cowards and faint-hearted runaways 130  
Look for orations when the foe is near:  
Our swords shall play the orator for us.

*Usum.* Come! let us meet them at the mountain top,  
And with a sudden and a hot alarum,  
Drive all their horses headlong down the hill.

*Tech.* Come, let us march!

*Tamb.*

Stay, ask a parley first.

*The Soldiers enter*

Open the mails, yet guard the treasure sure;  
Lay out our golden wedges to the view,  
That their reflections may amaze the Persians;  
And look we friendly on them when they come; 140  
But if they offer word or violence,  
We'll fight five hundred men-at-arms to one,  
Before we part with our possession.  
And 'gainst the general we will lift our swords,  
And either lance his greedy thirsting throat,  
Or take him prisoner, and his chain shall serve  
For manacles, till he be ransomed home.

*Tech.* I hear them come; shall we encounter them?

*Tamb.* Keep all your standings and not stir a foot,  
Myself will bide the danger of the brunt. 150

*Enter THERIDAMAS and others*

*Ther.* Where is this Scythian Tamburlaine?

*Tamb.* Whom seek'st thou, Persian? — I am Tamburlaine.

*Ther.* Tamburlaine! —

A Scythian shepherd so embellishèd,  
With nature's pride and richest furniture!  
His looks do menace Heaven and dare the gods:  
His fiery eyes are fixed upon the earth,  
As if he now devised some stratagem,  
Or meant to pierce Avernus' darksome vaults  
To pull the triple-headed dog from hell. 160

*Tamb.* Noble and mild this Persian seems to be,  
If outward habit judge the inward man.

*Tech.* His deep affections make him passionate.

*Tamb.* With what a majesty he rears his looks!  
In thee, thou valiant man of Persia,  
I see the folly of thy emperor.  
Art thou but captain of a thousand horse,

That by charàcters graven in thy brows,  
And by thy martial face and stout aspèct,  
Deserv'st to have the leading of a host! 170  
Forsake thy king, and do but join with me,  
And we will triumph over all the world;  
I hold the Fates bound fast in iron chains,  
And with my hand turn Fortune's wheel about:  
And sooner shall the sun fall from his sphere,  
Than Tamburlaine be slain or overcome.  
Draw forth thy sword, thou mighty man-at-arms,  
Intending but to raze my charmèd skin,  
And Jove himself will stretch his hand from Heaven  
To ward the blow and shield me safe from harm. 180  
See how he rains down heaps of gold in showers,  
As if he meant to give my soldiers pay!  
And as a sure and grounded argument,  
That I shall be the monarch of the East,  
He sends this Soldan's daughter rich and brave,  
To be my Queen and portly Emperess.  
If thou wilt stay with me, renownèd man,  
And lead thy thousand horse with my conduct,  
Besides thy share of this Egyptian prize,  
Those thousand horse shall sweat with martial spoil 190  
Of conquered kingdoms and of cities sacked;  
Both we will walk upon the lofty cliffs,  
And Christian merchants that with Russian stems  
Plough up huge furrows in the Caspian Sea,  
Shall vail to us, as lords of all the lake.  
Both we will reign as consuls of the earth,  
And mighty kings shall be our senators.  
Jove sometimes maskèd in a shepherd's weed,  
And by those steps that he hath scaled the Heavens  
May we become immortal like the gods. 200  
Join with me now in this my mean estate,  
(I call it mean because being yet obscure,  
The nations far removed admire me not,)  
And when my name and honour shall be spread

As far as Boreas claps his brazen wings,<sup>a</sup>  
Or fair Boötes sends his cheerful light,  
Then shalt thou be competitor with me,  
And sit with Tamburlaine in all his majesty.

*Ther.* Not Hermes, prolocutor to the gods,  
Could use persuasions more pathetic.

210

*Tamb.* Nor are Apollo's oracles more true,  
Than thou shalt find my vaunts substantial.

*Tech.* We are his friends, and if the Persian king  
Should offer present dukedoms to our state,  
We think it loss to make exchange for that  
We are assured of by our friend's success.

*Usum.* And kingdoms at the least we all expect,  
Besides the honour in assurèd conquests,  
When kings shall crouch unto our conquering swords  
And hosts of soldiers stand amazed at us;

220

When with their fearful tongues they shall confess,  
These are the men that all the world admires.

*Ther.* What strong enchantments tice my yielding  
soul!

These are resolvèd, noble Scythians:  
But shall I prove a traitor to my king?

*Tamb.* No, but the trusty friend of Tamburlaine.

*Ther.* Won with thy words, and conquered with thy  
looks,

I yield myself, my men, and horse to thee,  
To be partaker of thy good or ill,  
As long as life maintains Theridamas.

230

*Tamb.* Theridamas, my friend, take here my hand,  
Which is as much as if I swore by Heaven,  
And called the gods to witness of my vow.  
Thus shall my heart be still combined with thine  
Until our bodies turn to elements,  
And both our souls aspire celestial thrones.  
Techelles and Casane, welcome him!

*Tech.* Welcome, renownèd Persian, to us all!

*Usum.* Long may Theridamas remain with us!



*Tamb.* These are my friends, in whom I more rejoice

240

Than doth the King of Persia in his crown,  
And by the love of Pylades and Orestes,  
Whose statues we adore in Scythia,<sup>a</sup>  
Thyself and them shall never part from me  
Before I crown you kings in Asia.  
Make much of them, gentle Theridamas,  
And they will never leave thee till the death.

*Ther.* Nor thee nor them, thrice noble Tamburlaine  
Shall want my heart to be with gladness pierced,  
To do you honour and security.

250

*Tamb.* A thousand thanks, worthy Theridamas.  
And now fair madam, and my noble lords,  
If you will willingly remain with me  
You shall have honours as your merits be;  
Or else you shall be forced with slavery.

*Agyd.* We yield unto thee, happy Tamburlaine.

*Tamb.* For you then, madam, I am out of doubt.

*Zeno.* I must be pleased perforce. Wretched Zenocrate!

[*Exeunt.*

## ACT THE SECOND

### SCENE I

*Enter* COSROE, MENAPHON, ORTYGIUS, *and* CENEUS,  
*with* Soldiers

*Cos.* Thus far are we towards Theridamas,  
And valiant Tamburlaine, the man of fame,  
The man that in the forehead of his fortune  
Bears figures of renown and miracle.  
But tell me, that hast seen him, Menaphon,  
What stature wields he, and what personage?

*Men.* Of stature tall, and straightly fashionèd,  
Like his desire lift upward and divine;  
So large of limbs, his joints so strongly knit,  
Such breadth of shoulders as might mainly bear  
Old Atlas' burthen — 'twixt his manly pitch,<sup>n</sup> (*delight*)<sup>10</sup>  
A pearl, more worth than all the world, is placed,  
Wherein by curious sovereignty of art  
Are fixed his piercing instruments of sight,  
Whose fiery circles bear encompassèd  
A heaven of heavenly bodies in their spheres,  
That guides his steps and actions to the throne,  
Where honour sits invested royally:  
Pale of complexion, wrought in him with passion,  
Thirsting with sovereignty and love of arms; 20  
His lofty brows in folds do figure death,  
And in their smoothness amity and life;  
About them hangs a knot of amber hair,  
Wrappèd in curls, as fierce Achilles' was,  
On which the breath of Heaven delights to play,

Making it dance with wanton majesty. —  
His arms and fingers, long and sinewy,  
Betokening valour and excess of strength —  
In every part proportioned like the man  
Should make the world subdued to Tamburlaine. 37

*Cos.* Well hast thou portrayed in thy terms of life  
The face and personage of a wondrous man;  
Nature doth strive with Fortune and his stars  
To make him famous in accomplished worth;  
And well his merits show him to be made  
His fortune's master and the king of men,  
That could persuade at such a sudden pinch,  
With reasons of his valour and his life,  
A thousand sworn and overmatching foes.  
Then, when our powers in points of swords are joined 40  
And closed in compass of the killing bullet,  
Though strait the passage and the port be made  
That leads to palace of my brother's life,  
Proud is his fortune if we pierce it not.  
And when the princely Persian diadem  
Shall overweigh his weary witless head,  
And fall like mellowed fruit with shakes of death,  
In fair Persia, noble Tamburlaine  
Shall be my regent and remain as king.

*Orty.* In happy hour we have set the crown 50  
Upon your kingly head that seeks our honour,  
In joining with the man ordained by Heaven,  
To further every action to the best.,

*Cen.* He that with shepherds and a little spoil  
Durst, in disdain of wrong and tyranny,  
Defend his freedom 'gainst a monarchy,  
What will he do supported by a king,  
Leading a troop of gentlemen and lords,  
And stuffed with treasure for his highest thoughts!

*Cos.* And such shall wait on worthy Tamburlaine. 60  
Our army will be forty thousand strong,  
When Tamburlaine and brave Theridamas

Have met us by the river Araris;  
And all conjoined to meet the witless king,  
That now is marching near to Parthia,  
And with unwilling soldiers faintly armed,  
To seek revenge on me and Tamburlaine,  
To whom, sweet Menaphon, direct me straight.

*Men.* I will, my lord.

[*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE II

*Enter MYCETES, MEANDER, with other Lords and Soldiers*

*Myc.* Come, my Meander, let us to this gear.  
I tell you true, my heart is swoln with wrath  
On this same thievish villain, Tamburlaine,  
And on that false Cosroe, my traitorous brother.  
Would it not grieve a king to be so abused  
And have a thousand horsemen ta'en away?  
And, which is worse, to have his diadem  
Sought for by such scald knaves as love him not?  
I think it would; well then, by Heavens I swear,  
Aurora shall not peep out of her doors, 10  
But I will have Cosroe by the head,  
And kill proud Tamburlaine with point of sword.  
Tell you the rest, Meander: I have said.

*Meand.* Then having passed Armenian deserts now,  
And pitched our tents under the Georgian hills,  
Whose tops are covered with Tartarian thieves,  
That lie in ambush, waiting for a prey,  
What should we do but bid them battle straight,  
And rid the world of those detested troops?  
Lest, if we let them linger here awhile, 20  
They gather strength by power of fresh supplies.  
This country swarms with vile outrageous men  
That live by rapine and by lawless spoil,

Fit soldiers for the wicked Tamburlaine;  
And he that could with gifts and promises  
Inveigle him that led a thousand horse,  
And make him false his faith unto his king,  
Will quickly win such as be like himself.  
Therefore cheer up your minds; prepare to fight;  
He that can take or slaughter Tamburlaine 30  
Shall rule the province of Albania:  
Who brings that traitor's head, Theridamas,  
Shall have a government in Media,  
Beside the spoil of him and all his train:  
But if Cosroe (as our spials say,  
And as we know) remains with Tamburlaine,  
His highness' pleasure is that he should live,  
And be reclaimed with princely lenity.

*A Spy.* A hundred horsemen of my company  
Scouting abroad upon these champion plains 40  
Have viewed the army of the Scythians,  
Which make report it far exceeds the king's.

*Meand.* Suppose they be in number infinite,  
Yet being void of martial discipline,  
All running headlong greedy after spoils,  
And more regarding gain than victory,  
Like to the cruel brothers of the earth,  
Sprung of the teeth of dragons venomous,  
Their careless swords shall lance their fellows' throats,  
And make us triumph in their overthrow. 50

*Myc.* Was there such brethren, sweet Meander, say,  
That sprung of teeth of dragons venomous?

*Meand.* So poets say, my lord.

*Myc.* And 'tis a pretty toy to be a poet.  
Well, well, Meander, thou art deeply read,  
And having thee, I have a jewel sure.  
Go on, my lord, and give your charge, I say;  
Thy wit will make us conquerors to-day.

*Meand.* Then, noble soldiers, to entrap these thieves,  
That live confounded in disordered troops, 60

If wealth or riches may prevail with them,  
We have our camels laden all with gold,  
Which you that be but common soldiers  
Shall fling in every corner of the field;  
And while the base-born Tartars take it up,  
You, fighting more for honour than for gold,  
Shall massacre those greedy-minded slaves;  
And when their scattered army is subdued,  
And you march on their slaughtered carcasses,  
Share equally the gold that bought their lives, 70  
And live like gentlemen in Persia.  
Strike up the drum! and march courageously!  
Fortune herself doth sit upon our crests.

*Myc.* He tells you true, my masters: so he does.  
Drums, why sound ye not, when Meander speaks?

*[Exeunt, drums sounding.]*

### SCENE III

*Enter COSROE, TAMBURLAINE, THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES,  
USUMCASANE, and ORTYGIUS, with others*

*Cos.* Now, worthy Tamburlaine, have I reposed  
In thy approvèd fortunes all my hope.  
What think'st thou, man, shall come of our attempts?  
For even as from assurèd oracle,  
I take thy doom for satisfaction.

*Tamb.* And so mistake you not a whit, my lord;  
For fates and oracles of Heaven have sworn  
To royalize the deeds of Tamburlaine,  
And make them blest that share in his attempts.  
And doubt you not but, if you favour me, 10  
And let my fortunes and my valour sway  
To some direction in your martial deeds,  
The world will strive with hosts of men-at-arms,  
To swarm unto the ensign I support:  
The host of Xerxes, which by fame is said  
To have drank the mighty Parthian Araris,

Fit soldiers for the wicked Tamburlaine;  
And he that could with gifts and promises  
Inveigle him that led a thousand horse,  
And make him false his faith unto his king,  
Will quickly win such as be like himself.  
Therefore cheer up your minds; prepare to fight;  
He that can take or slaughter Tamburlaine  
Shall rule the province of Albania: 30  
Who brings that traitor's head, Theridamas,  
Shall have a government in Media,  
Beside the spoil of him and all his train:  
But if Cosroe (as our spials say,  
And as we know) remains with Tamburlaine,  
His highness' pleasure is that he should live,  
And be reclaimed with princely lenity.

*A Spy.* A hundred horsemen of my company  
Scouting abroad upon these champion plains 40  
Have viewed the army of the Scythians,  
Which make report it far exceeds the king's.

*Meand.* Suppose they be in number infinite,  
Yet being void of martial discipline,  
All running headlong greedy after spoils,  
And more regarding gain than victory,  
Like to the cruel brothers of the earth,  
Sprung of the teeth of dragons venomous,  
Their careless swords shall lance their fellows' throats,  
And make us triumph in their overthrow. 50

*Myc.* Was there such brethren, sweet Meander, say,  
That sprung of teeth of dragons venomous?

*Meand.* So poets say, my lord.

*Myc.* And 'tis a pretty toy to be a poet.  
Well, well, Meander, thou art deeply read,  
And having thee, I have a jewel sure.  
Go on, my lord, and give your charge, I say;  
Thy wit will make us conquerors to-day.

*Meand.* Then, noble soldiers, to entrap these thieves,  
That live confounded in disordered troops, 60

If wealth or riches may prevail with them,  
We have our camels laden all with gold,  
Which you that be but common soldiers  
Shall fling in every corner of the field;  
And while the base-born Tartars take it up,  
You, fighting more for honour than for gold,  
Shall massacre those greedy-minded slaves;  
And when their scattered army is subdued,  
And you march on their slaughtered carcasses,  
Share equally the gold that bought their lives, 70  
And live like gentlemen in Persia.  
Strike up the drum! and march courageously!  
Fortune herself doth sit upon our crests.

*Myc.* He tells you true, my masters: so he does.  
Drums, why sound ye not, when Meander speaks?

*[Exeunt, drums sounding.]*

### SCENE III

*Enter COSROE, TAMBURLAINE, THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES,  
USUMCASANE, and ORTYGIUS, with others*

*Cos.* Now, worthy Tamburlaine, have I reposed  
In thy approvèd fortunes all my hope.  
What think'st thou, man, shall come of our attempts?  
For even as from assurèd oracle,  
I take thy doom for satisfaction.

*Tamb.* And so mistake you not a whit, my lord;  
For fates and oracles of Heaven have sworn  
To royalize the deeds of Tamburlaine,  
And make them blest that share in his attempts.  
And doubt you not but, if you favour me, 10  
And let my fortunes and my valour sway  
To some direction in your martial deeds,  
The world will strive with hosts of men-at-arms,  
To swarm unto the ensign I support:  
The host of Xerxes, which by fame is said  
To have drank the mighty Parthian Araris,



Was but a handful to that we will have.  
Our quivering lances, shaking in the air,  
And bullets, like Jove's dreadful thunderbolts,  
Enrolled in flames and fiery smouldering mists, 20  
Shall threat the gods more than Cyclopien wars:  
And with our sun-bright armour as we march,  
We'll chase the stars from Heaven and dim their eyes  
That stand and muse at our admirèd arms.

*Ther.* You hear, my lord, what working words he hath;  
But when you see his actions top his speech,  
Your speech will stay or so extol his worth  
As I shall be commended and excused  
For turning my poor charge to his direction.  
And these his two renownèd friends, my lord, 30  
Would make one thirst and strive to be retained  
In such a great degree of amity.

*Tech.* With duty and with amity we yield  
Our utmost service to the fair Cosroe.

*Cos.* Which I esteem as portion of my crown.  
Usumcasane and Techelles both,  
When she that rules in Rhamnus' golden gates,  
And makes a passage for all prosperous arms,  
Shall make me solely Emperor of Asia,  
Then shall your meeds and valours be advanced 40  
To rooms of honour and nobility.

*Tamb.* Then haste, Cosroe, to be king alone,  
That I with these, my friends, and all my men  
May triumph in our long-expected fate. —  
The king, your brother, is now hard at hand;  
Meet with the fool, and rid your royal shoulders  
Of such a burthen as outweighs the sands  
And all the craggy rocks of Caspia.

*Enter a Messenger*

*Mes.* My lord, we have discovered the enemy  
Ready to charge you with a mighty army. 50

*Cos.* Come, Tamburlaine ! now whet thy wingèd sword,

And lift thy lofty arm into the clouds,  
That it may reach the King of Persia's crown,  
And set it safe on my victorious head.

*Tamb.* See where it is, the keenest curtal-ax  
That e'er made passage thorough Persian arms.  
These are the wings shall make it fly as swift  
As doth the lightning or the breath of Heaven,  
And kill as sure as it swiftly flies.

*Cos.* Thy words assure me of kind success; 60  
Go, valiant soldier, go before and charge  
The fainting army of that foolish king.

*Tamb.* Usumcasane and Techelles, come !  
We are enow to scare the enemy  
And more than needs to make an emperor.

*[Exeunt to the battle.]*

#### SCENE IV

*Enter MYCETES with his crown in his hand*

*Myc.* Accursed be he that first invented war !  
They knew not, ah they knew not, simple men,  
How those were hit by pelting cannon shot,  
Stand staggering like a quivering aspen leaf  
Fearing the force of Boreas' boisterous blasts.  
In what a lamentable case were I  
If Nature had not given me wisdom's lore,  
For kings are clouts that every man shoots at,  
Our crown the pin<sup>n</sup> that thousands seek to cleave;  
Therefore in policy I think it good 10  
To hide it close; a goodly stratagem,  
And far from any man that is a fool :  
So shall I not be known; or if I be,  
They cannot take away my crown from me.  
Here will I hide it in this simple hole.

*Enter TAMBURLAINE*

*Tamb.* What, fearful coward, straggling from the camp,  
When kings themselves are present in the field?

*Myc.* Thou liest.

*Tamb.* Base villain! darest give me the lie?

*Myc.* Away; I am the king; go; touch me not.  
Thou break'st the law of arms, unless thou kneel      20  
And cry me "mercy, noble king."

*Tamb.* Are you the witty King of Persia?

*Myc.* Ay, marry am I: have you any suit to me?

*Tamb.* I would entreat you speak but three wise words.

*Myc.* So I can when I see my time.

*Tamb.* Is this your crown?

*Myc.* Ay, didst thou ever see a fairer?

*Tamb.* You will not sell it, will you?

*Myc.* Such another word and I will have thee executed. Come, give it me!      30

*Tamb.* No; I took it prisoner.

*Myc.* You lie; I gave it you.

*Tamb.* Then 'tis mine.

*Myc.* No; I mean I let you keep it.

*Tamb.* Well; I mean you shall have it again.  
Here; take it for a while: I lend it thee,  
'Till I may see thee hemmed with armed men;  
Then shalt thou see me pull it from thy head:  
Thou art no match for mighty Tamburlaine.

[*Exit TAMBURLAINE.*

*Myc.* O gods! Is this Tamburlaine the thief?      40  
I marvel much he stole it not away.

[*Trumpets sound to the battle, and he runs out.*

## SCENE V

*Enter COSROE, TAMBURLAINE, MEANDER, THERIDAMAS,  
ORTYGIUS, MENAPHON, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE,  
with others*

*Tamb.* Hold thee, Cosroe ! wear two imperial crowns;  
Think thee invested now as royally,  
Even by the mighty hand of Tamburlaine,  
As if as many kings as could encompass thee  
With greatest pomp, had crowned thee emperor.

*Cos.* So do I, thrice renownèd man-at-arms,  
And none shall keep the crown but Tamburlaine.  
Thee do I make my regent of Persia,  
And general lieutenant of my armies.  
Meander, you, that were our brother's guide, 10  
And chiefest counsellor in all his acts,  
Since he is yielded to the stroke of war,  
On your submission we with thanks excuse,  
And give you equal place in our affairs.

*Meand.* Most happy Emperor, in humblest terms,  
I vow my service to your majesty,  
With utmost virtue of my faith and duty.

*Cos.* Thanks, good Meander: then, Cosroe, reign,  
And govern Persia in her former pomp!  
Now send embassy to thy neighbour kings, 20  
And let them know the Persian king is changed,  
From one that knew not what a king should do,  
To one that can command what 'longs thereto.  
And now we will to fair Persepolis,  
With twenty thousand expert soldiers.  
The lords and captains of my brother's camp  
With little slaughter take Meander's course,  
And gladly yield them to my gracious rule.  
Ortygius and Menaphon, my trusty friends,  
Now will I gratify your former good, 30

And grace your calling with a greater sway.

*Orty.* And as we ever aimed at your behoof,  
And sought your state all honour it deserved,  
So will we with our powers and our lives  
Endeavour to preserve and prosper it.

*Cos.* I will not thank thee, sweet Ortygius;  
Better replies shall prove my purposes.  
And now, Lord Tamburlaine, my brother's camp  
I leave to thee and to Theridamas,  
To follow me to fair Persepolis.

40

Then will we march to all those Indian mines,  
My witless brother to the Christians lost,  
And ransom them with fame and usury.  
And till thou overtake me, Tamburlaine,  
(Staying to order all the scattered troops,)  
Farewell, lord regent and his happy friends!  
I long to sit upon my brother's throne.

*Meand.* Your majesty shall shortly have your wish,  
And ride in triumph through Persepolis.

[*Exeunt all but* TAMBURLAINE, THERIDAMAS,  
TECHELLES, *and* USUMCASANE.]

*Tamb.* "And ride in triumph through Persepolis!" 50  
Is it not brave to be a king, Techelles?

Usumcasane and Theridamas,

Is it not passing brave to be a king,

"And ride in triumph through Persepolis"?

*Tech.* Oh, my lord, 'tis sweet and full of pomp.

*Usum.* To be a king is half to be a god.

*Ther.* A god is not so glorious as a king.

I think the pleasure they enjoy in Heaven,  
Cannot compare with kingly joys in earth. —

To wear a crown enchased with pearl and gold,  
Whose virtues carry with it life and death;

60

To ask and have; command and be obeyed;

When looks breed love, with looks to gain the prize,  
Such power attractive shines in princes' eyes!

*Tamb.* Why say, Theridamas, wilt thou be a king?

*Ther.* Nay, though I praise it, I can live without it.

*Tamb.* What say my other friends? Will you be kings?

*Tech.* I, if I could, with all my heart, my lord.

*Tamb.* Why, that's well said, Techelles; so would I,  
And so would you, my masters, would you not? 70

*Usum.* What then, my lord?

*Tamb.* Why then, Casane, shall we wish for aught  
The world affords in greatest novelty,  
And rest attemptless, faint, and destitute?  
Methinks we should not: I am strongly moved,  
That if I should desire the Persian crown,  
I could attain it with a wondrous ease.  
And would not all our soldiers soon consent,  
If we should aim at such a dignity?

*Ther.* I know they would with our persuasions. 80

*Tamb.* Why then, Theridamas, I'll first assay  
To get the Persian kingdom to myself;  
Then thou for Parthia; they for Scythia and Media;  
And, if I prosper, all shall be as sure  
As if the Turk, the Pope, Afric, and Greece,  
Came creeping to us with their crowns apace.

*Tech.* Then shall we send to this triumphing king,  
And bid him battle for his novel crown?

*Usum.* Nay, quickly then, before his room be hot.

*Tamb.* 'Twill prove a pretty jest, in faith, my friends.

*Ther.* A jest to charge on twenty thousand men! 91  
I judge the purchase more important far.

*Tamb.* Judge by thyself, Theridamas, not me;  
For presently Techelles here shall haste  
To bid him battle ere he pass too far,  
And lose more labour than the game will quite.  
Then shalt thou see this Scythian Tamburlaine,  
Make but a jest to win the Persian crown.  
Techelles, take a thousand horse with thee,  
And bid him turn him back to war with us, 100  
That only made him king to make us sport.

We will not steal upon him cowardly,  
But give him warning and more warriors.  
Haste thee, Techelles, we will follow thee.

[*Exit* TECHELLES.]

What saith Theridamas?

*Ther.*

Go on for me.

[*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE VI

*Enter* COSROE, MEANDER, ORTYGIUS, MENAPHON, *with*  
Soldiers

*Cos.* What means this devilish shepherd to aspire  
With such a giantly presumption  
To cast up hills against the face of Heaven,  
And dare the force of angry Jupiter?  
But as he thrust them underneath the hills,  
And pressed out fire from their burning jaws,  
So will I send this monstrous slave to hell,  
Where flames shall ever feed upon his soul.

*Meand.* Some powers divine, or else infernal, mixed  
Their angry seeds at his conception; 10  
For he was never sprung of human race,  
Since with the spirit of his fearful pride,  
He dare so doubtlessly resolve of rule,  
And by profession be ambitious.

*Orty.* What god, or fiend, or spirit of the earth,  
Or monster turnèd to a manly shape,  
Or of what mould or mettle he be made,  
What star or fate soever govern him,  
Let us put on our meet encountering minds;  
And in detesting such a devilish thief, 20  
In love of honour and defence of right,  
Be armed against the hate of such a foe,  
Whether from earth, or hell, or Heaven, he grow.

*Cos.* Nobly resolved, my good Ortygius;  
And since we all have sucked one wholesome air,

And with the same proportion of elements  
Resolve, I hope we are resembled  
Vowing our loves to equal death and life.  
Let's cheer our soldiers to encounter him,  
That grievous image of ingratitude, 30  
That fiery thirster after sovereignty,  
And burn him in the fury of that flame,  
That none can quench but blood and empery.  
Resolve, my lords and loving soldiers, now  
To save your king and country from decay.  
Then strike up, drum; and all the stars that make  
The loathsome circle of my dated life,  
Direct my weapon to his barbarous heart,  
That thus opposeth him against the gods,  
And scorns the powers that govern Persia ! 40  
[*Exeunt; drums and trumpets sounding.*]

## SCENE VII

*Alarms of battle within. Enter COSROE, wounded, TAMBURLAINE, THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE, with others*

*Cos.* Barbarous and bloody Tamburlaine,  
Thus to deprive me of my crown and life!  
Treachorous and false Theridamas,  
Even at the morning of my happy state,  
Scarce being seated in my royal throne,  
To work my downfall and untimely end !  
An uncouth pain torments my grievèd soul,  
And death arrests the organ of my voice,  
Who, entering at the breach thy sword hath made,  
Sacks every vein and artier of my heart. — 10  
Bloody and insatiate Tamburlaine!

*Tamb.* The thirst of reign and sweetness of a crown  
That caused the eldest son of heavenly Ops



To thrust his doting father from his chair,  
And place himself in the empyreal Heaven,  
Moved me to manage arms against thy state.  
What better precedent than mighty Jove ?  
Nature that framed us of four elements,  
Warring within our breasts for regiment,  
Doth teach us all to have aspiring minds:  
Our souls, whose faculties can comprehend  
The wondrous architecture of the world,  
And measure every wandering planet's course,  
Still climbing after knowledge infinite,  
And always moving as the restless spheres,  
Will us to wear ourselves, and never rest,  
Until we reach the ripest fruit of all,  
That perfect bliss and sole felicity,  
The sweet fruition of an earthly crown.

20

*Ther.* And that made me to join with Tamburlaine:  
For he is gross and like the massy earth,  
That moves not upwards, nor by princely deeds  
Doth mean to soar above the highest sort.

31

*Tech.* And that made us the friends of Tamburlaine,  
To lift our swords against the Persian king.

*Usum.* For as when Jove did thrust old Saturn down,  
Neptune and Dis gained each of them a crown,  
So do we hope to reign in Asia,  
If Tamburlaine be placed in Persia.

*Cos.* The strangest men that ever nature made!  
I know not how to take their tyrannies.  
My bloodless body waxeth chill and cold,  
And with my blood my life slides through my wound;  
My soul begins to take her flight to hell,  
And summons all my senses to depart. —  
The heat and moisture, which did feed each other,  
For want of nourishment to feed them both,  
Are dry and cold; and now doth ghastly death,  
With greedy talons gripe my bleeding heart,  
And like a harpy tirès on my life.

40

50

Theridamas and Tamburlaine, I die:  
And fearful vengeance light upon you both!

[COSROE *dies*. — TAMBURLAINE *takes his crown*  
*and puts it on*.

*Tamb.* Not all the curses which the Furies breathe,  
Shall make me leave so rich a prize as this.  
Theridamas, Techelles, and the rest,  
Who think you now is King of Persia?

*All.* Tamburlaine! Tamburlaine!

*Tamb.* Though Mars himself, the angry god of arms,  
And all the earthly potentates conspire  
To dispossess me of this diadem, 60  
Yet will I wear it in despite of them,  
As great commander of this eastern world,  
If you but say that Tamburlaine shall reign.

*All.* Long live Tamburlaine and reign in Asia!

*Tamb.* So now it is more surer on my head,  
Than if the gods had held a parliament,  
And all pronounced me King of Persia. [*Exeunt*.

## ACT THE THIRD

### SCENE I

*Enter BAJAZETH, the KINGS of FEZ, MOROCCO, and  
ARGIER, with others in great pomp*

*Baj.* Great Kings of Barbary and my portly bassoes,  
We hear the Tartars and the eastern thieves,  
Under the conduct of one Tamburlaine,  
Presume a bickering with your emperor,  
And think to rouse us from our dreadful siege  
Of the famous Grecian Constantinople.  
You know our army is invincible;  
As many circumcisèd Turks we have,  
And warlike bands of Christians renied,  
As hath the ocean or the Terrene Sea 10  
Small drops of water when the moon begins  
To join in one her semicircled horns.  
Yet would we not be braved with foreign power,  
Nor raise our siege before the Grecians yield,  
Or breathless lie before the city walls.

*K. of Fez.* Renownèd Emperor, and mighty general,  
What, if you sent the bassoes of your guard  
To charge him to remain in Asia,  
Or else to threaten death and deadly arms  
As from the mouth of mighty Bajazeth. 20

*Baj.* Hie thee, my basso, fast to Persia,  
Tell him thy Lord, the Turkish Emperor,  
Dread Lord of Afric, Europe, and Asia,  
Great King and conqueror of Græcia,  
The ocean, Terrene, and the Coal-black Sea,

The high and highest monarch of the world  
Wills and commands (for say not I entreat),  
Not once to set his foot on Africa,  
Or spread his colours once in Græcia,  
Lest he incur the fury of my wrath.  
Tell him I am content to take a truce,  
Because I hear he bears a valiant mind:  
But if, presuming on his silly power,  
He be so mad to manage arms with me,  
Then stay thou with him; say, I bid thee so:  
And if, before the sun have measured Heaven  
With triple circuit, thou regret us not,  
We mean to take his morning's next arise  
For messenger he will not be reclaimed,  
And mean to fetch thee in despite of him.

30

40

*Bas.* Most great and puissant monarch of the earth,  
Your basso will accomplish your behest,  
And show your pleasure to the Persian,  
As fits the legate of the stately Turk.

[Exit.

*K. of Arg.* They say he is the King of Persia;  
But, if he dare attempt to stir your siege,  
'Twere requisite he should be ten times more,  
For all flesh quakes at your magnificence.

*Baj.* True, Argier; and trembles at my looks.

*K. of Mor.* The spring is hindered by your smothering  
host,

50

For neither rain can fall upon the earth,  
Nor sun reflex his virtuous beams thereon,  
The ground is mantled with such multitudes.

*Baj.* All this is true as holy Mahomet;  
And all the trees are blasted with our breaths.

*K. of Fez.* What thinks your greatness best to be  
achieved

In pursuit of the city's overthrow?

*Baj.* I will the captive pioners of Argier  
Cut off the water that by leaden pipes  
Runs to the city from the mountain Carnon.

60

Two thousand horse shall forage up and down,  
That no relief or succour come by land:  
And all the sea my galleys countermand.  
Then shall our footmen lie within the trench,  
And with their cannons mouthed like Orcus' gulf,  
Batter the walls, and we will enter in;  
And thus the Grecians shall be conquerèd. [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE II

*Enter ZENOCRATE, AGYDAS, ANIPPE, with others*

*Agyd.* Madam Zenocrate, may I presume  
To know the cause of these unquiet fits,  
That work such trouble to your wonted rest?  
'Tis more than pity such a heavenly face  
Should by heart's sorrow wax so wan and pale,  
When your offensive rape by Tamburlaine,  
(Which of your whole displeasures should be most,)  
Hath seemed to be digested long ago.

*Zeno.* Although it be digested long ago,  
As his exceeding favours have deserved, 10  
And might content the Queen of Heaven, as well  
As it hath changed my first conceived disdain,  
Yet since a farther passion feeds my thoughts  
With ceaseless and disconsolate conceits,  
Which dyes my looks so lifeless as they are,  
And might, if my extremes had full events,  
Make me the ghastly counterfeit of death.

*Agyd.* Eternal Heaven sooner be dissolved,  
And all that pierceth Phœbus' silver eye,  
Before such hap fall to Zenocrate! 20

*Zeno.* Ah, life and soul, still hover in his breast  
And leave my body senseless as the earth.  
Or else unite you to his life and soul,  
That I may live and die with Tamburlaine!

*Enter, behind, TAMBURLAINE, TECHELLES, and others*

*Agyd.* With Tamburlaine! Ah, fair Zenocrate,  
Let not a man so vile and barbarous,  
That holds you from your father in despite,  
And keeps you from the honours of a queen,  
(Being supposed his worthless concubine,)  
Be honoured with your love but for necessity. 30  
So, now the mighty Soldan hears of you,  
Your highness needs not doubt but in short time  
He will with Tamburlaine's destruction  
Redeem you from this deadly servitude.

*Zeno.* Agydas leave to wound me with these words,  
And speak of Tamburlaine as he deserves.  
The entertainment we have had of him  
Is far from villainy or servitude,  
And might in noble minds be counted princely.

*Agyd.* How can you fancy one that looks so fierce, 40  
Only disposed to martial stratagems?  
Who, when he shall embrace you in his arms,  
Will tell you how many thousand men he slew;  
And when you look for amorous discourse,  
Will rattle forth his facts of war and blood,  
Too harsh a subject for your dainty ears.

*Zeno.* As looks the Sun through Nilus' flowing stream,  
Or when the Morning holds him in her arms,  
So looks my lordly love, fair Tamburlaine;  
His talk much sweeter than the Muses' song 50  
They sung for honour 'gainst Pierides;  
Or when Minerva did with Neptune strive:  
And higher would I rear my estimate  
Than Juno, sister to the highest god,  
If I were matched with mighty Tamburlaine.

*Agyd.* Yet be not so inconstant in your love;  
But let the young Arabian live in hope  
After your rescue to enjoy his choice.  
You see though first the King of Persia,

Being a shepherd, seemed to love you much, 60  
 Now in his majesty he leaves those looks,  
 Those words of favour, and those comfortings,  
 And gives no more than common courtesies.

*Zeno.* Thence rise the tears that so distain my cheeks  
 Fearing his love through my unworthiness. —

[TAMBURLAINE goes to her and takes her away  
 lovingly by the hand, looking wrathfully on  
 AGYDAS. *Exeunt all but AGYDAS.*

*Agyd.* Betrayed by fortune and suspicious love,  
 Threatened with frowning wrath and jealousy,  
 Surprised with fear of hideous revenge,  
 I stand aghast; but most astonied  
 To see his choler shut in secret thoughts, 70  
 And wrapt in silence of his angry soul.  
 Upon his brows was portrayed ugly death;  
 And in his eyes the furies of his heart  
 That shone as comets, menacing revenge,  
 And cast a pale complexion on his cheeks.  
 As when the seaman sees the Hyades  
 Gather an army of Cimmerian clouds,  
 (Auster and Aquilon with wingèd steeds,  
 All sweating, tilt about the watery Heavens,  
 With shivering spears enforcing thunder-claps, 80  
 And from their shields strike flames of lightning,)  
 All-fearful folds his sails and sounds the main,  
 Lifting his prayers to the Heavens for aid  
 Against the terror of the winds and waves,  
 So fares Agydas for the late-felt frowns,  
 That sent a tempest to my daunted thoughts,  
 And make my soul divine her overthrow.

*Re-enter TECHELLES with a naked dagger, followed by  
 USUMCASANE*

*Tech.* See you, Agydas, how the king salutes you?  
 He bids you prophesy what it imports.

*Agyd.* I prophesied before, and now I prove  
The killing frowns of jealousy and love.  
He needed not with words confirm my fear,  
For words are vain where working tools present  
The naked action of my threatened end:  
It says, Agydas, thou shalt surely die,  
And of extremities elect the least;  
More honour and less pain it may procure  
To die by this resolvèd hand of thine,  
Than stay the torments he and Heaven have sworn.  
Then haste, Agydas, and prevent the plagues 100  
Which thy prolonged fates may draw on thee.  
Go, wander, free from fear of tyrant's rage,  
Removèd from the torments and the hell,  
Wherewith he may excruciate thy soul,  
And let Agydas by Agydas die,  
And with this stab slumber eternally. [*Stabs himself.*]

*Tech.* Usumcasane, see, how right the man  
Hath hit the meaning of my lord, the king.

*Usum.* 'Faith, and Techelles, it was manly done;  
And since he was so wise and honourable, 110  
Let us afford him now the bearing hence,  
And crave his triple-worthy burial.

*Tech.* Agreed, Casane; we will honour him.  
[*Exeunt, bearing out the body.*]

### SCENE III

*Enter* TAMBURLAINE, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE, THE-  
RIDAMAS, a BASSO, ZENOCRATE, ANIPPE, *with others*

*Tamb.* Basso, by this thy lord and master knows  
I mean to meet him in Bithynia:  
See how he comes! tush, Turks are full of brags,  
And menace more than they can well perform.  
He meet me in the field, and fetch thee hence!



Alas! poor Turk! his fortune is too weak  
To encounter with the strength of Tamburlaine.  
View well my camp, and speak indifferently;  
Do not my captains and my soldiers look  
As if they meant to conquer Africa? 10

*Bas.* Your men are valiant, but their number few,  
And cannot terrify his mighty host.

My lord, the great commander of the world,  
Besides fifteen contributory kings,  
Hath now in arms ten thousand Janizaries,  
Mounted on lusty Mauritanian steeds,  
Brought to the war by men of Tripoli;  
Two hundred thousand footmen that have served  
In two set battles fought in Græcia;  
And for the expedition of this war, 20  
If he think good, can from his garrisons  
Withdraw as many more to follow him.

*Tech.* The more he brings the greater is the spoil,  
For when they perish by our warlike hands,  
We mean to set our footmen on their steeds,  
And rifle all those stately Janizars.

*Tamb.* But will those kings accompany your lord?

*Bas.* Such as his highness please; but some must  
stay

To rule the provinces he late subdued.

*Tamb.* [To his Officers.] Then fight courageously:  
their crowns are yours; 30

This hand shall set them on your conquering heads,  
That made me Emperor of Asia.

*Usum.* Let him bring millions infinite of men,  
Unpeopling Western Africa and Greece,  
Yet we assure us of the victory.

*Ther.* Even he that in a trice vanquished two kings,  
More mighty than the Turkish emperor,  
Shall rouse him out of Europe, and pursue  
His scattered army till they yield or die.

*Tamb.* Well said, Theridamas; speak in that mood; 40

For *will* and *shall* best fitteth Tamburlaine,  
Whose smiling stars give him assurèd hope  
Of martial triumph ere he meet his foes.  
I that am termed the scourge and wrath of God,  
The only fear and terror of the world,  
Will first subdue the Turk, and then enlarge  
Those Christian captives, which you keep as slaves,  
Burthening their bodies with your heavy chains,  
And feeding them with thin and slender fare;  
That naked row about the Terrene Sea, 50  
And when they chance to rest or breathe a space,  
Are punished with bastones so grievously,  
That they lie panting on the galley's side,  
And strive for life at every stroke they give.  
These are the cruel pirates of Argier,  
That damnèd train, the scum of Africa,  
Inhabited with straggling runagates,  
That make quick havoc of the Christian blood;  
But as I live that town shall curse the time  
That Tamburlaine set foot in Africa. 60

*Enter* BAJAZETH with his Bassoes, the KINGS of FEZ,  
MOROCCO, and ARGIER, ZABINA and EBEA

*Baj.* Bassoes and Janizaries of my guard,  
Attend upon the person of your lord,  
The greatest potentate of Africa.

*Tamb.* Techelles, and the rest, prepare your swords;  
I mean to encounter with that Bajazeth.

*Baj.* Kings of Fez, Moroccus, and Argier,  
He calls me Bajazeth, whom you call lord!  
Note the presumption of this Scythian slave!  
I tell thee, villain, those that lead my horse,  
Have to their names titles of dignity, 70  
And dar'st thou bluntly call me Bajazeth?

*Tamb.* And know, thou Turk, that those which lead  
my horse,

Shall lead thee captive thorough Africa;  
And dar'st thou bluntly call me Tamburlaine?

*Baj.* By Mahomet my kinsman's sepulchre,  
And by the holy Alcoran I swear,  
He shall be made a chaste and lustless eunuch,  
And in my sarell tend my concubines;  
And all his captains that thus stoutly stand,  
Shall draw the chariot of my emperess, 80  
Whom I have brought to see their overthrow.

*Tamb.* By this my sword, that conquered Persia,  
Thy fall shall make me famous through the world.  
I will not tell thee how I'll handle thee,  
But every common soldier of my camp  
Shall smile to see thy miserable state.

*K. of Fez.* What means the mighty Turkish emperor,  
To talk with one so base as Tamburlaine?

*K. of Mor.* Ye Moors and valiant men of Barbary,  
How can ye suffer these indignities? 90

*K. of Arg.* Leave words, and let them feel your lances'  
points  
Which glided through the bowels of the Greeks.

*Baj.* Well said, my stout contributory kings:  
Your threefold army and my hugy host  
Shall swallow up these base-born Persians.

*Tech.* Puissant, renowned, and mighty Tamburlaine,  
Why stay we thus prolonging of their lives?

*Ther.* I long to see those crowns won by our swords,  
That we may rule as kings of Africa.

*Usum.* What coward would not fight for such a  
prize? 100

*Tamb.* Fight all courageously, and be you kings;  
I speak it, and my words are oracles.

*Baj.* Zabina, mother of three braver boys  
Than Hercules, that in his infancy  
Did pash the jaws of serpents venomous;  
Whose hands are made to gripe a warlike lance,  
Their shoulders broad for complete armour fit,

Their limbs more large, and of a bigger size,  
Than all the brats y-sprung from Typhon's loins;  
Who, when they come unto their father's age, 110  
Will batter turrets with their manly fists —  
Sit here upon this royal chair of state,  
And on thy head wear my imperial crown,  
Until I bring this sturdy Tamburlaine,  
And all his captains bound in captive chains.

*Zab.* Such good success happen to Bajazeth!

*Tamb.* Zenocrate, the loveliest maid alive,  
Fairer than rocks of pearl and precious stone,  
The only paragon of Tamburlaine,  
Whose eyes are brighter than the lamps of Heaven, 120  
And speech more pleasant than sweet harmony!  
That with thy looks canst clear the darkened sky,  
And calm the rage of thundering Jupiter,  
Sit down by her, adorned with my crown,  
As if thou wert the Empress of the world.  
Stir not, Zenocrate, until thou see  
Me march victoriously with all my men,  
Triumphing over him and these his kings;  
Which I will bring as vassals to thy feet;  
Till then take thou my crown, vaunt of my worth, 130  
And manage words with her, as we will arms.

*Zeno.* And may my love, the King of Persia,  
Return with victory and free from wound!

*Baj.* Now shalt thou feel the force of Turkish arms,  
Which lately made all Europe quake for fear.  
I have of Turks, Arabians, Moors, and Jews,  
Enough to cover all Bithynia.  
Let thousands die; their slaughtered carcasses  
Shall serve for walls and bulwarks to the rest;  
And as the heads of Hydra, so my power, 140  
Subdued, shall stand as mighty as before.  
If they should yield their necks unto the sword,  
Thy soldiers' arms could not endure to strike  
So many blows as I have heads for thee.

Thou know'st not, foolish, hardy Tamburlaine,  
What 'tis to meet me in the open field,  
That leave no ground for thee to march upon.

*Tamb.* Our conquering swords shall marshal us the  
way

We use to march upon the slaughtered foe,  
Trampling their bowels with our horses' hoofs; 150  
Brave horses bred on th' white Tartarian hills;  
My camp is like to Julius Cæsar's host,  
That never fought but had the victory;  
Nor in Pharsalia was there such hot war,  
As these, my followers, willingly would have.  
Legions of spirits fleeting in the air  
Direct our bullets and our weapons' points,  
And make your strokes to wound the senseless lure,  
And when she sees our bloody colours spread,  
Then Victory begins to take her flight, 160  
Resting herself upon my milk-white tent. —  
But come, my lords, to weapons let us fall;  
The field is ours, the Turk, his wife and all.

*[Exit with his followers.]*

*Baj.* Come, kings and bassoes, let us glut our swords,  
That thirst to drink the feeble Persians' blood.

*[Exit with his followers.]*

*Zab.* Base concubine, must thou be placed by me,  
That am the empress of the mighty Turk?

*Zeno.* Disdainful Turkess and unreverend boss!  
Call'st thou me concubine, that am betrothed  
Unto the great and mighty Tamburlaine? 170

*Zab.* To Tamburlaine, the great Tartarian thief!

*Zeno.* Thou wilt repent these lavish words of thine,  
When thy great basso-master and thyself  
Must plead for mercy at his kingly feet,  
And sue to me to be your advocate.

*Zab.* And sue to thee! — I tell thee, shameless girl,  
Thou shalt be laundress to my waiting-maid!  
How lik'st thou her, Ebea? — Will she serve?

*Ebea.* Madam, perhaps she thinks she is too fine,  
But I shall turn her into other weeds, 180  
And make her dainty fingers fall to work.

*Zeno.* Hear'st thou, Anippe, how thy drudge doth  
talk?

And how my slave, her mistress, menaceth?  
Both for their sauciness shall be employed  
To dress the common soldiers' meat and drink,  
For we will scorn they should come near ourselves.

*Anip.* Yet sometimes let your highness send for them  
To do the work my chambermaid disdains.

*[They sound to the battle within.]*

*Zeno.* Ye gods and powers that govern Persia,  
And made my lordly love her worthy king, 190  
Now strengthen him against the Turkish Bajazeth,  
And let his foes, like flocks of fearful roes  
Pursued by hunters, fly his angry looks,  
That I may see him issue conqueror!

*Zab.* Now, Mahomet, solicit God himself,  
And make him rain down murdering shot from Heaven  
To dash the Scythians' brains, and strike them dead,  
That dare to manage arms with him  
That offered jewels to thy sacred shrine,  
When first he warred against the Christians! 200

*[They sound again to the battle within.]*

*Zeno.* By this the Turks lie weltering in their blood,  
And Tamburlaine is Lord of Africa.

*Zab.* Thou art deceived. — I heard the trumpets sound,  
As when my emperor overthrew the Greeks,  
And led them captive into Africa.  
Straight will I use thee as thy pride deserves —  
Prepare thyself to live and die my slave.

*Zeno.* If Mahomet should come from Heaven and  
swear

My royal lord is slain or conquerèd,  
Yet should he not persuade me otherwise 210  
But that he lives and will be conqueror.

*Re-enter* BAJAZETH, *pursued by* TAMBURLAINE; *they fight,*  
and BAJAZETH *is overcome*

*Tamb.* Now, King of bassoes, who is conqueror?

*Baj.* Thou, by the fortune of this damnèd foil.

*Tamb.* Where are your stout contributory kings?

*Re-enter* TECHELLES, THERIDAMAS, and USUMCASANE

*Tech.* We have their crowns — their bodies strow the field.

*Tamb.* Each man a crown! — Why, kingly fought i' faith.

Deliver them into my treasury.

*Zeno.* Now let me offer to my gracious lord  
His royal crown again so highly won.

*Tamb.* Nay, take the crown from her, Zenocrate, 220  
And crown me Emperor of Africa.

*Zab.* No, Tamburlaine: though now thou gat the best,  
Thou shalt not yet be lord of Africa.

*Ther.* Give her the crown, Turkess: you were best.

[*He takes it from her.*]

*Zab.* Injurious villains! — thieves! — runagates!  
How dare you thus abuse my majesty?

*Ther.* Here, madam, you are Empress; she is none.

[*Gives it to ZENOCRATE.*]

*Tamb.* Not now, Theridamas; her time is past.  
The pillars that have bolstered up those terms,  
Are fallen in clusters at my conquering feet. 230

*Zab.* Though he be prisoner, he may be ransomed.

*Tamb.* Not all the world shall ransom Bajazeth.

*Baj.* Ah, fair Zabina! we have lost the field;  
And never had the Turkish emperor  
So great a foil by any foreign foe.  
Now will the Christian miscreants be glad,  
Ringing with joy their superstitious bells,  
And making bonfires for my overthrow.  
But, ere I die, those foul idolaters

Shall make me bonfires with their filthy bones. 240  
For though the glory of this day be lost,  
Afric and Greece have garrisons enough  
To make me sovereign of the earth again.

*Tamb.* Those wallèd garrisons will I subdue,  
And write myself great lord of Africa.  
So from the East unto the furthest West  
Shall Tamburlaine extend his puissant arm.  
The galleys and those pilling brigandines,  
That yearly sail to the Venetian gulf,  
And hover in the Straits for Christians' wreck, 250  
Shall lie at anchor in the Isle Asant,  
Until the Persian fleet and men-of-war,  
Sailing along the oriental sea,  
Have fetchèd about the Indian continent,  
Even from Persepolis to Mexico,  
And thence unto the straits of Jubaltèr;  
Where they shall meet and join their force in one,  
Keeping in awe the bay of Portingale,  
And all the ocean by the British shore;  
And by this means I'll win the world at last. 260

*Baj.* Yet set a ransom on me, Tamburlaine.

*Tamb.* What, think'st thou Tamburlaine esteems thy  
gold?

I'll make the kings of India, ere I die,  
Offer their mines to sue for peace to me,  
And dig for treasure to appease my wrath.  
Come, bind them both, and one lead in the Turk;  
The Turkess let my love's maid lead away.

[*They bind them.*]

*Baj.* Ah, villains! — dare you touch my sacred arms?  
O Mahomet! — O sleepy Mahomet!

*Zab.* O cursèd Mahomet, that makes us thus 270  
The slaves to Scythians rude and barbarous!

*Tamb.* Come, bring them in; and for this happy  
conquest,

Triumph and solemnize a martial feast. [*Exeunt.*]



## ACT THE FOURTH

### SCENE I

*Enter the SOLDAN of EGYPT, CAPOLIN, Lords, and Messenger*

*Sold.* Awake, ye men of Memphis! — hear the clang  
Of Scythian trumpets! — hear the basilisks,  
That, roaring, shake Damascus' turrets down!  
The rogue of Volga holds Zenocrate,  
The Soldan's daughter, for his concubine,  
And with a troop of thieves and vagabonds,  
Hath spread his colours to our high disgrace,  
While you, faint-hearted, base Egyptians,  
Lie slumbering on the flowery banks of Nile,  
As crocodiles that unaffrighted rest,  
While thundering cannons rattle on their skins. 10

*Mess.* Nay, mighty Soldan, did your greatness see  
The frowning looks of fiery Tamburlaine,  
That with his terror and imperious eyes,  
Commands the hearts of his associates,  
It might amaze your royal majesty.

*Sold.* Villain, I tell thee, were that Tamburlaine  
As monstrous as Gorgon prince of hell,  
The Soldan would not start a foot from him.  
But speak, what power hath he?

*Mess.* Mighty lord,  
Three hundred thousand men in armour clad,  
Upon their prancing steeds disdainfully,  
With wanton paces tramp ing on the ground:  
Five hundred thousand footmen threatening shot, 20

Shaking their swords, their spears, and iron bills,  
Environing their standard round, that stood  
As bristle-pointed as a thorny wood:  
Their warlike engines and munition  
Exceed the forces of their martial men.

*Sold.* Nay, could their numbers countervail the stars,  
Or ever-drizzling drops of April showers, 31  
Or withered leaves that Autumn shaketh down,  
Yet would the Soldan by his conquering power  
So scatter and consume them in his rage,  
That not a man should live to rue their fall.

*Capol.* So might your highness, had you time to sort  
Your fighting men, and raise your royal host;  
But Tamburlaine, by expedition,  
Advantage takes of your unreadiness.

*Sold.* Let him take all the advantages he can. 40  
Were all the world conspired to fight for him,  
Nay, were he devil, as he is no man,  
Yet in revenge of fair Zenocrate,  
Whom he detaineth in despite of us,  
This arm should send him down to Erebus,  
To shroud his shame in darkness of the night.

*Mess.* Pleaseth your mightiness to understand,  
His resolution far exceedeth all.  
The first day when he pitcheth down his tents,  
White is their hue, and on his silyer crest, 50  
A snowy feather spangled white he bears,  
To signify the mildness of his mind,  
That, satiate with spoil, refuseth blood.  
But when Aurora mounts the second time  
As red as scarlet is his furniture;  
Then must his kindled wrath be quenched with blood,  
Not sparing any that can manage arms;  
But if these threats move not submission,  
Black are his colours, black pavilion;  
His spear, his shield, his horse, his armour, plumes, 60  
And jetty feathers, menace death and hell!

Without respect of sex, degree, or age,  
He razeth all his foes with fire and sword.

*Sold.* Merciless villain! — peasant, ignorant  
Of lawful arms or martial discipline!  
Pillage and murder are his usual trades.  
The slave usurps the glorious name of war.  
See, Capolin, the fair Arabian king,  
That hath been disappointed by this slave  
Of my fair daughter, and his princely love,  
May have fresh warning to go war with us,  
And be revenged for her disparagement.

70

[*Exeunt.*

## SCENE II

*Enter* TAMBURLAINE, TECHELLES, THERIDAMAS, USUM-  
CASANE, ZENOCRATE, ANIPPE, *two* MOORS *drawing*  
BAJAZETH *in a cage*, and ZABINA *following him*

*Tamb.* Bring out my footstool.

[BAJAZETH *is taken out of the cage.*

*Baj.* Ye holy priests of heavenly Mahomet,  
That, sacrificing, slice and cut your flesh,  
Staining his altars with your purple blood;  
Make Heaven to frown and every fixèd star  
To suck up poison from the moorish fens,  
And pour it in this glorious tyrant's throat!

*Tamb.* The chiefest God, first mover of that sphere,  
Enchased with thousands ever-shining lamps,  
Will sooner burn the glorious frame of Heaven,  
Than it should so conspire my overthrow.  
But, villain! thou that wishest this to me,  
Fall prostrate on the low disdainful earth,  
And be the footstool of great Tamburlaine,  
That I may rise into my royal throne.

10

*Baj.* First shalt thou rip my bowels with thy sword,  
And sacrifice my soul to death and hell,  
Before I yield to such a slavery.

*Tamb.* Base villain, vassal, slave to Tamburlaine!  
Unworthy to embrace or touch the ground 20  
That bears the honour of my royal weight;  
Stoop, villain, stoop! — Stoop! for so he bids  
That may command thee piecemeal to be torn,  
Or scattered like the lofty cedar trees  
Struck with the voice of thundering Jupiter.

*Baj.* Then, as I look down to the damnèd fiends,  
Fiends look on me! and thou, dread god of hell,  
With ebon sceptre strike this hateful earth,  
And make it swallow both of us at once!

[TAMBURLAINE *steps upon him to mount his throne.*

*Tamb.* Now clear the triple region of the air, 30  
And let the majesty of Heaven behold  
Their scourge and terror tread on emperors.  
Smile stars, that reigned at my nativity  
And dim the brightness of your neighbour lamps!  
Disdain to borrow light of Cynthia!  
For I, the chiefest lamp of all the earth,  
First rising in the East with mild aspect,  
But fixèd now in the meridian line,  
Will send up fire to your turning spheres,  
And cause the sun to borrow light of you. 40  
My sword struck fire from his coat of steel,  
Even in Bithynia, when I took this Turk;  
As when a fiery exhalation,  
Wrapt in the bowels of a freezing cloud  
Fighting for passage, makes the welkin crack,  
And casts a flash of lightning to the earth:  
But ere I march to wealthy Persia,  
Or leave Damascus and the Egyptian fields,  
As was the fame of Clymene's brainsick son,  
That almost brent the axle-tree of Heaven, 50  
So shall our swords, our lances, and our shot  
Fill all the air with fiery meteors:  
Then when the sky shall wax as red as blood  
It shall be said I made it red myself,

To make me think of nought but blood and war.

*Zab.* Unworthy king, that by thy cruelty  
Unlawfully usurp'st the Persian seat,  
Dar'st thou that never saw an emperor,  
Before thou met my husband in the field,  
Being thy captive, thus abuse his state, 60  
Keeping his kingly body in a cage,  
That roofs of gold and sun-bright palaces  
Should have prepared to entertain his grace?  
And treading him beneath thy loathsome feet,  
Whose feet the kings of Africa have kissed.

*Tech.* You must devise some torment worse, my lord,  
To make these captives rein their lavish tongues.

*Tamb.* Zenocrate, look better to your slave.

*Zeno.* She is my handmaid's slave, and she shall look  
That these abuses flow not from her tongue: 70  
Chide her, Anippe.

*Anip.* Let these be warnings for you then, my slave,  
How you abuse the person of the king;  
Or else I swear to have you whipt, stark-naked.

*Baj.* Great Tamburlaine, great in my overthrow,  
Ambitious pride shall make thee fall as low,  
For treading on the back of Bajazeth,  
That should be horsèd on four mighty kings.

*Tamb.* Thy names, and titles, and thy dignities  
Are fled from Bajazeth and remain with me. 80  
That will maintain it 'gainst a world of kings.  
Put him in again. *[They put him back into the cage.]*

*Baj.* Is this a place for mighty Bajazeth?  
Confusion light on him that helps thee thus!

*Tamb.* There, whiles he lives, shall Bajazeth be kept;  
And, where I go, be thus in triumph drawn;  
And thou, his wife, shalt feed him with the scraps  
My servitors shall bring thee from my board;  
For he that gives him other food than this,  
Shall sit by him and starve to death himself; 90  
This is my mind and I will have it so.

Not all the kings and emperors of the earth,  
If they would lay their crowns before my feet,  
Shall ransom him, or take him from his cage.  
The ages that shall talk of Tamburlaine,  
Even from this day to Plato's wondrous year,<sup>a</sup>  
Shall talk how I have handled Bajazeth;  
These Moors, that drew him from Bithynia,  
To fair Damascus, where we now remain,  
Shall lead him with us wheresoe'er we go. 100  
Techelles, and my loving followers,  
Now may we see Damascus' lofty towers,  
Like to the shadows of Pyramides,  
That with their beauties grace the Memphian fields:  
The golden statue of their feathered bird  
That spreads her wings upon the city's walls  
Shall not defend it from our battering shot:  
The townsmen mask in silk and cloth of gold,  
And every house is as a treasury:  
The men, the treasure, and the town is ours. 110

*Ther.* Your tents of white now pitched before the gates,  
And gentle flags of amity displayed,  
I doubt not but the governor will yield,  
Offering Damascus to your majesty.

*Tamb.* So shall he have his life and all the rest:  
But if he stay until the bloody flag  
Be once advanced on my vermilion tent,  
He dies, and those that kept us out so long.  
And when they see us march in black array,  
With mournful streamers hanging down their heads, 120  
Were in that city all the world contained,  
Not one should 'scape, but perish by our swords.

*Zeno.* Yet would you have some pity for my sake,  
Because it is my country, and my father's.

*Tamb.* Not for the world, Zenocrate; I've sworn.  
Come; bring in the Turk. [Exeunt.]

## SCENE III

*Enter the SOLDAN, the KING of ARABIA, CAPOLIN, and  
Soldiers with colours flying*

*Sold.* Methinks we march as Meleager did,  
Environèd with brave Argolian knights,  
To chase the savage Calydonian boar,  
Or Cephalus with lusty Theban youths  
Against the wolf that angry Themis sent  
To waste and spoil the sweet Aonian fields,  
A monster of five hundred thousand heads,  
Compact of rapine, piracy, and spoil.  
The scum of men, the hate and scourge of God,  
Raves in Ægyptia and annoyeth us. 10  
My lord, it is the bloody Tamburlaine,  
A sturdy felon and a base-bred thief,  
By murder raisèd to the Persian crown,  
That dares control us in our territories.  
To tame the pride of this presumptuous beast,  
Join your Arabians with the Soldan's power,  
Let us unite our royal bands in one,  
And hasten to remove Damascus' siege.  
It is a blemish to the majesty  
And high estate of mighty emperors, 20  
That such a base usurping vagabond  
Should brave a king, or wear a princely crown.

*K. of Arab.* Renownèd Soldan, have you lately heard  
The overthrow of mighty Bajazeth  
About the confines of Bithynia?  
The slavery wherewith he persecutes  
The noble Turk and his great empress?

*Sold.* I have, and sorrow for his bad success;  
But noble lord of great Arabia,  
Be so persuaded that the Soldan is 30  
No more dismayed with tidings of his fall,  
Than in the haven when the pilot stands,

And views a stranger's ship rent in the winds,  
And shiverèd against a craggy rock;  
Yet in compassion to his wretched state,  
A sacred vow to Heaven and him I make,  
Confirming it with Ibis' holy name,  
That Tamburlaine shall rue the day, the hour,  
Wherein he wrought such ignominious wrong  
Unto the hallowed person of a prince, 40  
Or kept the fair Zenocrate so long  
As concubine, I fear, to feed his lust.

*K. of Arab.* Let grief and fury hasten on revenge;  
Let Tamburlaine for his offences feel  
Such plagues as we and Heaven can pour on him.  
I long to break my spear upon his crest,  
And prove the weight of his victorious arm;  
For Fame, I fear, hath been too prodigal  
In sounding through the world his partial praise.

*Sold.* Capolin, hast thou surveyed our powers? 50

*Capol.* Great Emperors of Egypt and Arabia,  
The number of your hosts united is  
A hundred and fifty thousand horse;  
Two hundred thousand foot, brave men-at-arms,  
Courageous, and full of hardiness,  
As frolic as the hunters in the chase  
Of savage beasts amid the desert woods.

*K. of Arab.* My mind presageth fortunate success;  
And Tamburlaine, my spirit doth foresee  
The utter ruin of thy men and thee. 60

*Sold.* Then rear your standards; let your sounding  
drums

Direct our soldiers to Damascus' walls.  
Now, Tamburlaine, the mighty Soldan comes,  
And leads with him the great Arabian king,  
To dim thy baseness and obscurity,  
Famous for nothing but for theft and spoil;  
To raze and scatter thy inglorious crew  
Of Scythians and slavish Persians.

[*Exeunt.*



## SCENE IV

*A Banquet set out; to it come TAMBURLAINE, all in scarlet, ZENOCRATE, THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE. BAJAZETH in his cage, ZABINA, and others*

*Tamb.* Now hang our bloody colours by Damascus,  
Reflexing hues of blood upon their heads,  
While they walk quivering on their city walls,  
Half dead for fear before they feel my wrath,  
Then let us freely banquet and carouse  
Full bowls of wine unto the god of war  
That means to fill your helmets full of gold,  
And make Damascus spoils as rich to you,  
As was to Jason Colchos' golden fleece. —  
And now, Bajazeth, hast thou any stomach? 10

*Baj.* Ay, such a stomach, cruel Tamburlaine, as I  
could willingly feed upon thy blood-raw heart.

*Tamb.* Nay thine own is easier to come by; pluck  
out that: and 'twill serve thee and thy wife: Well, Zenocrate, Techelles, and the rest, fall to your victuals.

*Baj.* Fall to, and never may your meat digest!  
Ye Furies, that can mask invisible,  
Dive to the bottom of Avernus' pool,  
And in your hands bring hellish poison up  
And squeeze it in the cup of Tamburlaine! 20  
Or, wingèd snakes of Lerna, cast your stings,  
And leave your venoms in this tyrant's dish!

*Zab.* And may this banquet prove as ominous  
As Progne's to the adulterous Thracian king,  
That fed upon the substance of his child.

*Zeno.* My lord, how can you tamely suffer these  
Outrageous curses by these slaves of yours?

*Tamb.* To let them see, divine Zenocrate,  
I glory in the curses of my foes,  
Having the power from the imperial Heaven 30  
To turn them all upon their proper heads.

*Tech.* I pray you give them leave, madam; this speech is a goodly refreshing to them.

*Ther.* But if his highness would let them be fed, it would do them more good.

*Tamb.* Sirrah, why fall you not to? — are you so daintily brought up, you cannot eat your own flesh?

*Baj.* First, legions of devils shall tear thee in pieces.

*Usum.* Villain, know'st thou to whom thou speakest?

*Tamb.* Oh, let him alone. Here; eat, sir; take it from my sword's point, or I'll thrust it to thy heart. 41

[BAJAZETH takes it and stamps upon it.]

*Ther.* He stamps it under his feet, my lord.

*Tamb.* Take it up, villain, and eat it; or I will make thee slice the brawns of thy arms into carbonadoes and eat them.

*Usum.* Nay, 'twere better he killed his wife, and then she shall be sure not to be starved, and he be provided for a month's victual beforehand.

*Tamb.* Here is my dagger: despatch her while she is fat, for if she live but a while longer, she will fall into a consumption with fretting, and then she will not be worth the eating. 52

*Ther.* Dost thou think that Mahomet will suffer this?

*Tech.* 'Tis like he will when he cannot let it.

*Tamb.* Go to; fall to your meat. — What, not a bit! Belike he hath not been watered to-day; give him some drink.

[They give BAJAZETH water to drink, and he flings it upon the ground.]

*Tamb.* Fast, and welcome, sir, while hunger make you eat. How now, Zenocrate, do not the Turk and his wife make a goodly show at a banquet? 60

*Zeno.* Yes, my lord.

*Ther.* Methinks, 'tis a great deal better than a consort of music.

*Tamb.* Yet music would do well to cheer up Zenocrate. Pray thee, tell, why thou art so sad? — If thou

wilt have a song, the Turk shall strain his voice. But why is it ?

*Zeno.* My lord, to see my father's town besieged,  
The country wasted where myself was born,  
How can it but afflict my very soul ?  
If any love remain in you, my lord,  
Or if my love unto your majesty  
May merit favour at your highness' hands,  
Then raise your siege from fair Damascus' walls,  
And with my father take a friendly truce.

70

*Tamb.* Zenocrate, were Egypt Jove's own land,  
Yet would I with my sword make Jove to stoop.  
I will confute those blind geographers  
That make a triple region in the world,  
Excluding regions which I mean to trace,  
And with this pen<sup>n</sup> reduce them to a map,  
Calling the provinces cities and towns,  
After my name and thine, Zenocrate.  
Here at Damascus will I make the point  
That shall begin the perpendicular ;  
And would'st thou have me buy thy father's love  
With such a loss ? — Tell me, Zenocrate.

80

*Zeno.* Honour still wait on happy Tamburlaine ;  
Yet give me leave to plead for him my lord.

*Tamb.* Content thyself: his person shall be safe  
And all the friends of fair Zenocrate,  
If with their lives they may be pleased to yield,  
Or may be forced to make me emperor ;  
For Egypt and Arabia must be mine. —  
Feed, you slave ; thou may'st think thyself happy to be  
fed from my trencher.

90

*Baj.* My empty stomach, full of idle heat,  
Draws bloody humours from my feeble parts,  
Preserving life by hastening cruel death.  
My veins are pale ; my sinews hard and dry ;  
My joints benumbed ; unless I eat, I die.

100

*Zab.* Eat, Bajazeth : and let us live

In spite of them — looking some happy power  
Will pity and enlarge us.

*Tamb.* Here, Turk ; wilt thou have a clean trencher ?

*Baj.* Ay, tyrant, and more meat.

*Tamb.* Soft, sir ; you must be dieted ; too much eating will make you surfeit.

*Ther.* So it would, my lord, 'specially having so small  
a walk and so little exercise. 110

*[A second course of crowns is brought in.]*

*Tamb.* Theridamas, Techelles, and Casane, here are  
the cates you desire to finger, are they not ?

*Ther.* Ay, my lord : but none save kings must feed  
with these.

*Tech.* 'Tis enough for us to see them, and for Tamburlaine only to enjoy them.

*Tamb.* Well ; here is now to the Soldan of Egypt, the  
King of Arabia, and the Governor of Damascus. Now  
take these three crowns, and pledge me, my contributory  
kings. — I crown you here, Theridamas, King of Argier ;  
Techelles, King of Fez ; and Usumcasane, King of  
Moroccus. How say you to this, Turk ? These are not  
your contributory kings. 123

*Baj.* Nor shall they long be thine, I warrant them.

*Tamb.* Kings of Argier, Moroccus, and of Fez,  
You that have marched with happy Tamburlaine  
As far as from the frozen plage of Heaven,  
Unto the watery morning's ruddy bower,  
And thence by land unto the torrid zone,  
Deserve these titles I endow you with, 130  
By valour and by magnanimity.

Your births shall be no blemish to your fame,  
For virtue is the fount whence honour springs,  
And they are worthy she investeth kings.

*Ther.* And since your highness hath so well vouchsafed ;  
If we deserve them not with higher meeds  
Than erst our states and actions have retained  
Take them away again and make us slaves.

*Tamb.* Well said, Theridamas; when holy fates  
Shall 'stablish me in strong Ægyptia,  
We mean to travel to the antarctic pole,  
Conquering the people underneath our feet,  
And be renowned as never emperors were.  
Zenocrate, I will not crown thee yet,  
Until with greater honours I be graced.

140

[*Exeunt.*

## ACT THE FIFTH

### SCENE I

*Enter the GOVERNOR of DAMASCUS, with several Citizens,  
and four Virgins, having branches of laurel in their  
hands*

Gov. Still doth this man, or rather god of war,  
Batter our walls and beat our turrets down;  
And to resist with longer stubbornness  
Or hope of rescue from the Soldan's power,  
Were but to bring our wilful overthrow,  
And make us desperate of our threatened lives.  
We see his tents have now been altered  
With terrors to the last and cruellest hue.  
His coal-black colours everywhere advanced,  
Threaten our city with a general spoil; 10  
And if we should with common rites of arms  
Offer our safeties to his clemency,  
I fear the custom, proper to his sword,  
Which he observes as parcel of his fame,  
Intending so to terrify the world,  
By any innovation or remorse  
Will never be dispensed with till our deaths;  
Therefore, for these our harmless virgins' sakes,  
Whose honours and whose lives rely on him,  
Let us have hope that their unspotted prayers, 20  
Their blubbered cheeks, and hearty, humble moans,  
Will melt his fury into some remorse,  
And use us like a loving conqueror.

1st Virg. If humble suits or imprecations,

(Uttered with tears of wretchedness and blood  
Shed from the heads and hearts of all our sex,  
Some made your wives and some your children)  
Might have entreated your obdurate breasts  
To entertain some care of our securities  
Whiles only danger beat upon our walls, 30  
These more than dangerous warrants of our death  
Had never been erected as they be,  
Nor you depend on such weak helps as we.

*Gov.* Well, lovely virgins, think our country's care,  
Our love of honour, loath to be enthralled  
To foreign powers and rough imperious yokes,  
Would not with too much cowardice or fear,  
(Before all hope of rescue were denied)  
Submit yourselves and us to servitude.  
Therefore in that your safeties and our own, 40  
Your honours, liberties, and lives were weighed  
In equal care and balance with our own,  
Endure as we the malice of our stars,  
The wrath of Tamburlaine and power of wars;  
Or be the means the overweighing heavens  
Have kept to qualify these hot extremes,  
And bring us pardon in your cheerful looks.

*2nd Virg.* Then here before the majesty of Heaven  
And holy patrons of Ægyptia,  
With knees and hearts submissive we entreat 50  
Grace to our words and pity to our looks  
That this device may prove propitious,  
And through the eyes and ears of Tamburlaine  
Convey events of mercy to his heart;  
Grant that these signs of victory we yield  
May bind the temples of his conquering head,  
To hide the folded furrows of his brows,  
And shadow his displeasèd countenance  
With happy looks of ruth and lenity.  
Leave us, my lord, and loving countrymen; 60  
What simple virgins may persuade, we will.

*Gov.* Farewell, sweet virgins, on whose safe return  
Depends our city, liberty, and lives.

[*Exeunt* GOVERNOR and Citizens; *the Virgins remain.*]

## SCENE II

*Enter* TAMBURLAINE, *all in black and very melancholy*,  
TECHELLES, THERIDAMAS, USUMCASANE, *with others*

*Tamb.* What, are the turtles frayed out of their nests?  
Alas, poor fools! must you be first shall feel  
The sworn destruction of Damascus?  
They knew my custom; could they not as well  
Have sent ye out, when first my milk-white flags,<sup>n</sup>  
Through which sweet Mercy threw her gentle beams,  
Reflexing them on your disdainful eyes,  
As now, when fury and incensèd hate  
Flings slaughtering terror from my coal-black tents,  
And tells for truth submission comes too late? 10

*1st Virg.* Most happy King and Emperor of the  
earth,  
Image of honour and nobility,  
For whom the powers divine have made the world,  
And on whose throne the holy Graces sit;  
In whose sweet person is comprised the sum  
Of Nature's skill and heavenly majesty;  
Pity our plights! Oh, pity poor Damascus!  
Pity old age, within whose silver hairs  
Honour and reverence evermore have reigned!  
Pity the marriage-bed, where many a lord, 20  
In prime and glory of his loving joy,  
Embraceth now with tears of ruth and blood  
The jealous body of his fearful wife,  
Whose cheeks and hearts so punished with conceit,  
To think thy puissant, never-stayèd arm,  
Will part their bodies, and prevent their souls  
From heavens of comfort yet their age might bear,



Now wax all pale and withered to the death,  
 As well for grief our ruthless governor  
 Hath thus refused the mercy of thy hand, 30  
 (Whose sceptre angels kiss and furies dread,)  
 As for their liberties, their loves, or lives!  
 Oh, then, for these, and such as we ourselves,  
 For us, our infants, and for all our bloods,  
 That never nourished thought against thy rule,  
 Pity, oh, pity, sacred Emperor,  
 The prostrate service of this wretched town,  
 And take in sign thereof this gilded wreath;  
 Whereto each man of rule hath given his hand,  
 And wished, as worthy subjects, happy means 40  
 To be investors of thy royal brows  
 Even with the true Egyptian diadem!

<sup>1</sup> *Tamb.* Virgins, in vain you labour to prevent  
 That which mine honour swears shall be performed.  
 Behold my sword! what see you at the point?

*1st Virg.* Nothing but fear, and fatal steel, my lord.

*Tamb.* Your fearful minds are thick and misty then;  
 For there sits Death; there sits imperious Death  
 Keeping his circuit by the slicing edge.  
 But I am pleased you shall not see him there; 50  
 He now is seated on my horsemen's spears,  
 And on their points his fleshless body feeds.  
 Techelles, straight go charge a few of them  
 To charge these dames, and show my servant, Death,  
 Sitting in scarlet on their armèd spears.

*Virgins.* Oh, pity us!

*Tamb.* Away with them, I say, and show them Death.  
[The Virgins are taken out.]

I will not spare these proud Egyptians,  
 Nor change my martial observations  
 For all the wealth of Gihon's golden waves, 60  
 Or for the love of Venus, would she leave  
 The angry god of arms and lie with me.  
 They have refused the offer of their lives,

And know my customs are as peremptory  
As wrathful planets, death, or destiny.

*Re-enter* TECHELLES

What, have your horsemen shown the virgins Death ?

*Tech.* They have, my lord, and on Damascus' walls  
Have hoisted up their slaughtered carcasses.

*Tamb.* A sight as baneful to their souls, I think,  
As are Thessalian drugs or mithridate: 70  
But go, my lords, put the rest to the sword.

*[Exeunt all except TAMBURLAINE.]*

Ah, fair Zenocrate! — divine Zenocrate! —

Fair is too foul an epithet for thee,  
That in thy passion for thy country's love,  
And fear to see thy kingly father's harm,  
With hair dishevelled wip'st thy watery cheeks;  
And, like to Flora in her morning pride,  
Shaking her silver tresses in the air,  
Rain'st on the earth resolvèd pearl in showers,  
And sprinklest sapphires on thy shining face, 80  
Where Beauty, mother to the Muses, sits  
And comments volumes with her ivory pen,  
Taking instructions from thy flowing eyes;  
Eyes that, when Ebena steps to Heaven,  
In silence of thy solemn evening's walk,  
Make, in the mantle of the richest night,  
The moon, the planets, and the meteors, light;  
There angels in their crystal armours fight  
A doubtful battle with my tempted thoughts  
For Egypt's freedom, and the Soldan's life; 90  
His life that so consumes Zenocrate,  
Whose sorrows lay more siege unto my soul,  
Than all my army to Damascus' walls:  
And neither Persia's sovereign, nor the Turk  
Troubled my senses with conceit of foil<sup>a</sup>  
So much by much as doth Zenocrate.  
What is beauty, saith my sufferings, then ?

If all the pens that ever poets held  
Had fed the feeling of their masters' thoughts,  
And every sweetness that inspired their hearts, 100  
Their minds, and muses on admirèd themes;  
If all the heavenly quintessence they still  
From their immortal flowers of poesy,  
Wherein, as in a mirror, we perceive  
The highest reaches of a human wit;  
If these had made one poem's period,  
And all combined in beauty's worthiness,  
Yet should there hover in their restless heads  
One thought, one grace, one wonder, at the least,  
Which into words no virtue can digest. 110  
But how unseemly is it for my sex,  
My discipline of arms and chivalry,  
My nature, and the terror of my name,  
To harbour thoughts effeminate and faint!  
Save only that in beauty's just applause,  
With whose instinct the soul of man is touched;  
And every warrior that is wrapt with love  
Of fame, of valour, and of victory,  
Must needs have beauty beat on his conceits:  
I thus conceiving and subduing both 120  
That which hath stooped the chiefest of the gods,  
Even from the fiery-spangled veil of Heaven,  
To feel the lowly warmth of shepherds' flames,  
And mask in cottages of strowèd reeds,  
Shall give the world to note for all my birth,  
That virtue solely is the sum of glory,  
And fashions men with true nobility.<sup>a</sup> —  
Who's within there ?

*Enter Attendants*

Hath Bajazeth been fed to-day?

*Atten.* Ay, my lord. 130

*Tamb.* Bring him forth; and let us know if the town  
be ransacked. *[Exeunt Attendants.]*

*Enter* TECHELLES, THERIDAMAS, USUMCASANE, *and others*

*Tech.* The town is ours, my lord, and fresh supply  
Of conquest and of spoil is offered us.

*Tamb.* That's well, Techelles; what's the news?

*Tech.* The Soldan and the Arabian king together,  
March on us with such eager violence,  
As if there were no way but one with us."

*Tamb.* No more there is not, I warrant thee, Techelles.

*Attendants bring in* BAJAZETH *in his cage, followed*  
*by* ZABINA; *then exeunt*

*Ther.* We know the victory is ours, my lord; 140  
But let us save the reverend Soldan's life,  
For fair Zenocrate that so laments his state.

*Tamb.* That will we chiefly see unto, Theridamas,  
For sweet Zenocrate, whose worthiness  
Deserves a conquest over every heart.  
And now, my footstool, if I lose the field,  
You hope of liberty and restitution?  
Here let him stay, my masters, from the tents,  
Till we have made us ready for the field.  
Pray for us, Bajazeth; we are going. 150

*[Exeunt* TAMBURLAINE, TECHELLES, USUM-  
CASANE, *and* Persians.

*Baj.* Go, never to return with victory.  
Millions of men encompass thee about,  
And gore thy body with as many wounds!  
Sharp, forkèd arrows light upon thy horse!  
Furies from the black Cocytus lake,  
Break up the earth, and with their fire-brands  
Enforce thee run upon the baneful pikes!  
Volleys of shot pierce through thy charmèd skin,  
And every bullet dipt in poisoned drugs!  
Or, roaring cannons sever all thy joints, 160  
Making thee mount as high as eagles soar!

*Zab.* Let all the swords and lances in the field  
Stick in his breast as in their proper rooms!  
At every pore let blood come dropping forth,  
That lingering pains may massacre his heart,  
And madness send his damnèd soul to hell!

*Baj.* Ah, fair Zabina! we may curse his power;  
The heavens may frown, the earth for anger quake:  
But such a star hath influence on his sword,  
As rules the skies and countermands the gods 170  
More than Cimmerian Styx or Destiny;  
And then shall we in this detested guise,  
With shame, with hunger, and with horror stay,  
Gripping our bowels with retorquèd thoughts,  
And have no hope to end our ecstasies.

*Zab.* Then is there left no Mahomet, no God,  
No fiend, no fortune, nor no hope of end  
To our infâmous monstrous slaveries.  
Gape earth, and let the fiends infernal view 180  
A hell as hopeless and as full of fear  
As are the blasted banks of Erebus,  
Where shaking ghosts with ever-howling groans  
Hover about the ugly ferryman,  
To get a passage to Elysium !  
Why should we live? Oh, wretches, beggars, slaves !  
Why live we, Bajazeth, and build up nests  
So high within the region of the air  
By living long in this oppression,  
That all the world will see and laugh to scorn  
The former triumphs of our mightiness 190  
In this obscure infernal servitude ?

*Baj.* O life, more loathsome to my vexèd thoughts  
Than noisome parbreak of the Stygian snakes,  
Which fills the nooks of hell with standing air,  
Infecting all the ghosts with cureless griefs!  
O dreary engines of my loathèd sight,  
That see my crown, my honour, and my name  
Thrust under yoke and thraldom of a thief,

Why feed ye still on day's accursèd beams  
And sink not quite into my tortured soul ? 200  
You see my wife, my queen, and emperess,  
Brought up and proppèd by the hand of fame,  
Queen of fifteen contributory queens,  
Now thrown to rooms of black abjection,  
Smeared with blots of basest drudgery,  
And villainess to shame, disdain, and misery.  
Accursèd Bajazeth, whose words of ruth,  
(That would with pity cheer Zabina's heart,  
And make our souls resolve in ceaseless tears;) 210  
Sharp hunger bites upon, and gripes the root,  
From whence the issues of my thoughts do break;  
O poor Zabina! O my queen! my queen!  
Fetch me some water for my burning breast,  
To cool and comfort me with longer date,  
That in the shortened sequel of my life  
I may pour forth my soul into thine arms  
With words of love, whose moaning intercourse  
Hath hitherto been stayed with wrath and hate  
Of our expressless banned inflictions.

*Zab.* Sweet Bajazeth, I will prolong thy life, 220  
As long as any blood or spark of breath  
Can quench or cool the torments of my grief. [Exit.

*Baj.* Now, Bajazeth, abridge thy baneful days,  
And beat thy brains out of thy conquered head,  
Since other means are all forbidden me,  
That may be ministers of my decay.  
O highest lamp of ever-living Jove,  
Accursèd day! infected with my griefs,  
Hide now thy stainèd face in endless night,  
And shut the windows of the lightsome Heavens! 230  
Let ugly Darkness with her rusty coach,  
Engirt with tempests, wrapt in pitchy clouds,  
Smother the earth with never-fading mists!  
And let her horses from their nostrils breathe  
Rebellious winds and dreadful thunder-claps!

That in this terror Tamburlaine may live,  
And my pined soul, resolved in liquid air,  
May still excruciate his tormented thoughts!  
Then let the stony dart of senseless cold  
Pierce through the centre of my withered heart, 240  
And make a passage for my loathèd life!

*[He brains himself against the cage.]*

*Re-enter ZABINA*

*Zab.* What do mine eyes behold? my husband dead!  
His skull all riven in twain! his brains dashed out —  
The brains of Bajazeth, my lord and sovereign:  
O Bajazeth, my husband and my lord!  
O Bajazeth! O Turk! O Emperor! 246  
Give him his liquor? Not I. Bring milk and fire, and  
my blood I bring him again. — Tear me in pieces — give  
me the sword with a ball of wildfire upon it. — Down  
with him! Down with him! — Go to my child! Away!  
Away! Away! — Ah, save that infant! save him, save  
him! — I, even I, speak to her. — The sun was down —  
streamers white, red, black — here, here, here! — Fling  
the meat in his face — Tamburlaine. — Tamburlaine! —  
Let the soldiers be buried. — Hell! Death, Tamburlaine,  
Hell! Make ready my coach,<sup>a</sup> my chair, my jewels. —  
I come! I come! I come! 257

*[She runs against the cage and brains herself.]*

*Enter ZENOCRATE with ANIPPE*

*Zeno.* Wretched Zenocrate! that liv'st to see  
Damascus' walls dyed with Egyptians' blood,  
Thy father's subjects and thy countrymen; 260  
The streets strowed with dissevered joints of men  
And wounded bodies gasping yet for life:  
But most accurst, to see the sun-bright troop  
Of heavenly virgins and unspotted maids,

(Whose looks might make the angry god of arms  
To break his sword and mildly treat of love)  
On horsemen's lances to be hoisted up  
And guiltlessly endure a cruel death:  
For every fell and stout Tartarian steed,  
That stampt on others with their thundering hoofs, 270  
When all their riders charged their quivering spears,  
Began to check the ground and rein themselves,  
Gazing upon the beauty of their looks. —  
Ah Tamburlaine! wert thou the cause of this  
That term'st Zenocrate thy dearest love?  
Whose lives were dearer to Zenocrate  
Than her own life, or aught save thine own love.  
But see another bloody spectacle!  
Ah, wretched eyes, the enemies of my heart,  
How are ye glutted with these grievous objects, 280  
And tell my soul more tales of bleeding ruth!  
See, see, Anippe, if they breath or no.

*Anip.* No breath, nor sense, nor motion in them  
both;

Ah, madam! this their slavery hath enforced,  
And ruthless cruelty of Tamburlaine.

*Zeno.* Earth, cast up fountains from thy entrails,  
And wet thy cheeks for their untimely deaths!  
Shake with their weight in sign of fear and grief!  
Blush, Heaven, that gave them honour at their birth  
And let them die a death so barbarous! 290  
Those that are proud of fickle empery  
And place their chiefest good in earthly pomp,  
Behold the Turk and his great Emperess!  
Ah, Tamburlaine! my love! sweet Tamburlaine!  
That fight'st for sceptres and for slippery crowns,  
Behold the Turk and his great Emperess!  
Thou, that in conduct of thy happy stars  
Sleep'st every night with conquests on thy brows,  
And yet would'st shun the wavering turns of war,  
In fear and feeling of the like distress 300



Behold the Turk and his great Emperess!  
Ah, mighty Jove and holy Mahomet,  
Pardon my love! — Oh, pardon his contempt  
Of earthly fortune and respect of pity,  
And let not conquest, ruthlessly pursued,  
Be equally against his life incensed  
In this great Turk and hapless Emperess!  
And pardon me that was not moved with ruth  
To see them live so long in misery!  
Ah, what may chance to thee, Zenocrate?

310

*Anip.* Madam, content yourself, and be resolved  
Your love hath Fortune so at his command,  
That she shall stay and turn her wheel no more,  
As long as life maintains his mighty arm  
That fights for honour to adorn your head.

*Enter PHILEMUS, a Messenger*

*Zeno.* What other heavy news now brings Philemus?

*Phil.* Madam, your father, and the Arabian king,  
The first affecter of your excellence,  
Comes now, as Turnus 'gainst Æneas did,  
Armèd with lance into the Egyptian fields,  
Ready for battle 'gainst my lord, the king.

320

*Zeno.* Now shame and duty, love and fear present  
A thousand sorrows to my martyred soul.  
Whom should I wish the fatal victory  
When my poor pleasures are divided thus  
And racked by duty from my cursèd heart?  
My father and my first-betrothèd love  
Must fight against my life and present love;  
Wherein the change I use condemns my faith,  
And makes my deeds infàmous through the world:  
But as the gods, to end the Trojans' toil  
Prevented Turnus of Lavinia  
And fatally enriched Æneas' love,  
So for a final issue to my griefs,

330

To pacify my country and my love  
Must Tamburlaine by their resistless pow'rs  
With virtue of a gentle victory  
Conclude a league of honour to my hope;  
Then, as the Powers divine have pre-ordained,  
With happy safety of my father's life 340  
Send like defence of fair Arabia.

*[Trumpets sound to the battle within: afterwards,  
the KING of ARABIA enters wounded.]*

*K. of Arab.* What cursèd power guides the murdering  
hands

Of this infàmous tyrant's soldiers,  
That no escape may save their enemies,  
Nor fortune keep themselves from victory?  
Lie down, Arabia, wounded to the death,  
And let Zenocrate's fair eyes behold  
That, as for her thou bear'st these wretched arms,  
Even so for her thou diest in these arms,  
Leaving thy blood for witness of thy love. 350

*Zeno.* Too dear a witness for such love, my lord,  
Behold Zenocrate! the cursèd object,  
Whose fortunes never masterèd her griefs;  
Behold her wounded, in conceit, for thee,  
As much as thy fair body is for me.

*K. of Arab.* Then shall I die with full, contented  
heart,

Having beheld divine Zenocrate,  
Whose sight with joy would take away my life  
As now it bringeth sweetness to my wound,  
If I had not been wounded as I am. 360  
Ah! that the deadly pangs I suffer now,  
Would lend an hour's licence to my tongue,  
To make discourse of some sweet accidents  
Have chanced thy merits in this worthless bondage;  
And that I might be privy to the state  
Of thy deserved contentment, and thy love;  
But, making now a virtue of thy sight,

To drive all sorrow from my fainting soul,  
Since death denies me farther cause of joy,  
Deprived of care, my heart with comfort dies, 370  
Since thy desired hand shall close mine eyes. [*He dies.*]

*Re-enter TAMBURLAINE, leading the SOLDAN, TECHELLES,  
THERIDAMAS, USUMCASANE, with others*

*Tamb.* Come, happy father of Zenocrate,  
A title higher than thy Soldan's name.  
Though my right hand have thus enthralled thee,  
Thy princely daughter here shall set thee free;  
She that hath calmed the fury of my sword,  
Which had ere this been bathed in streams of blood  
As vast and deep as Euphrates or Nile.

*Zeno.* O sight thrice welcome to my joyful soul,  
To see the king, my father, issue safe 380  
From dangerous battle of my conquering love!

*Sold.* Well met, my only dear Zenocrate,  
Though with the loss of Egypt and my crown.

*Tamb.* 'Twas I, my lord, that got the victory,  
And therefore grieve not at your overthrow,  
Since I shall render all into your hands,  
And add more strength to your dominions  
Than ever yet confirmed the Egyptian crown.  
The god of war resigns his room to me,  
Meaning to make me general of the world: 390  
Jove, viewing me in arms, looks pale and wan,  
Fearing my power should pull him from his throne.  
Where'er I come the Fatal Sisters sweat,  
And grisly Death, by running to and fro,  
To do their ceaseless homage to my sword;  
And here in Afric, where it seldom rains,  
Since I arrived with my triumphant host,  
Have swelling clouds, drawn from wide-gasping wounds,  
Been oft resolved in bloody purple showers,  
A meteor that might terrify the earth, 400

And make it quake at very drop it drinks.  
Millions of souls sit on the banks of Styx  
Waiting the back return of Charon's boat;  
Hell and Elysium swarm with ghosts of men,  
That I have sent from sundry foughten fields,  
To spread my fame through hell and up to Heaven.  
And see, my lord, a sight of strange import,  
Emperors and kings lie breathless at my feet:  
The Turk and his great Empress, as it seems,  
Left to themselves while we were at the fight, 410  
Have desperately dispatched their slavish lives:  
With them Arabia, too, hath left his life:  
All sights of power to grace my victory;  
And such are objects fit for Tamburlaine;  
Wherein, as in a mirror, may be seen  
His honour, that consists in shedding blood,  
When men presume to manage arms with him.

*Sold.* Mighty hath God and Mahomet made thy hand,  
Renownèd Tamburlaine! to whom all kings  
Of force must yield their crowns and emperies; 420  
And I am pleased with this my overthrow,  
If, as beseems a person of thy state,  
Thou hast with honour used Zenocrate.

*Tamb.* Her state and person want no pomp, you see;  
And for all blot of foul in chastity  
I record Heaven her heavenly self is clear:  
Then let me find no farther time to grace  
Her princely temples with the Persian crown.  
But here these kings that on my fortunes wait,  
And have been crowned for provèd worthiness, 430  
Even by this hand that shall establish them,  
Shall now, adjoining all their hands with mine,  
Invest her here the Queen of Persia.  
What saith the noble Soldan and Zenocrate?

*Sold.* I yield with thanks and protestations  
Of endless honour to thee for her love.

*Tamb.* Then doubt I not but fair Zenocrate

Will soon consent to satisfy us both.

*Zeno.* Else should I much forget myself, my lord.

*Ther.* Then let us set the crown upon her head, 440  
That long hath lingered for so high a seat.

*Tech.* My hand is ready to perform the deed;  
For now her marriage-time shall work us rest.

*Usum.* And here's the crown, my lord; help set it on.

*Tamb.* Then sit thou down, divine Zenocrate;  
And here we crown thee Queen of Persia,  
And all the kingdoms and dominions  
That late the power of Tamburlaine subdued.

As Juno, when the giants were suppressed,  
That darted mountains at her brother Jove, 450  
So looks my love, shadowing in her brows  
Triumphs and trophies for my victories;  
Or, as Latona's daughters, bent to arms,  
Adding more courage to my conquering mind.

To gratify the sweet Zenocrate,  
Egyptians, Moors, and men of Asia,  
From Barbary unto the western India,  
Shall pay a yearly tribute to thy sire:  
And from the bounds of Afric to the banks  
Of Ganges shall his mighty arm extend. 460

And now, my lords and loving followers,  
That purchased kingdoms by your martial deeds,  
Cast off your armour, put on scarlet robes,  
Mount up your royal places of estate,  
Environèd with troops of noblemen,  
And there make laws to rule your provinces.

Hang up your weapons on Alcides' post,  
For Tamburlaine takes truce with all the world.  
Thy first-betrothèd love, Arabia,

Shall we with honour, as beseems, entomb 470  
With this great Turk and his fair Emperess.

Then, after all these solemn exequies,  
We will our rites of marriage solemnize.

# TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT

## *PART THE SECOND*



# TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT

## *PART THE SECOND*

---

### THE PROLOGUE

THE general welcomes Tamburlaine received,  
When he arrivèd last upon the stage,  
Hath made our poet pen his Second Part,  
Where death cuts off the progress of his pomp,  
And murderous fates throw all his triumphs down  
But what became of fair Zenocrate,  
And with how many cities' sacrifice  
He celebrated her sad funeral,  
Himself in presence shall unfold at large.



## *DRAMATIS PERSONÆ*

TAMBURLAINE, King of Persia.

CALYPHAS,  
AMYRAS,        }  
CELEBINUS,     } His sons.

TECHELLES, King of Fez.

THERIDAMAS, King of Argier.

USUMCASANE, King of Morocco.

ORCANES, King of Natolia.

KING OF JERUSALEM.

KING OF TREBIZOND.

KING OF SORIA.<sup>n</sup>

KING OF AMASIA.

GAZELLUS, Viceroy of Byron.

URIBASSA.

SIGISMUND, King of Hungary.

FREDERICK,     }  
BALDWIN,       } Lords of Buda and Bohemia.

CALLAPINE, Son of BAJAZETH.

ALMEDA, his Keeper.

PERDICAS, Servant to CALYPHAS.

GOVERNOR OF BABYLON.

MAXIMUS.

CAPTAIN OF BALSERA.

His Son.

Physicians.

Another Captain.

Lords, Citizens, Soldiers, &c.

ZENOCRATE, Wife of TAMBURLAINE.

OLYMPIA, Wife of the Captain of Balsera.

Turkish Concubines.

## ACT THE FIRST

### SCENE I

*Enter ORCANES, King of Natolia, GAZELLUS, Viceroy of Byron, URIBASSA, and their Train, with drums and trumpets*

*Orc.* Egregious viceroys of these eastern parts,  
Placed by the issue of great Bajazeth,  
And sacred lord, the mighty Callapine,  
Who lives in Egypt, prisoner to that slave  
Which kept his father in an iron cage;  
Now have we marched from fair Natolia  
Two hundred leagues, and on Danubius' banks  
Our warlike host, in complete armour, rest,  
Where Sigismund, the king of Hungary,  
Should meet our person to conclude a truce. 10  
What! Shall we parley with the Christian?  
Or cross the stream, and meet him in the field?

*Gaz.* King of Natolia, let us treat of peace;  
We are all glutted with the Christians' blood,  
And have a greater foe to fight against —  
Proud Tamburlaine, that, now in Asia,  
Near Guyron's head doth set his conqu'ring feet,  
And means to fire Turkey as he goes.  
'Gainst him, my lord, you must address your power.

*Uri.* Besides, King Sigismund hath brought from  
Christendom, 20  
More than his camp of stout Hungarians,  
Sclavonians, Almain rutters, Muffes, and Danes,  
That with the halberd, lance, and murdering ax,  
Will hazard that we might with surety hold.

*Orc.* Though from the shortest northern parallel,  
Vast Grantland, compassed with the Frozen Sea,  
(Inhabited with tall and sturdy men,  
Giants as big<sup>n</sup> as hugy Polypheme,)  
Millions of soldiers cut the arctic line,  
Bringing the strength of Europe to these arms, 30  
Our Turkey blades shall glide through all their throats,  
And make this champion mead a bloody fen.  
Danubius' stream, that runs to Trebizon,  
Shall carry, wrapt within his scarlet waves,  
As martial presents to our friends at home,  
The slaughtered bodies of these Christians.  
The Terrene Main, wherein Danubius falls,<sup>n</sup>  
Shall, by this battle, be the Bloody Sea.  
The wandering sailors of proud Italy  
Shall meet those Christians, fleeing with the tide, 40  
Beating in heaps against their argosies,  
And make fair Europe, mounted on her bull,  
Trapped with the wealth and riches of the world,  
Alight, and wear a woeful mourning weed.

*Gaz.* Yet, stout Orcanes, prorex of the world,  
Since Tamburlaine hath mustered all his men,  
Marching from Cairo northward with his camp,  
To Alexandria, and the frontier towns,  
Meaning to make a conquest of our land,  
'Tis requisite to parley for a peace 50  
With Sigismund the king of Hungary,  
And save our forces for the hot assaults  
Proud Tamburlaine intends Natolia.

*Orc.* Viceroy of Byron, wisely hast thou said.  
My realm, the centre of our empery, .  
Once lost, all Turkey would be overthrown,  
And for that cause the Christians shall have peace.  
Sclavonians, Almain rutters, Muffes, and Danes,  
Fear not Orcanes, but great Tamburlaine;  
Nor he, but fortune, that hath made him great. 60  
We have revolted Grecians, Albanese,

Sicilians, Jews, Arabians, Turks, and Moors,  
Natolians, Syrians, black Egyptians,  
Illyrians, Thracians, and Bithynians,  
Enough to swallow forceless Sigismund,  
Yet scarce enough to encounter Tamburlaine.  
He brings a world of people to the field,  
From Scythia to the oriental plage  
Of India, where raging Lantchidol  
Beats on the regions with his boisterous blows, 70  
That never seaman yet discoverèd.  
All Asia is in arms with Tamburlaine,  
Even from the midst of fiery Cancer's tropic,  
To Amazonia under Capricorn;  
And thence as far as Archipelago,  
All Afric is in arms with Tamburlaine;  
Therefore, viceroy, the Christians must have peace.

*Enter SIGISMUND, FREDERICK, BALDWIN, and their  
Train, with drums and trumpets*

*Sig.* Orcanes (as our legates promised thee),  
We, with our peers, have crossed Danubius' stream,  
To treat of friendly peace or deadly war. 80  
Take which thou wilt, for as the Romans used,  
I here present thee with a naked sword;  
Wilt thou have war, then shake this blade at me;  
If peace, restore it to my hands again,  
And I will sheathe it, to confirm the same.

*Orc.* Stay, Sigismund! forget'st thou I am he  
That with the cannon shook Vienna walls,  
And made it dance upon the continent,  
As when the massy substance of the earth  
Quiver[s] about the axle-tree of Heaven? 90  
Forget'st thou that I sent a shower of darts,  
Mingled with powdered shot and feathered steel,  
So thick upon the blink-eyed burghers' heads,  
That thou thyself, then County Palatine,  
The King of Boheme, and the Austric Duke,

Sent heralds out, which basely on their knees  
In all your names desired a truce of me?  
Forget'st thou, that to have me raise my siege,  
Wagons of gold were set before my tents,  
Stamp't with the princely fowl, that in her wings, 100  
Carries the fearful thunderbolts of Jove?  
How canst thou think of this, and offer war?

*Sig.* Vienna was besieged, and I was there,  
Then County Palatine, but now a king,  
And what we did was in extremity.  
But now, Orcanes, view my royal host,  
That hides these plains, and seems as vast and wide,  
As doth the desert of Arabia  
To those that stand on Bagdeth's lofty tower;  
Or as the ocean, to the traveller 110  
That rests upon the snowy Apennines;  
And tell me whether I should stoop so low,  
Or treat of peace with the Natolian king.

*Gaz.* Kings of Natolia and of Hungary,  
We came from Turkey to confirm a league,  
And not to dare each other to the field.  
A friendly parley might become you both.

*Fred.* And we from Europe, to the same intent,  
Which if your general refuse or scorn,  
Our tents are pitched, our men stand in array, 120  
Ready to charge you ere you stir your feet.

*Orc.* So prest are we; but yet, if Sigismund  
Speak as a friend, and stand not upon terms,  
Here is his sword — let peace be ratified  
On these conditions, specified before,  
Drawn with advice of our ambassadors.

*Sig.* Then here I sheathe it, and give thee my hand,  
Never to draw it out, or manage arms  
Against thyself or thy confederates,  
But whilst I live will be at truce with thee. 130

*Orc.* But, Sigismund, confirm it with an oath,  
And swear in sight of Heaven and by thy Christ.

*Sig.* By him that made the world and saved my soul,

The Son of God and issue of a Maid,  
Sweet Jesus Christ, I solemnly protest  
And vow to keep this peace inviolable.

*Orc.* By sacred Mahomet, the friend of God,  
Whose holy Alcoran remains with us,  
Whose glorious body, when he left the world,  
Closed in a coffin mounted up the air,  
And hung on stately Mecca's temple roof,  
I swear to keep this truce inviolable;  
Of whose conditions and our solemn oaths,  
Signed with our hands, each shall retain a scroll  
As memorable witness of our league.

140

Now, Sigismund, if any Christian king  
Encroach upon the confines of thy realm,  
Send word, Orcanes of Natolia  
Confirmed this league beyond Danubius' stream,  
And they will, trembling, sound a quick retreat;  
So am I feared among all nations.

150

*Sig.* If any heathen potentate or king  
Invade Natolia, Sigismund will send  
A hundred thousand horse trained to the war,  
And backed by stout lancers of Germany,  
The strength and sinews of the Imperial seat.

*Orc.* I thank thee, Sigismund; but, when I war,  
All Asia Minor, Africa, and Greece,  
Follow my standard and my thundering drums.  
Come, let us go and banquet in our tents;  
I will dispatch chief of my army hence  
To fair Natolia and to Trebizon,  
To stay my coming 'gainst proud Tamburlaine.

160

Friend Sigismund, and peers of Hungary,  
Come, banquet and carouse with us a while,  
And then depart we to our territories.

[*Exeunt.*

## SCENE II

*Enter CALLAPINE with ALMEDA, his Keeper*

*Call.* Sweet Almeda, pity the ruthless plight  
Of Callapine, the son of Bajazeth,  
Born to be monarch of the western world,  
Yet here detained by cruel Tamburlaine.

*Alm.* My lord, I pity it, and with all my heart  
Wish you release; but he whose wrath is death,  
My sovereign lord, renowned Tamburlaine,  
Forbids you farther liberty than this.

*Call.* Ah, were I now but half so eloquent  
To paint in words what I'll perform in deeds,  
I know thou would'st depart from hence with me. 10

*Alm.* Not for all Afric: therefore move me not.

*Call.* Yet hear me speak, my gentle Almeda.

*Alm.* No speech to that end, by your favour, sir.

*Call.* By Cairo runs —

*Alm.* No talk of running, I tell you, sir.

*Call.* A little farther, gentle Almeda.

*Alm.* Well, sir, what of this?

*Call.* By Cairo runs to Alexandria bay  
Darote's streams, wherein at anchor lies 20  
A Turkish galley of my royal fleet,  
Waiting my coming to the river side,  
Hoping by some means I shall be released,  
Which, when I come aboard, will hoist up sail,  
And soon put forth into the Terrene Sea,  
Where, 'twixt the isles of Cyprus and of Crete,  
We quickly may in Turkish seas arrive.  
Then shalt thou see a hundred kings and more.  
Upon their knees, all bid me welcome home,  
Amongst so many crowns of burnished gold, 30  
Choose which thou wilt, all are at thy command;  
A thousand galleys, manned with Christian slaves,

I freely give thee, which shall cut the Straits,  
And bring armados from the coasts of Spain  
Fraughted with gold of rich America;  
The Grecian virgins shall attend on thee,  
Skilful in music and in amorous lays,  
As fair as was Pygmalion's ivory girl  
Or lovely Iö metamorphosèd.

With naked negroes shall thy coach be drawn, 40  
And as thou rid'st in triumph through the streets  
The pavement underneath thy chariot wheels  
With Turkey carpets shall be coverèd,  
And cloth of Arras hung about the walls,  
Fit objects for thy princely eye to pierce.  
A hundred bassoes, clothed in crimson silk,  
Shall ride before thee on Barbarian steeds;  
And when thou goest, a golden canopy  
Enchased with precious stones, which shine as bright  
As that fair veil that covers all the world, 50  
When Phœbus, leaping from the hemisphere,  
Descendeth downward to the Antipodes,  
And more than this — for all I cannot tell.

*Alm.* How far hence lies the galley, say you?

*Call.* Sweet Almeda, scarce half a league from hence.

*Alm.* But need we not be spied going aboard?

*Call.* Betwixt the hollow hanging of a hill,  
And crookèd bending of a craggy rock,  
The sails wrapt up, the mast and tacklings down,  
She lies so close that none can find her out. 60

*Alm.* I like that well: but tell me, my lord, if I should  
let you go, would you be as good as your word? shall I  
be made a king for my labour?

*Call.* As I am Callapine the emperor,  
And by the hand of Mahomet I swear  
Thou shalt be crowned a king, and be my mate.

*Alm.* Then here I swear, as I am Almeda  
Your keeper under Tamburlaine the Great,  
(For that's the style and title I have yet,)



Although he sent a thousand armèd men  
To intercept this haughty enterprise,  
Yet would I venture to conduct your grace,  
And die before I brought you back again.

70

*Call.* Thanks, gentle Almeda; then let us haste,  
Lest time be past, and lingering let us both.

*Alm.* When you will, my lord; I am ready.

*Call.* Even straight; and farewell, cursèd Tamburlaine.

Now go I to revenge my father's death

[*Exeunt.*

### SCENE III

*Enter TAMBURLAINE, ZENOCRATE, and their three Sons, CALYPHAS, AMYRAS, and CELEBINUS, with drums and trumpets*

*Tamb.* Now, bright Zenocrate, the world's fair eye,  
Whose beams illuminate the lamps of Heaven,  
Whose cheerful looks do clear the cloudy air,  
And clothe it in a crystal livery;  
Now rest thee here on fair Larissa plains,  
Where Egypt and the Turkish empire part  
Between thy sons, that shall be emperors,  
And every one commander of a world.

*Zeno.* Sweet Tamburlaine, when wilt thou leave these  
arms,  
And save thy sacred person free from scathe,  
And dangerous chances of the wrathful war?

10

*Tamb.* When Heaven shall cease to move on both the  
poles,  
And when the ground, whereon my soldiers march,  
Shall rise aloft and touch the hornèd moon,  
And not before, my sweet Zenocrate.  
Sit up, and rest thee like a lovely queen;  
So, now she sits in pomp and majesty,  
When these, my sons, more precious in mine eyes,

Than all the wealthy kingdoms I subdued,  
Placed by her side, look on their mother's face: 20  
But yet methinks their looks are amorous,  
Not martial as the sons of Tamburlaine:  
Water and air, being symbolized in one,  
Argue their want of courage and of wit;  
Their hair as white as milk and soft as down,  
(Which should be like the quills of porcupines  
As black as jet and hard as iron or steel)  
Bewrays they are too dainty for the wars;  
Their fingers made to quaver on a lute,  
Their arms to hang about a lady's neck, 30  
Their legs to dance and caper in the air,"  
Would make me think them bastards not my sons,  
But that I know they issued from thy womb  
That never looked on man but Tamburlaine.

*Zeno.* My gracious lord, they have their mother's  
looks,  
But when they list their conquering father's heart.  
This lovely boy, the youngest of the three,  
Not long ago bestrid a Scythian steed,  
Trotting the ring, and tilting at a glove,  
Which when he tainted with his slender rod, 40  
He reined him straight and made him so curvet,  
As I cried out for fear he should have fallen.

*Tamb.* Well done, my boy, thou shalt have shield and  
lance,  
Armour of proof, horse, helm, and curtal-ax,  
And I will teach thee how to charge thy foe,  
And harmless run among the deadly pikes.  
If thou wilt love the wars and follow me,  
Thou shalt be made a king and reign with me,  
Keeping in iron cages emperors.  
If thou exceed thy elder brothers' worth 50  
And shine in complete virtue more than they,  
Thou shalt be king before them, and thy seed  
Shall issue crownèd from their mother's womb.

*Cel.* Yes, father: you shall see me, if I live,  
Have under me as many kings as you,  
And march with such a multitude of men,  
As all the world shall tremble at their view.

*Tamb.* These words assure me, boy, thou art my son.  
When I am old and cannot manage arms,  
Be thou the scourge and terror of the world. 60

*Amy.* Why may not I, my lord, as well as he,  
Be termed the scourge and terror of the world?

*Tamb.* Be all a scourge and terror to the world,  
Or else you are not sons of Tamburlaine.

*Cal.* But while my brothers follow arms, my lord,  
Let me accompany my gracious mother;  
They are enough to conquer all the world,  
And you have won enough for me to keep.

*Tamb.* Bastardly boy, sprung from some coward's  
loins,  
And not the issue of great Tamburlaine; 70  
Of all the provinces I have subdued,  
Thou shalt not have a foot unless thou bear  
A mind courageous and invincible:  
For he shall wear the crown of Persia  
Whose head hath deepest scars, whose breast most  
wounds,  
Which being wroth sends lightning from his eyes,  
And in the furrows of his frowning brows  
Harbours revenge, war, death, and cruelty;  
For in a field, whose superficies  
Is covered with a liquid purple veil 80  
And sprinkled with the brains of slaughtered men,  
My royal chair of state shall be advanced;  
And he that means to place himself therein,  
Must armèd wade up to the chin in blood.

*Zeno.* My lord, such speeches to our princely sons  
Dismay their minds before they come to prove  
The wounding troubles angry war affords.

*Cel.* No, madam, these are speeches fit for us,

For if his chair were in a sea of blood  
I would prepare a ship and sail to it, 90  
Ere I would lose the title of a king.

*Amy.* And I would strive to swim through pools of  
blood,  
Or make a bridge of murdered carcasses,  
Whose arches should be framed with bones of Turks,  
Ere I would lose the title of a king.

*Tamb.* Well, lovely boys, ye shall be emperors both,  
Stretching your conquering arms from East to West;  
And, sirrah, if you mean to wear a crown,  
When we shall meet the Turkish deputy  
And all his viceroys, snatch it from his head, 100  
And cleave his pericranium with thy sword.

*Cal.* If any man will hold him, I will strike  
And cleave him to the channel with my sword.

*Tamb.* Hold him, and cleave him too, or I'll cleave  
thee,  
For we will march against them presently.  
Theridamas, Techelles, and Casane  
Promised to meet me on Larissa plains  
With hosts apiece against this Turkish crew;  
For I have sworn by sacred Mahomet  
To make it parcel of my empery; 110  
The trumpets sound, Zenocrate; they come.

*Enter THERIDAMAS and his Train, with drums and  
trumpets*

*Tamb.* Welcome, Theridamas, King of Argier.

*Ther.* My lord, the great and mighty Tamburlaine,  
Arch-monarch of the world, I offer here  
My crown, myself, and all the power I have,  
In all affection at thy kingly feet.

*Tamb.* Thanks, good Theridamas.

*Ther.* Under my colours march ten thousand Greeks;  
And of Argier's and Afric's frontier towns

Twice twenty thousand valiant men-at-arms, 120  
All which have sworn to sack Natolia.  
Five hundred brigandines are under sail,  
Meet for your service on the sea, my lord,  
That launching from Argier to Tripoli,  
Will quickly ride before Natolia,  
And batter down the castles on the shore.

*Tamb.* Well said, Argier; receive thy crown again.

*Enter TECHELLES and USUMCASANE together*

*Tamb.* Kings of Moroccus and of Fez, welcome.

*Usum.* Magnificent and peerless Tamburlaine!  
I and my neighbour King of Fez have brought 130  
To aid thee in this Turkish expedition,  
A hundred thousand expert soldiers:  
From Azamor to Tunis near the sea  
Is Barbary unpeopled for thy sake,  
And all the men in armour under me,  
Which with my crown I gladly offer thee.

*Tamb.* Thanks, King of Moroccus, take your crown again.

*Tech.* And, mighty Tamburlaine, our earthly god,  
Whose looks make this inferior world to quake,  
I here present thee with the crown of Fez, 140  
And with an host of Moors trained to the war,  
Whose coal-black faces make their foes retire,  
And quake for fear, as if infernal Jove  
Meaning to aid thee in these Turkish arms,  
Should pierce the black circumference of hell  
With ugly Furies bearing fiery flags,  
And millions of his strong tormenting spirits.  
From strong Tesella unto Biledull  
All Barbary is unpeopled for thy sake.

*Tamb.* Thanks, King of Fez; take here thy crown again.  
Your presence, loving friends, and fellow kings, 151  
Makes me to surfeit in conceiving joy.

If all the crystal gates of Jove's high court  
Were opened wide, and I might enter in  
To see the state and majesty of Heaven,  
It could not more delight me than your sight.  
Now will we banquet on these plains awhile,  
And after march to Turkey with our camp,  
In number more than are the drops that fall,  
When Boreas rents a thousand swelling clouds; 160  
And proud Orcanes of Natolia  
With all his viceroys shall be so afraid,  
That though the stones, as at Deucalion's flood,  
Were turned to men, he should be overcome.  
Such lavish will I make of Turkish blood,  
That Jove shall send his wingèd messenger  
To bid me sheathe my sword and leave the field;  
The sun unable to sustain the sight,  
Shall hide his head in Thetis' watery lap,  
And leave his steeds to fair Boötes' charge; 170  
For half the world shall perish in this fight.  
But now, my friends, let me examine ye;  
How have ye spent your absent time from me?

*Usum.* My lord, our men of Barbary have marched  
Four hundred miles with armour on their backs,  
And lain in leaguer fifteen months and more;  
For, since we left you at the Soldan's court,  
We have subdued the southern Guallatia,  
And all the land unto the coast of Spain;  
We kept the narrow Strait of Jubaltèr, 180  
And made Canaria call us kings and lords;  
Yet never did they recreate themselves,  
Or cease one day from war and hot alarms,  
And therefore let them rest awhile, my lord.

*Tamb.* They shall, Casane, and 'tis time i' faith.

*Tech.* And I have marched along the river Nile  
To Machda, where the mighty Christian priest,  
Called John the Great, sits in a milk-white robe,  
Whose triple mitre I did take by force,

And made him swear obedience to my crown, 190  
From thence unto Cazates did I march,  
Where Amazonians met me in the field,  
With whom, being women, I vouchsafed a league,  
And with my power did march to Zanzibar,  
The eastern part of Afric, where I viewed  
The Ethiopian sea, rivers, and lakes,  
But neither man nor child in all the land;  
Therefore I took my course to Manico,  
Where unresisted, I removed my camp;  
And by the coast of Byather, at last 200  
I came to Cubar, where the negroes dwell,  
And conquering that, made haste to Nubia.  
There, having sacked Borno the kingly seat,  
I took the king and led him bound in chains  
Unto Damasco, where I stayed before.

*Tamb.* Well done, Techelles. What saith Theridamas?

*Ther.* I left the confines and the bounds of Afric,  
And [thence I] made a voyage into Europe,<sup>a</sup>  
Where by the River Tyras I subdued  
Stoka, Podolia, and Codemia; 210  
Thence crossed the sea and came to Oblia  
And Nigra Sylva, where the devils dance,  
Which in despite of them, I set on fire.  
From thence I crossed the gulf called by the name  
Mare Majore of the inhabitants.  
Yet shall my soldiers make no period,  
Until Natolia kneel before your feet.

*Tamb.* Then will we triumph, banquet and carouse;  
Cooks shall have pensions to provide us cates,  
And glut us with the dainties of the world; 220  
Lachryma Christi and Calabrian wines  
Shall common soldiers drink in quaffing bowls,  
Ay, liquid gold (when we have conquered him)  
Mingled with coral and with orient pearl.  
Come, let us banquet and carouse the whiles. [Exeunt.]

## ACT THE SECOND

### SCENE I

*Enter SIGISMUND, FREDERICK, BALDWIN, and their Train*

*Sig.* Now say, my lords of Buda and Bohemia,  
What motion is it that inflames your thoughts,  
And stirs your valours to such sudden arms?

*Fred.* Your majesty remembers, I am sure,  
What cruel slaughter of our Christian bloods  
These heathenish Turks and Pagans lately made,  
Betwixt the city Zula and Danubius;  
How through the midst of Varna and Bulgaria,  
And almost to the very walls of Rome,  
They have, not long since, massacred our camp. 10  
It resteth now, then, that your majesty  
Take all advantages of time and power,  
And work revenge upon these infidels.  
Your highness knows, for Tamburlaine's repair,  
That strikes a terror to all Turkish hearts,  
Natolia hath dismissed the greatest part  
Of all his army, pitched against our power,  
Betwixt Cutheia and Orminius' Mount,  
And sent them marching up to Belgasar,  
Acantha, Antioch, and Cæsarea, 2  
To aid the Kings of Soria, and Jerusalem.  
Now then, my lord, advantage take thereof,  
And issue suddenly upon the rest;  
That in the fortune of their overthrow,  
We may discourage all the pagan troop,  
That dare attempt to war with Christians.



*Sig.* But calls not then your grace to memory  
The league we lately made with King Orcanes,  
Confirmed by oath and articles of peace,  
And calling Christ for record of our truths ? 30  
This should be treachery and violence  
Against the grace of our profession.

*Bald.* No whit, my lord, for with such infidels,  
In whom no faith nor true religion rests,  
We are not bound to those accomplishments  
The holy laws of Christendom enjoin;  
But as the faith, which they profanely plight,  
Is not by necessary policy  
To be esteemed assurance for ourselves,  
So that we vow to them should not infringe 40  
Our liberty of arms or victory.

*Sig.* Though I confess the oaths they undertake  
Breed little strength to our security,  
Yet those infirmities that thus defame  
Their faiths, their honours, and their religion,  
Should not give us presumption to the like.  
Our faiths are sound, and must be consummate,  
Religious, righteous, and inviolate.

*Fred.* Assure your grace 'tis superstition  
To stand so strictly on dispensive faith; 50  
And should we lose the opportunity  
That God hath given to venge our Christians' death,  
And scourge their foul blasphemous Paganism,  
As fell to Saul, to Balaam, and the rest,  
That would not kill and curse at God's command,  
So surely will the vengeance of the Highest,  
And jealous anger of His fearful arm,  
Be poured with rigour on our sinful heads,  
If we neglect this offered victory.

*Sig.* Then arm, my lords, and issue suddenly, 60  
Giving commandment to our general host,  
With expedition to assail the Pagan,  
And take the victory our God hath given. [Exeunt.

## SCENE II

*Enter ORCANES, GAZELLUS, and URIBASSA, with their  
Trains*

*Orc.* Gazellus, Uribassa, and the rest,  
Now will we march from proud Orminius' Mount,  
To fair Natolia, where our neighbour kings  
Expect our power and our royal presence,  
To encounter with the cruel Tamburlaine,  
That nigh Larissa sways a mighty host,  
And with the thunder of his martial tools  
Makes earthquakes in the hearts of men and Heaven.

*Gaz.* And now come we to make his sinews shake,  
With greater power than erst his pride hath felt. 10  
An hundred kings, by scores, will bid him arms,  
And hundred thousands subjects to each score,  
Which, if a shower of wounding thunderbolts  
Should break out of the bowels of the clouds,  
And fall as thick as hail upon our heads,  
In partial aid of that proud Scythian,  
Yet should our courages and steelèd crests,  
And numbers, more than infinite, of men,  
Be able to withstand and conquer him.

*Uri.* Methinks I see how glad the Christian king 20  
Is made, for joy of your admitted truce,  
That could not but before be terrified  
With unacquainted power of our host.

*Enter a Messenger*

*Mess.* Arm, dread sovereign, and my noble lords!  
The treacherous army of the Christians,  
Taking advantage of your slender power,  
Comes marching on us, and determines straight  
To bid us battle for our dearest lives.

*Orc.* Traitors! villains! damnèd Christians!  
Have I not here the articles of peace,  
And solemn covenants we have both confirmed,  
He by his Christ, and I by Mahomet?

30

*Gaz.* Hell and confusion light upon their heads,  
That with such treason seek our overthrow,  
And care so little for their prophet, Christ!

*Orc.* Can there be such deceit in Christians,  
Or treason in the fleshly heart of man,  
Whose shape is figure of the highest God!  
Then, if there be a Christ, as Christians say,  
But in their deeds deny him for their Christ,  
If he be son to ever-living Jove,  
And hath the power of his outstretchèd arm;  
If he be jealous of his name and honour,  
As is our holy prophet, Mahomet —  
Take here these papers as our sacrifice  
And witness of thy servant's perjury.

40

*[He tears to pieces the articles of peace.]*

Open, thou shining veil of Cynthia,  
And make a passage from the empyreal Heaven,  
That he that sits on high and never sleeps,  
Nor in one place is circumscribable,  
But everywhere fills every continent  
With strange infusion of his sacred vigour,  
May in his endless power and purity,  
Behold and venge this traitor's perjury!  
Thou Christ, that art esteemed omnipotent,  
If thou wilt prove thyself a perfect God,  
Worthy the worship of all faithful hearts,  
Be now revenged upon this traitor's soul,  
And make the power I have left behind,  
(Too little to defend our guiltless lives,)  
Sufficient to discomfort and confound  
The trustless force of those false Christians.  
To arms, my lords! On Christ still let us cry!  
If there be Christ, we shall have victory.

50

60

## SCENE III

*Alarms of battle within. — Enter SIGISMUND, wounded*

*Sig.* Discomfited is all the Christian host,  
And God hath thundered vengeance from on high,  
For my accursed and hateful perjury.  
O just and dreadful punisher of sin,  
Let the dishonour of the pains I feel,  
In this my mortal well-deservèd wound,  
End all my penance in my sudden death!  
And let this death, wherein to sin I die,  
Conceive a second life in endless mercy! *[He dies.*

*Enter ORCANES, GAZELLUS, URIBASSA, and others*

*Orc.* Now lie the Christians bathing in their bloods,  
And Christ or Mahomet hath been my friend. 11

*Gaz.* See here the perjured traitor Hungary,  
Bloody and breathless for his villainy.

*Orc.* Now shall his barbarous body be a prey  
To beasts and fowls, and all the winds shall breathe  
Through shady leaves of every senseless tree  
Murmurs and hisses for his heinous sin.  
Now scalds his soul in the Tartarian streams,  
And feeds upon the baneful tree of hell,  
That Zoacum, that fruit of bitterness, 20  
That in the midst of fire is ingrafted,  
Yet flourishes as Flora in her pride,  
With apples like the heads of damnèd fiends.  
The devils there, in chains of quenchless flame,  
Shall lead his soul through Orcus' burning gulf,  
From pain to pain, whose change shall never end.  
What say'st thou yet, Gazellus, to his foil  
Which we referred to justice of his Christ,  
And to his power, which here appears as full

As rays of Cynthia to the clearest sight?

30

*Gaz.* 'Tis but the fortune of the wars, my lord,  
Whose power is often proved a miracle.

*Orc.* Yet in my thoughts shall Christ be honourèd,  
Not doing Mahomet an injury,  
Whose power had share in this our victory;  
And since this miscreant hath disgraced his faith,  
And died a traitor both to Heaven and earth,  
We will both watch and ward shall keep his trunk  
Amidst these plains for fowls to prey upon.  
Go, Uribassa, give it straight in charge.

40

*Uri.* I will, my lord.

[Exit.

*Orc.* And now, Gazellus, let us haste and meet  
Our army, and our brother[s] of Jerusalem,  
Of Soria, Trebizond, and Amasia,  
And happily, with full Natolian bowls  
Or Greekish wine, now let us celebrate  
Our happy conquest and his angry fate.

[Excunt.

#### SCENE IV

*ZENOCRATE is discovered lying in her bed of state, with  
TAMBURLAINE sitting by her. About her bed are  
three PHYSICIANS tempering potions. Around are  
THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE, and her  
three Sons*

*Tamb.* Black is the beauty of the brightest day;  
The golden ball of Heaven's eternal fire,  
That danced with glory on the silver waves,  
Now wants the fuel that inflamed his beams;  
And all with faintness, and for foul disgrace,  
He binds his temples with a frowning cloud,  
Ready to darken earth with endless night.  
Zenocrate, that gave him light and life,  
Whose eyes shot fire from their ivory bowers,  
And tempered every soul with lively heat,

10

Now by the malice of the angry skies,  
Whose jealousy admits no second mate,  
Draws in the comfort of her latest breath,  
All dazzled with the hellish mists of death.  
Now walk the angels on the walls of Heaven,  
As sentinels to warn the immortal souls  
To entertain divine Zenocrate.  
Apollo, Cynthia, and the ceaseless lamps  
That gently looked upon this loathsome earth,  
Shine downward now no more, but deck the Heavens,  
To entertain divine Zenocrate. 21

The crystal springs, whose taste illuminates  
Refined eyes with an eternal sight,  
Like tried silver, run through Paradise,  
To entertain divine Zenocrate.  
The cherubins and holy seraphins,  
That sing and play before the King of kings,  
Use all their voices and their instruments  
To entertain divine Zenocrate.

And in this sweet and curious harmony, 30  
The God that tunes this music to our souls,  
Holds out his hand in highest majesty  
To entertain divine Zenocrate.

Then let some holy trance convey my thoughts  
Up to the palace of th' empyreal Heaven,  
That this my life may be as short to me  
As are the days of sweet Zenocrate. —  
Physicians, will no physic do her good?

*Phys.* My lord, your majesty shall soon perceive:  
And if <sup>she</sup> she pass this fit, the worst is past. 40

*Tamb.* Tell me, how fares my fair Zenocrate?

*Zeno.* I fare, my lord, as other empresses,  
That, when this frail and transitory flesh  
Hath sucked the measure of that vital air  
That feeds the body with his dated health,  
Wane with enforced and necessary change.

*Tamb.* May never such a change transform my love.

In whose sweet being I repose my life,  
Whose heavenly presence, beautified with health,  
Gives light to Phœbus and the fixèd stars! 50  
Whose absence makes the sun and moon as dark  
As when, opposed in one diameter,  
Their spheres are mounted on the serpent's head,  
Or else descended to his winding train.  
Live still, my love, and so conserve my life,  
Or, dying, be the author of my death!

*Zeno.* Live still, my lord! Oh, let my sovereign live  
And sooner let the fiery element  
Dissolve and make your kingdom in the sky,  
Than this base earth should shroud your majesty: 60  
For should I but suspect your death by mine,  
The comfort of my future happiness,  
And hope to meet your highness in the Heavens,  
Turned to despair, would break my wretched breast,  
And fury would confound my present rest.  
But let me die, my love; yet let me die;  
With love and patience let your true love die!  
Your grief and fury hurts my second life. —  
Yet let me kiss my lord before I die,  
And let me die with kissing of my lord. 70  
But since my life is lengthened yet a while,  
Let me take leave of these my loving sons,  
And of my lords, whose true nobility  
Have merited my latest memory.  
Sweet sons, farewell! In death resemble me,  
And in your lives your father's excellence.  
Some music, and my fit will cease, my lord.

*[They call for music.]*

*Tamb.* Proud fury, and intolerable fit,  
That dares torment the body of my love,  
And scourge the scourge of the immortal God: 80  
Now are those spheres, where Cupid used to sit,  
Wounding the world with wonder and with love,  
Sadly supplied with pale and ghastly death,

Whose darts do pierce the centre of my soul.  
Her sacred beauty hath enchanted Heaven;  
And had she lived before the siege of Troy,  
Helen (whose beauty summoned Greece to arms,  
And drew a thousand ships to Tenedos)<sup>a</sup>  
Had not been named in Homer's Iliads;  
Her name had been in every line he wrote. 90  
Or had those wanton poets, for whose birth  
Old Rome was proud, but gazed a while on her,  
Nor Lesbia nor Corinna had been named;  
Zenocrate had been the argument  
Of every epigram or elegy.

[*The music sounds.* — ZENOCRATE *dies.*

What! is she dead? Techelles, draw thy sword  
And wound the earth, that it may cleave in twain,  
And we descend into the infernal vaults,  
To hale the Fatal Sisters by the hair,  
And throw them in the triple moat of hell, 100  
For taking hence my fair Zenocrate.  
Casane and Theridamas, to arms!  
Raise cavaleros higher than the clouds,  
And with the cannon break the frame of Heaven;  
Batter the shining palace of the sun,  
And shiver all the starry firmament,  
For amorous Jove hath snatched my love from hence,  
Meaning to make her stately queen of Heaven.  
What God soever holds thee in his arms,  
Giving thee nectar and ambrosia, 110  
Behold me here, divine Zenocrate,  
Raving, impatient, desperate, and mad,  
Breaking my steelèd lance, with which I burst  
The rusty beams of Janus' temple doors,  
Letting out Death and tyrannizing War,  
To march with me under this bloody flag!  
And if thou pitiest Tamburlaine the Great,  
Come down from Heaven, and live with me again!  
*Ther.* Ah, good my lord, be patient; she is dead,



And all this raging cannot make her live. 120  
If words might serve, our voice hath rent the air;  
If tears, our eyes have watered all the earth;  
If grief, our murdered hearts have strained forth blood;  
Nothing prevails, for she is dead, my lord.

*Tamb.* "For she is dead!" Thy words do pierce my  
soul!

Ah, sweet Theridamas! say so no more;  
Though she be dead, yet let me think she lives,  
And feed my mind that dies for want of her.  
Where'er her soul be, thou [*To the body*] shalt stay with  
me,

Embalmed with cassia, ambergris, and myrrh, 130  
Not lapt in lead, but in a sheet of gold,  
And till I die thou shalt not be interred.  
Then in as rich a tomb as Mausolus'  
We both will rest and have one epitaph  
Writ in as many several languages  
As I have conquered kingdoms with my sword.  
This cursèd town will I consume with fire,  
Because this place bereaved me of my love:  
The houses, burnt, will look as if they mourned;  
And here will I set up her statua, 140  
And march about it with my mourning camp  
Drooping and pining for Zenocrate.

[*The scene closes.*]

## ACT THE THIRD

### SCENE I

*Enter the KINGS of TREBIZOND and SORIA, one bearing a sword and the other a sceptre; next ORCANES King of Natolia and the KING of JERUSALEM with the imperial crown; after them enters CALLAPINE, and after him other LORDS and ALMEDA. ORCANES and the KING of JERUSALEM crown CALLAPINE, and the others give him the sceptre*

*Orc.* Callapinus Cyricelibes, otherwise Cybelius, son and successive heir to the late mighty emperor, Bajazeth, by the aid of God and his friend Mahomet, Emperor of Natolia, Jerusalem, Trebizond, Soria, Amasia, Thracia, Illyria, Carmania, and all the hundred and thirty kingdoms late contributory to his mighty father. Long live Callapinus, Emperor of Turkey!

*Call.* Thrice worthy kings of Natolia, and the rest,  
I will requite your royal gratuities  
With all the benefits my empire yields; 10  
And were the sinews of the imperial seat  
So knit and strengthened as when Bajazeth  
My royal lord and father filled the throne,  
Whose cursèd fate hath so dismembered it,  
Then should you see this thief of Scythia,  
This proud, usurping King of Persia,  
Do us such honour and supremacy,  
Bearing the vengeance of our father's wrongs,  
As all the world should blot his dignities  
Out of the book of base-born infamies. 20  
And now I doubt not but your royal cares

Have so provided for this cursèd foe,  
That, since the heir of mighty Bajazeth,  
(An emperor so honoured for his virtues,)  
Revives the spirits of all true Turkish hearts,  
In grievous memory of his father's shame,  
We shall not need to nourish any doubt,  
But that proud fortune, who hath followed long  
The martial sword of mighty Tamburlaine,  
Will now retain her old inconstancy, 30  
And raise our honours to as high a pitch,  
In this our strong and fortunate encounter;  
For so hath heaven provided my escape,  
From all the cruelty my soul sustained,  
By this my friendly keeper's happy means,  
That Jove, surcharged with pity of our wrongs,  
Will pour it down in showers on our heads,  
Scourging the pride of cursèd Tamburlaine.

*Orc.* I have a hundred thousand men in arms;  
Some, that in conquest of the perjured Christian, 40  
Being a handful to a mighty host,  
Think them in number yet sufficient  
To drink the river Nile or Euphrates,  
And for their power enow to win the world.

*K. of Jer.* And I as many from Jerusalem,  
Judæa, Gaza, and Scalonia's bounds,  
That on Mount Sinai with their ensigns spread,  
Look like the parti-coloured clouds of Heaven  
That show fair weather to the neighbour morn.

*K. of Treb.* And I as many bring from Trebizond, 50  
Chio, Famastro, and Amasia,  
All bordering on the Mare Major sea,  
Riso, Sancina, and the bordering towns  
That touch the end of famous Euphrates,  
Whose courages are kindled with the flames,  
The cursed Scythian sets on all their towns,  
And vow to burn the villain's cruel heart.

*K. of Sor.* From Soria with seventy thousand strong

Ta'en from Aleppo, Soldino, Tripoli,  
And so on to my city of Damasco, 60  
I march to meet and aid my neighbour kings;  
All which will join against this Tamburlaine,  
And bring him captive to your highness' feet.

*Orc.* Our battle then in martial manner pitched,  
According to our ancient use, shall bear  
The figure of the semicircled moon,  
Whose horns shall sprinkle through the tainted air  
The poisoned brains of this proud Scythian.

*Call.* Well then, my noble lords, for this my friend  
That freed me from the bondage of my foe, 70  
I think it requisite and honourable,  
To keep my promise and to make him king,  
That is a gentleman, I know, at least.

*Alm.* That's no matter, sir, for being a king; for  
Tamburlaine came up of nothing.

*K. of Jer.* Your majesty may choose some 'pointed  
time,

Performing all your promise to the full;  
'Tis nought for your majesty to give a kingdom.

*Call.* Then will I shortly keep my promise, Almeda.

*Alm.* Why, I thank your majesty. [*Exeunt.* 80

## SCENE II

*Enter TAMBURLAINE, with his three Sons and USUM-CASANE; four Attendants bearing the hearse of ZENOCRATE; the drums sounding a doleful march; the town burning*

*Tamb.* So burn the turrets of this cursèd town,  
Flame to the highest region of the air,  
And kindle heaps of exhalations,  
That being fiery meteors may presage  
Death and destruction to the inhabitants!  
Over my zenith hang a blazing star,

That may endure till Heaven be dissolved,  
Fed with the fresh supply of earthly dregs,  
Threatening a dearth and famine to this land!  
Flying dragons, lightning, fearful thunder-claps, 10  
Sing these fair plains and make them seem as black  
As is the island where the Furies mask,  
Compassed with Lethe, Styx, and Phlegethon,  
Because my dear'st Zenocrate is dead.

*Cal.* This pillar, placed in memory of her,  
Where in Arabian, Hebrew, Greek, is writ —  
*This town, being burnt by Tamburlaine the Great,*  
*Forbids the world to build it up again.*

*Amy.* And here this mournful streamer shall be placed,  
Wrought with the Persian and th' Egyptian arms, 20  
To signify she was a princess born,  
And wife unto the monarch of the East.

*Cel.* And here this table as a register  
Of all her virtues and perfections.

*Tamb.* And here the picture of Zenocrate,  
To show her beauty which the world admired;  
Sweet picture of divine Zenocrate,  
That, hanging here, will draw the gods from Heaven,  
And cause the stars fixed in the southern arc,  
(Whose lovely faces never any viewed 30  
That have not passed the centre's latitude,)  
As pilgrims, travel to our hemisphere,  
Only to gaze upon Zenocrate.  
Thou shalt not beautify Larissa plains,  
But keep within the circle of mine arms.  
At every town and castle I besiege,  
Thou shalt be set upon my royal tent;  
And when I meet an army in the field,  
Those looks will shed such influence in my camp  
As if Bellona, goddess of the war, 40  
Threw naked swords and sulphur-balls of fire  
Upon the heads of all our enemies.  
And now, my lords, advance your spears again:

Sorrow no more, my sweet Casane, now;  
Boys, leave to mourn! this town shall ever mourn,  
Being burnt to cinders for your mother's death.

*Cal.* If I had wept a sea of tears for her,  
It would not ease the sorrows I sustain.

*Amy.* As is that town, so is my heart consumed  
With grief and sorrow for my mother's death. 50

*Cel.* My mother's death hath mortified my mind,  
And sorrow stops the passage of my speech.

*Tamb.* But now, my boys, leave off and list to me,  
That mean to teach you rudiments of war;  
I'll have you learn to sleep upon the ground,  
March in your armour thorough watery fens,  
Sustain the scorching heat and freezing cold,  
Hunger and thirst, right adjuncts of the war,  
And after this to scale a castle wall,  
Besiege a fort, to undermine a town, 60  
And make whole cities caper in the air.  
Then next the way to fortify your men;  
In champion grounds, what figure serves you best,  
For which the quinque-angle form is meet,  
Because the corners there may fall more flat  
Whereas the fort may fittest be assailed,  
And sharpest where the assault is desperate.  
The ditches must be deep; the counterscarps  
Narrow and steep; the walls made high and broad;  
The bulwarks and the rampires large and strong, 70  
With cavalieros and thick counterforts,  
And room within to lodge six thousand men.  
It must have privy ditches, countermines,  
And secret issuings to defend the ditch;  
It must have high argins and covered ways,  
To keep the bulwark fronts from battery,  
And parapets to hide the musketeers;  
Casemates to place the great artillery;  
And store of ordnance, that from every flank  
May scour the outward curtains of the fort, 80

Dismount the cannon of the adverse part,  
Murder the foe, and save the walls from breach.  
When this is learned for service on the land,  
By plain and easy demonstration  
I'll teach you how to make the water mount,  
That you may dry-foot march through lakes and pools,  
Deep rivers, havens, creeks, and little seas,  
And make a fortress in the raging waves,  
Fenced with the concave of monstrous rock,  
Invincible by nature of the place. 90  
When this is done, then are ye soldiers,  
And worthy sons of Tamburlaine the Great.

*Cal.* My lord, but this is dangerous to be done;  
We may be slain or wounded ere we learn.

*Tamb.* Villain! Art thou the son of Tamburlaine,  
And fear'st to die, or with a curtal-ax  
To hew thy flesh, and make a gaping wound?  
Hast thou beheld a peal of ordnance strike  
A ring of pikes, mingled with shot and horse,  
Whose shattered limbs, being tossed as high as Heaven,  
Hang in the air as thick as sunny motes, 101  
And canst thou, coward, stand in fear of death?  
Hast thou not seen my horsemen charge the foe,  
Shot through the arms, cut overthwart the hands,  
Dyeing their lances with their streaming blood,  
And yet at night carouse within my tent,  
Filling their empty veins with airy wine,  
That, being concocted, turns to crimson blood,  
And wilt thou shun the field for fear of wounds?  
View me, thy father, that hath conquered kings, 110  
And, with his horse, marched round about the earth,  
Quite void of scars, and clear from any wound,  
That by the wars lost not a drop of blood,  
And see him lance his flesh to teach you all.

*[He cuts his arm.]*

A wound is nothing, be it ne'er so deep;  
Blood is the god of war's rich livery.

Now look I like a soldier, and this wound  
As great a grace and majesty to me,  
As if a chain of gold, enamellèd,  
Enchased with diamonds, sapphires, rubies, 130  
And fairest pearl of wealthy India,  
Were mounted here under a canopy,  
And I sat down clothed with a massy robe,  
That late adorned the Afric potentate,  
Whom I brought bound unto Damascus' walls.  
Come, boys, and with your fingers search my wound,  
And in my blood wash all your hands at once,  
While I sit smiling to behold the sight.

Now, my boys, what think ye of a wound?

*Cal.* I know not what I should think of it; methinks  
it is a pitiful sight. 131

*Cel.* 'Tis nothing: give me a wound, father.

*Amy.* And me another, my lord.

*Tamb.* Come, sirrah, give me your arm.

*Cel.* Here, father, cut it bravely, as you did your own.

*Tamb.* It shall suffice thou dardest abide a wound;  
My boy, thou shalt not lose a drop of blood  
Before we meet the army of the Turk:  
But then run desperate through the thickest throngs,  
Dreadless of blows, of bloody wounds, and death; 140  
And let the burning of Larissa walls,  
My speech of war, and this my wound you see,  
Teach you, my boys, to bear courageous minds,  
Fit for the followers of great Tamburlaine!  
Usumcasane, now come let us march  
Towards Techelles and Theridamas,  
That we have sent before to fire the towns,  
The towers and cities of these hateful Turks,  
And hunt that coward, faint-heart runaway,  
With that accursèd traitor Almeda, 150  
Till fire and sword have found them at a bay.

*Usum.* I long to pierce his bowels with my sword,  
That hath betrayed my gracious sovereign —



That cursed and damnèd traitor Almeda.

*Tamb.* Then let us see if coward Callapine  
Dare levy arms against our puissance,  
That we may tread upon his captive neck,  
And treble all his father's slaveries.

[*Exeunt.*]

### SCENE III

*Enter TECHELLES, THERIDAMAS, and their Train*

*Ther.* Thus have we marched northward<sup>n</sup> from Tam-  
burlaine,  
Unto the frontier point of Soria;  
And this is Balsera, their chiefest hold,  
Wherein is all the treasure of the land.

*Tech.* Then let us bring our light artillery,  
Minions, falc'nets, and sakers to the trench,  
Filling the ditches with the walls' wide breach,  
And enter in to seize upon the hold.

How say you, soldiers? shall we [or] not?

*Sold.* Yes, my lord, yes; come, let's about it.

*Ther.* But stay awhile; summon a parley, drum.  
It may be they will yield it quietly,  
Knowing two kings, the friends to Tamburlaine,  
Stand at the walls with such a mighty power.

*A parley sounded. — The CAPTAIN appears on the walls,  
with OLYMPIA his Wife, and his Son*

*Capt.* What require you, my masters?

*Ther.* Captain, that thou yield up thy hold to us.

*Capt.* To you! Why, do you think me weary of it?

*Tech.* Nay, captain, thou art weary of thy life,  
If thou withstand the friends of Tamburlaine!

*Ther.* These pioners of Argier in Africa,  
Even in the cannon's face, shall raise a hill  
Of earth and faggots higher than the fort,

And over thy argins and covered ways  
Shall play upon the bulwarks of thy hold  
Volleys of ordnance, till the breach be made  
That with his ruin fills up all the trench,  
And when we enter in, not Heaven itself  
Shall ransom thee, thy wife, and family.

*Tech.* Captain, these Moors shall cut the leaden pipes,  
That bring fresh water to thy men and thee, 30  
And lie in trench before thy castle walls,  
That no supply of victual shall come in,  
Nor any issue forth but they shall die;  
And, therefore, captain, yield it quietly.

*Capt.* Were you, that are the friends of Tamburlaine,  
Brothers of holy Mahomet himself,  
I would not yield it; therefore do your worst:  
Raise mounts, batter, intrench, and undermine,  
Cut off the water, all convoys that come,  
Yet I am resolute, and so farewell. 40

[CAPTAIN, OLYMPIA, and their Son retire from  
the walls.

*Ther.* Pioners, away! and where I stuck the stake,  
Intrench with those dimensions I prescribed.  
Cast up the earth towards the castle wall,  
Which, till it may defend you, labour low,  
And few or none shall perish by their shot.

*Pio.* We will, my lord. [Exeunt Pioners.

*Tech.* A hundred horse shall scout about the plains  
To spy what force comes to relieve the hold.  
Both we, Theridamas, will entrench our men,  
And with the Jacob's staff measure the height 50  
And distance of the castle from the trench,  
That we may know if our artillery  
Will carry full point-blank unto their walls.

*Ther.* Then see the bringing of our ordnance  
Along the trench into the battery,  
Where we will have gabions of six feet broad  
To save our cannoneers from musket shot.

Betwixt which shall our ordnance thunder forth,  
And with the breach's fall, smoke, fire, and dust,  
The crack, the echo, and the soldier's cry, 60  
Make deaf the ear and dim the crystal sky.

*Tech.* Trumpets and drums, alarum presently;  
And, soldiers, play the men; the hold is yours. [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE IV

*Alarm within. — Enter the CAPTAIN, with OLYMPIA,  
and his Son*

*Olymp.* Come, good my lord, and let us haste from  
hence  
Along the cave that leads beyond the foe;  
No hope is left to save this conquered hold.

*Capt.* A deadly bullet, gliding through my side,  
Lies heavy on my heart; I cannot live.  
I feel my liver pierced, and all my veins,  
That there begin and nourish every part,  
Mangled and torn, and all my entrails bathed  
In blood that straineth from their orifex.  
Farewell, sweet wife! sweet son, farewell! I die. [*He dies.*]

*Olymp.* Death, whither art thou gone, that both we  
live? 11

Come back again, sweet Death, and strike us both!  
One minute end our days! and one sepulchre  
Contain our bodies! Death, why com'st thou not?  
Well, this must be the messenger for thee:

[*Drawing a dagger.*]

Now, ugly Death, stretch out thy sable wings,  
And carry both our souls where his remains.  
Tell me, sweet boy, art thou content to die?  
These barbarous Scythians, full of cruelty,  
And Moors, in whom was never pity found, 20  
Will hew us piecemeal, put us to the wheel,  
Or else invent some torture worse than that;  
Therefore die by thy loving mother's hand,

Who gently now will lance thy ivory throat,  
And quickly rid thee both of pain and life.

*Son.* Mother, despatch me, or I'll kill myself;  
For think you I can live and see him dead ?  
Give me your knife, good mother, or strike home:  
The Scythians shall not tyrannize on me:  
Sweet mother, strike, that I may meet my father. 30

• [*She stabs him and he dies.*]

*Olymp.* Ah, sacred Mahomet, if this be sin,  
Entreat a pardon of the God of Heaven,  
And purge my soul before it come to thee.

[*She burns the bodies of her Husband and Son  
and then attempts to kill herself.*]

*Enter THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, and all their Train*

*Ther.* How now, madam, what are you doing ?

*Olymp.* Killing myself, as I have done my son,  
Whose body, with his father's, I have burnt,  
Lest cruel Scythians should dismember him.

*Tech.* 'Twas bravely done, and, like a soldier's wife.  
Thou shalt with us to Tamburlaine the Great,  
Who, when he hears how resolute thou art, 40  
Will match thee with a viceroy or a king.

*Olymp.* My lord deceased was dearer unto me  
Than any viceroy, king, or emperor;  
And for his sake here will I end my days.

*Ther.* But, lady, go with us to Tamburlaine,  
And thou shalt see a man, greater than Mahomet,  
In whose high looks is much more majesty  
Than from the concave superficies  
Of Jove's vast palace, the empyreal orb,  
Unto the shining bower where Cynthia sits, 50  
Like lovely Thetis, in a crystal robe;  
That treadeth fortune underneath his feet,  
And makes the mighty god of arms his slave;  
On whom Death and the Fatal Sisters wait

With naked swords and scarlet liveries:  
Before whom, mounted on a lion's back,  
Rhamnusia bears a helmet full of blood,  
And strews the way with brains of slaughtered men;  
By whose proud side the ugly Furies run,  
Hearkening when he shall bid them plague the world;  
Over whose zenith, clothed in windy air, 61  
And eagle's wings joined to her feathered breast,  
Fame hovereth, sounding of her golden trump,  
That to the adverse poles of that straight line,  
Which measureth the glorious frame of Heaven,  
The name of mighty Tamburlaine is spread,  
And him, fair lady, shall thy eyes behold.  
Come!

*Olymp.* Take pity of a lady's ruthful tears,  
That humbly craves upon her knees to stay 70  
And cast her body in the burning flame,  
That feeds upon her son's and husband's flesh.

*Tech.* Madam, sooner shall fire consume us both,  
Than scorch a face so beautiful as this,  
In frame of which Nature hath showed more skill  
Than when she gave eternal chaos form,  
Drawing from it the shining lamps of Heaven.

*Ther.* Madam, I am so far in love with you,  
That you must go with us — no remedy.

*Olymp.* Then carry me, I care not, where you will, 80  
And let the end of this my fatal journey  
Be likewise end to my accursèd life.

*Tech.* No, madam, but the beginning of your joy:  
Come willingly therefore.

*Ther.* Soldiers, now let us meet the general,  
Who by this time is at Natolia,  
Ready to charge the army of the Turk.  
The gold and silver, and the pearl, we got,  
Rifling this fort, divide in equal shares:  
This lady shall have twice as much again 90  
Out of the coffers of our treasury.

[*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE V

*Enter CALLAPINE, ORCANES, ALMEDA, and the KINGS of JERUSALEM, TREBIZOND, and SORIA, with their Trains. — To them enters a Messenger*

*Mes.* Renownèd Emperor, mighty Callapine,  
God's great lieutenant over all the world!  
Here at Aleppo, with a host of men,  
Lies Tamburlaine, this King of Persia,  
(In numbers more than are the quivering leaves  
Of Ida's forest, where your highness' hounds,  
With open cry, pursue the wounded stag,)  
Who means to girt Natolia's walls with siege,  
Fire the town, and overrun the land.

*Call.* My royal army is as great as his, 10  
That, from the bounds of Phrygia to the sea  
Which washeth Cyprus with his brinish waves,  
Covers the hills, the valleys, and the plains.  
Viceroys and peers of Turkey, play the men!  
Whet all your swords, to mangle Tamburlaine,  
His sons, his captains, and his followers;  
By Mahomet! not one of them shall live;  
The field wherein this battle shall be fought  
For ever term the Persian's sepulchre,  
In memory of this our victory! 20

*Orc.* Now, he that calls himself the scourge of Jove,  
The emperor of the world, and earthly god,  
Shall end the warlike progress he intends,  
And travel headlong to the lake of hell,  
Where legions of devils, (knowing he must die  
Here, in Natolia, by your highness' hands,)  
All brandishing their brands of quenchless fire,  
Stretching their monstrous paws, grin with their teeth  
And guard the gates to entertain his soul.

*Call.* Tell me, viceroys, the number of your men, 30  
And what our army royal is esteemed.

*K. of Jer.* From Palestina and Jerusalem,  
Of Hebrews threescore thousand fighting men  
Are come since last we showed your majesty.

*Orc.* So from Arabia Desert, and the bounds  
Of that sweet land, whose brave metropolis  
Re-edified the fair Semiramis,  
Came forty thousand warlike foot and horse,  
Since last we numbered to your majesty.

*K. of Treb.* From Trebizond, in Asia the Less, 40  
Naturalized Turks and stout Bithynians  
Came to my bands, full fifty thousand more  
(That, fighting, know not what retreat doth mean,  
Nor e'er return but with the victory,)  
Since last we numbered to your majesty.

*K. of Sor.* Of Sorians from Halla is repaired,  
And neighbour cities of your highness' land,  
Ten thousand horse, and thirty thousand foot,  
Since last we numbered to your majesty;  
So that the royal army is esteemed 50  
Six hundred thousand valiant fighting men.

*Call.* Then welcome, Tamburlaine, unto thy death.  
Come, puissant viceroys, let us to the field,  
(The Persians' sepulchre,) and sacrifice  
Mountains of breathless men to Mahomet,  
Who now, with Jove, opens the firmament  
To see the slaughter of our enemies.

*Enter TAMBURLAINE with his three Sons, USUMCASANE,  
and others*

*Tamb.* How now, Casane? See a knot of kings,  
Sitting as if they were a-telling riddles.

*Usum.* My lord, your presence makes them pale and  
wan: 60  
Poor souls! they look as if their death were near.

*Tamb.* And so he is, Casane; I am here;  
But yet I'll save their lives, and make them slaves.  
Ye petty kings of Turkey, I am come,  
As Hector did into the Grecian camp,  
To overdare the pride of Græcia,  
And set his warlike person to the view  
Of fierce Achilles, rival of his fame:  
I do you honour in the simile;  
For if I should, as Hector did Achilles, 70  
(The worthiest knight that ever brandished sword),  
Challenge in combat any of you all,  
I see how fearfully ye would refuse,  
And fly my glove as from a scorpion.

*Orc.* Now thou art fearful of thy army's strength,  
Thou would'st with overmatch of person fight;  
But, shepherd's issue, base-born Tamburlaine,  
Think of thy end! this sword shall lance thy throat.

*Tamb.* Villain! the shepherd's issue (at whose birth  
Heaven did afford a gracious aspect, 80  
And joined those stars that shall be opposite  
Even till the dissolution of the world,  
And never meant to make a conqueror  
So famous as is mighty Tamburlaine,)  
Shall so torment thee and that Callapine,  
That, like a roguish runaway, suborned  
That villain there, that slave, that Turkish dog,  
To false his service to his sovereign,  
As ye shall curse the birth of Tamburlaine.

*Call.* Rail not, proud Scythian! I shall now re-  
venge 90

My father's vile abuses, and mine own.

*K. of Jer.* By Mahomet! he shall be tied in chains,  
Rowing with Christians in a brigandine  
About the Grecian isles to rob and spoil,  
And turn him to his ancient trade again:  
Methinks the slave should make a lusty thief.

*Call.* Nay, when the battle ends, all we will meet,



And sit in council to invent some pain  
That most may vex his body and his soul.

*Tamb.* Sirrah, Callapine! I'll hang a clog about your neck for running away again;<sup>n</sup> you shall not trouble me thus to come and fetch you; 102

But as for you, viceroys, you shall have bits,  
And, harnessed like my horses, draw my coach;  
And when ye stay, be lashed with whips of wire.  
I'll have you learn to feed on provender  
And in a stable lie upon the planks.

*Orc.* But, Tamburlaine, first thou shalt kneel to us,  
And humbly crave a pardon for thy life.

*K. of Treb.* The common soldiers of our mighty host  
Shall bring thee bound unto the general's tent. 111

*K. of Sor.* And all have jointly sworn thy cruel death,  
Or bind thee in eternal torments' wrath.

*Tamb.* Well, sirs, diet yourselves; you know I shall  
have occasion shortly to journey you.

*Cel.* See, father,  
How Almeda the jailer looks upon us.

*Tamb.* Villain! traitor! damnèd fugitive!  
I'll make thee wish the earth had swallowed thee,  
See'st thou not death within my wrathful looks? 120  
Go, villain, cast thee headlong from a rock,  
Or rip thy bowels, and rend out thy heart  
To appease my wrath! or else I'll torture thee,  
Searing thy hateful flesh with burning irons  
And drops of scalding lead, while all thy joints  
Be racked and beat asunder with the wheel;  
For, if thou liv'st, not any element  
Shall shroud thee from the wrath of Tamburlaine.

*Call.* Well, in despite of thee he shall be king.  
Come, Almeda; receive this crown of me, 130  
I here invest thee King of Ariadan  
Bordering on Mare Roso, near to Mecca.

*Orc.* What! Take it, man.

*Alm.* Good my lord, let me take it.<sup>n</sup> [*To TAMBURLAINE.*]

*Call.* Dost thou ask him leave? Here; take it.

*Tamb.* Go to, sirrah, take your crown, and make up the half-dozen. So, sirrah, now you are a king, you must give arms.<sup>a</sup>

*Orc.* So he shall, and wear thy head in his scutcheon.

*Tamb.* No; let him hang a bunch of keys on his standard to put him in remembrance he was a jailer, that when I take him, I may knock out his brains with them, and lock you in the stable, when you shall come sweating from my chariot. 144

*K. of Treb.* Away; let us to the field, that the villain may be slain.

*Tamb.* Sirrah, prepare whips and bring my chariot to my tent, for as soon as the battle is done, I'll ride in triumph through the camp.

*Enter THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, and their Train*

How now, ye petty kings? Lo, here are bugs 150  
Will make the hair stand upright on your heads,  
And cast your crowns in slavery at their feet.  
Welcome, Theridamas and Techelles, both!  
See ye this rout, and know ye this same king?

*Ther.* Ay, my lord; he was Callapine's keeper.

*Tamb.* Well, now ye see he is a king; look to him, Theridamas, when we are fighting, lest he hide his crown as the foolish King of Persia did.

*K. of Sor.* No, Tamburlaine; he shall not be put to that exigent, I warrant thee. 160

*Tamb.* You know not, sir —

But now, my followers and my loving friends,  
Fight as you ever did, like conquerors,  
The glory of this happy day is yours.  
My stern aspect shall make fair victory,  
Hovering betwixt our armies, light on me  
Loaden with laurel wreaths to crown us all.

*Tech.* I smile to think how, when this field is fought

And rich Natolia ours, our men shall sweat  
With carrying pearl and treasure on their backs. 170

*Tamb.* You shall be princes all, immediately;  
Come, fight ye Turks, or yield us victory.

*Orc.* No; we will meet thee, slavish Tamburlaine.

[*Exeunt.*

## ACT THE FOURTH

### SCENE I

*Alarums within. — AMYRAS and CELEBINUS issue from the tent where CALYPHAS sits asleep*

*Amy.* Now in their glories shine the golden crowns  
Of these proud Turks, much like so many suns  
That half dismay the majesty of Heaven.  
Now, brother, follow we our father's sword,  
That flies with fury swifter than our thoughts,  
And cuts down armies with his conquering wings.

*Cel.* Call forth our lazy brother from the tent,  
For if my father miss him in the field,  
Wrath, kindled in the furnace of his breast,  
Will send a deadly lightning to his heart. 10

*Amy.* Brother, ho! what, given so much to sleep,  
You cannot leave it, when our enemies' drums  
And rattling cannons thunder in our ears  
Our proper ruin and our father's foil?

*Cal.* Away, ye fools! my father needs not me,  
Nor you in faith, but that you will be thought  
More childish-valorous than manly-wise.  
If half our camp should sit and sleep with me,  
My father were enough to scare the foe.  
You do dishonour to his majesty, 20  
To think our helps will do him any good.

*Amy.* What! Dar'st thou, then, be absent from the  
field,  
Knowing my father hates thy cowardice,  
And oft hath warned thee to be still in field,  
When he himself amidst the thickest troops  
Beats down our foes, to flesh our taintless swords?

*Cal.* I know, sir, what it is to kill a man;  
It works remorse of conscience in me;

I take no pleasure to be murderous,  
Nor care for blood when wine will quench my thirst. 30

*Cal.* O cowardly boy! Fie! for shame come forth!  
Thou dost dishonour manhood and thy house.

*Cal.* Go, go, tall stripling, fight you for us both,  
And take my other toward brother here,  
For person like to prove a second Mars.  
'Twill please my mind as well to hear you both  
Have won a heap of honour in the field  
And left your slender carcasses behind,  
As if I lay with you for company.

*Amy.* You will not go then?

*Cal.* You say true. 40

*Amy.* Were all the lofty mounts of Zona Mundi  
That fill the midst of farthest Tartary  
Turned into pearl and proffered for my stay,  
I would not bide the fury of my father,  
When, made a victor in these haughty arms,  
He comes and finds his sons have had no shares  
In all the honours he proposed for us.

*Cal.* Take you the honour, I will take my ease;  
My wisdom shall excuse my cowardice.  
I go into the field before I need! 50

[*Alarums.* — *AMYRAS and CELEBINUS run out.*  
The bullets fly at random where they list;  
And should I go and kill a thousand men,  
I were as soon rewarded with a shot,  
And sooner far than he that never fights;  
And should I go and do no harm nor good,  
I might have harm which all the good I have,  
Joined with my father's crown, would never cure.  
I'll to cards. *Perdicas!*

*Enter PERDICAS*

*Perd.* Here, my lord.

*Cal.* Come, thou and I will go to cards to drive away  
the time. 60

*Perd.* Content, my lord; but what shall we play for?

*Cal.* Who shall kiss the fairest of the Turk's concubines first, when my father hath conquered them.

*Perd.* Agreed, i' faith. *[They play.]*

*Cal.* They say I am a coward, Perdicas, and I fear as little their taratantas, their swords or their cannons, as I do a naked lady in a net of gold, and, for fear I should be afraid, would put it off and come to bed with me.

*Perd.* Such a fear, my lord, would never make ye retire.

*Cal.* I would my father would let me be put in the front of such a battle once to try my valour. *[Alarms within.]*  
What a coil they keep! I believe there will be some hurt done anon amongst them. *[Exeunt.]* 73

## SCENE II

*Enter TAMBUELAINÉ, THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, USUMCASANE, AMYRAS, and CELEBINUS, leading in ORCANES and the KINGS of JERUSALEM, TREBIZOND, and SORIA*

*Tamb.* See now, ye slaves, my children stoop your pride,  
And lead your bodies sheep-like to the sword.  
Bring them, my boys, and tell me if the wars  
Be not a life that may illustrate gods,  
And tickle not your spirits with desire  
Still to be trained in arms and chivalry?

*Amy.* Shall we let go these kings again, my lord,  
To gather greater numbers 'gainst our power,  
That they may say it is not chance doth this,  
But matchless strength and magnanimity? 10

*Tamb.* No, no, Amyras; tempt not fortune so:  
Cherish thy valour still with fresh supplies,  
And glut it not with stale and daunted foes.  
But where's this coward villain, not my son,  
But traitor to my name and majesty?

*[He goes in and brings CALYPHAS out.]*

Image of sloth and picture of a slave,  
The obloquy and scorn of my renown!  
How may my heart, thus fired with mine eyes,  
Wounded with shame and killed with discontent,  
Shroud any thought may hold my striving hands 20  
From martial justice on thy wretched soul?

*Ther.* Yet pardon him, I pray your majesty.

*Tech. and Usum.* Let all of us entreat your highness' pardon.

*Tamb.* Stand up, ye base, unworthy soldiers!  
Know ye not yet the argument of arms?

*Amy.* Good my lord, let him be forgiven for once,  
And we will force him to the field hereafter.

*Tamb.* Stand up, my boys, and I will teach ye arms,  
And what the jealousy of wars must do.  
O Samarcanda (where I breathed first 30  
And joyed the fire of this martial flesh),  
Blush, blush, fair city, at thine honour's foil,<sup>a</sup>  
And shame of nature, which Jaertis' stream,  
Embracing thee with deepest of his love,  
Can never wash from thy distained brows!  
Here, Jove, receive his fainting soul again;  
A form not meet to give that subject essence  
Whose matter is the flesh of Tamburlaine;  
Wherein an incorporeal spirit moves, 40  
Made of the mould whereof thyself consists,  
Which makes me valiant, proud, ambitious,  
Ready to levy power against thy throne,  
That I might move the turning spheres of Heaven!  
For earth and all this airy region  
Cannot contain the state of Tamburlaine.  
By Mahomet! thy mighty friend, I swear,  
In sending to my issue such a soul,  
Created of the massy dregs of earth,  
The scum and tartar of the elements,  
Wherein was neither courage, strength, or wit, 50  
But folly, sloth, and damned idleness,

Thou hast procured a greater enemy  
Than he that darted mountains at thy head,  
Shaking the burthen mighty Atlas bears;  
Whereat thou trembling hid'st thee in the air,  
Clothed with a pitchy cloud for being seen:<sup>n</sup>  
And now, ye cankered curs of Asia,  
That will not see the strength of Tamburlaine,  
Although it shine as brightly as the sun;  
Now you shall feel the strength of Tamburlaine, 60  
And, by the state of his supremacy, [*Stabs CALYPHAS.*  
Approve the difference 'twixt himself and you.

*Orc.* Thou show'st the difference 'twixt ourselves and  
thee,  
In this thy barbarous damnèd tyranny.

*K. of Jer.* Thy victories are grown so violent,  
That shortly Heaven, filled with the meteors  
Of blood and fire thy tyrannies have made,  
Will pour down blood and fire on thy head,  
Whose scalding drops will pierce thy seething brains,  
And, with our bloods, revenge our bloods on thee. 70

*Tamb.* Villains! these terrors and these tyrannies  
(If tyrannies war's justice ye repute,)  
I execute, enjoined me from above,  
To scourge the pride of such as Heaven abhors;  
Nor am I made arch-monarch of the world,  
Crowned and invested by the hand of Jove  
For deeds of bounty or nobility;  
But since I exercise a greater name,  
The scourge of God, and terror of the world,  
I must apply myself to fit those terms, 80  
In war, in blood, in death, in cruelty,  
And plague such peasants as resist in me,  
The power of Heaven's eternal majesty.  
Theridamas, Techelles, and Casane,  
Ransack the tents and the pavilions  
Of these proud Turks, and take their concubines,  
Making them bury this effeminate brat,



For not a common soldier shall defile  
His manly fingers with so faint a boy.  
Then bring those Turkish harlots to my tent,  
And I'll dispose them as it likes me best;  
Meanwhile, take him in.

*Sold.* We will, my lord.

[*Exeunt with the body of CALYPHAS.*

*K. of Jer.* O damnèd monster! Nay, a fiend of hell,  
Whose cruelties are not so harsh as thine,  
Nor yet imposed with such a bitter hate!

*Orc.* Revenge it, Rhadamanth and Æacus,  
And let your hates, extended in his pains,  
Excel the hate wherewith he pains our souls.

*K. of Treb.* May never day give virtue to his eyes,  
Whose sight, composed of fury and of fire,  
Doth send such stern affections to his heart.

*K. of Sor.* May never spirit, vein, or artier, feed  
The cursèd substance of that cruel heart!  
But, wanting moisture and remorseful blood,  
Dry up with anger, and consume with heat.

*Tamb.* Well, bark, ye dogs; I'll bridle all your tongues,  
And bind them close with bits of burnished steel,  
Down to the channels of your hateful throats;  
And, with the pains my rigour shall inflict,  
I'll make ye roar, that earth may echo forth  
The far-resounding torments ye sustain:  
As when an herd of lusty Cimbrian bulls  
Run mourning round about the females' miss,<sup>a</sup>  
And, stung with fury of their following,  
Fill all the air with troublous bellowing;  
I will, with engines never exercised,  
Conquer, sack, and utterly consume  
Your cities and your golden palaces;  
And, with the flames that beat against the clouds,  
Incense the Heavens, and make the stars to melt,  
As if they were the tears of Mahomet,  
For hot consumption of his country's pride;

And, till by vision or by speech I hear  
Immortal Jove say "Cease, my Tamburlaine,"  
I will persist, a terror to the world,  
Making the meteors (that, like armèd men,  
Are seen to march upon the towers of Heaven),  
Run tilting round about the firmament,  
And break their burning lances in the air, 130  
For honour of my wondrous victories.  
Come, bring them in to our pavilion. [Exeunt.

## SCENE III

*OLYMPIA discovered alone*

*Olymp.* Distressed Olympia, whose weeping eyes  
Since thy arrival here behold no sun,  
But closed within the compass of a tent  
Hath stained thy cheeks, and made thee look like  
death,  
Devise some means to rid thee of thy life,  
Rather than yield to his detested suit,  
Whose drift is only to dishonour thee;  
And since this earth, dewed with thy brinish tears,  
Affords no herbs whose taste may poison thee,  
Nor yet this air, beat often with thy sighs, 10  
Contagious smells and vapours to infect thee,  
Nor thy close cave a sword to murder thee;  
Let this invention be the instrument.

*Enter THERIDAMAS*

*Ther.* Well met, Olympia; I sought thee in my tent,  
But when I saw the place obscure and dark,  
Which with thy beauty thou wast wont to light,  
Enraged, I ran about the fields for thee,  
Supposing amorous Jove had sent his son,

The wingèd Hermes, to convey thee hence;

But now I find thee, and that fear is past.

20

Tell me, Olympia, wilt thou grant my suit?

*Olymp.* My lord and husband's death, with my  
sweet son's,

(With whom I buried all affections

Save grief and sorrow, which torment my heart,)

Forbids my mind to entertain a thought

That tends to love, but meditate on death,

A fitter subject for a pensive soul.

*Ther.* Olympia, pity him, in whom thy looks

Have greater operation and more force

Than Cynthia's in the watery wilderness,

30

For with thy view my joys are at the full.

And ebb again as thou departest from me.

*Olymp.* Ah, pity me, my lord! and draw your sword,

Making a passage for my troubled soul,

Which beats against this prison to get out,

And meet my husband and my loving son.

*Ther.* Nothing but still thy husband and thy son!

Leave this, my love, and listen more to me.

Thou shalt be stately queen of fair Argier;

And clothed in costly cloth of massy gold,

40

Upon the marble turrets of my court

Sit like to Venus in her chair of state,

Commanding all thy princely eye desires;

And I will cast off arms to sit with thee,

Spending my life in sweet discourse of love.

*Olymp.* No such discourse is pleasant in mine ears,

But that where every period ends with death,

And every line begins with death again.

I cannot love, to be an emperess.

*Ther.* Nay, lady, then, if nothing will prevail,

50

I'll use some other means to make you yield:

Such is the sudden fury of my love,

I must and will be pleased, and you shall yield:

Come to the tent again.

*Olymp.* Stay now, my lord; and, will you save my honour,  
I'll give your grace a present of such price,  
As all the world cannot afford the like.

*Ther.* What is it?

*Olymp.* An ointment which a cunning alchemist,  
Distillèd from the purest balsamum 60  
And simplest extracts of all minerals,  
In which the essential form of marble stone,  
Tempered by science metaphysical,  
And spells of magic from the mouths of spirits,  
With which if you but 'noint your tender skin,  
Nor pistols, sword, nor lance, can pierce your flesh.

*Ther.* Why, madam, think you to mock me thus palpably?

*Olymp.* To prove it, I will 'noint my naked throat,  
Which, when you stab, look on your weapon's point,  
And you shall see't rebated with the blow. 70

*Ther.* Why gave you not your husband some of it,  
If you loved him, and it so precious?

*Olymp.* My purpose was, my lord, to spend it so,  
But was prevented by his sudden end;  
And for a present, easy proof thereof,  
That I dissemble not, try it on me.

*Ther.* I will, Olympia, and will keep it for  
The richest present of this eastern world.

[*She anoints her throat.*"]

*Olymp.* Now stab, my lord, and mark your weapon's point,  
That will be blunted if the blow be great. 80

*Ther.* Here then, Olympia. [*Stabs her.*]  
What, have I slain her! Villain, stab thyself;  
Cut off this arm that murderèd thy love,  
In whom the learnèd rabbis of this age  
Might find as many wondrous miracles  
As in the theoria of the world.  
Now hell is fairer than Elysium;

A greater lamp than that bright eye of Heaven,  
From whence the stars do borrow all their light,  
Wanders about the black circumference;  
And now the damnèd souls are free from pain,  
For every Fury gazeth on her looks;  
Infernal Dis is courting of my love,  
Inventing masks and stately shows for her,  
Opening the doors of his rich treasury  
To entertain this queen of chastity;  
Whose body shall be tombed with all the pomp  
The treasure of my kingdom may afford.

96

[Exit, with the body.]

#### SCENE IV

*Enter TAMBURLAINE drawn in his chariot by the KINGS of TREBIZOND and SORIA, with bits in their mouths: in his right hand he has a whip with which he scourgeth them, while his left hand holds the reins; then come TECHELLES, THERIDAMAS, USUMCASANE, AMYRAS, and CELEBINUS with the KINGS of NATOLIA and JERUSALEM, led by five or six common Soldiers*

*Tamb.* Holla, ye pampered jades of Asia!<sup>a</sup>  
What! can ye draw but twenty miles a day,  
And have so proud a chariot at your heels,  
And such a coachman as great Tamburlaine,  
But from Asphaltis, where I conquered you,  
To Byron here, where thus I honour you!  
The horse that guide the golden eye of Heaven,  
And blow the morning from their nosterils,  
Making their fiery gait above the clouds,  
Are not so honoured in their governor,  
As you, ye slaves, in mighty Tamburlaine.  
The headstrong jades of Thrace Alcides tamed,  
That King Egeus fed with human flesh,

10

And made so wanton that they knew their strengths,  
Were not subdued with valour more divine  
Than you by this unconquered arm of mine.  
To make you fierce, and fit my appetite,  
You shall be fed with flesh as raw as blood,  
And drink in pails the strongest muscatel;  
If you can live with it, then live, and draw 20  
My chariot swifter than the racking clouds;  
If not, then die like beasts, and fit for naught  
But perches for the black and fatal ravens.  
Thus am I right the scourge of highest Jove;  
And see the figure of my dignity  
By which I hold my name and majesty!

*Amy.* Let me have coach, my lord, that I may ride,  
And thus be drawn by these two idle kings.

*Tamb.* Thy youth forbids such ease, my kingly boy;  
They shall to-morrow draw my chariot, 30  
While these their fellow-kings may be refreshed.

*Orc.* O thou that sway'st the region under earth,  
And art a king as absolute as Jove,  
Come as thou didst in fruitful Sicily,  
Surveying all the glories of the land,  
And as thou took'st the fair Proserpina,  
Joying the fruit of Ceres' garden-plot,  
For love, for honour, and to make her queen,  
So for just hate, for shame, and to subdue  
This proud contemner of thy dreadful power, 40  
Come once in fury and survey his pride,  
Haling him headlong to the lowest hell.

*Ther.* Your majesty must get some bits for these,  
To bridle their contemptuous, cursing tongues,  
That, like unruly, never-broken jades,  
Break through the hedges of their hateful mouths,  
And pass their fixèd bounds exceedingly.

*Tech.* Nay, we will break the hedges of their mouth,  
And pull their kicking colts" out of their pastures.

*Usum.* Your majesty already hath devised 50

A mean, as fit as may be, to restrain  
These coltish coach-horse tongues from blasphemy.

*Cel.* How like you that, sir king? why speak you not?

*K. of Jer.* Ah, cruel brat, sprung from a tyrant's loins!  
How like his cursèd father he begins  
To practise taunts and bitter tyrannies!

*Tamb.* Ay, Turk, I tell thee, this same boy is he  
That must (advanced in higher pomp than this)  
Rifle the kingdoms I shall leave unsacked,  
If Jove, esteeming me too good for earth, 60  
Raise me to match the fair Aldeboran,  
Above the threefold astracism of Heaven,  
Before I conquer all the triple world.  
Now, fetch me out the Turkish concubines;  
I will prefer them for the funeral  
They have bestowed on my abortive son.

*[The Concubines are brought in.]*

Where are my common soldiers now, that fought  
So lion-like upon Asphaltis' plains?

*Sold.* Here, my lord.

*Tamb.* Hold ye, tall soldiers, take ye queens apiece —  
I mean such queens as were kings' concubines — 71  
Take them; divide them, and their jewels too,  
And let them equally serve all your turns.

*Sold.* We thank you.

*Tamb.* Brawl not, I warn you, for your lechery:  
For every man that so offends shall die.

*Orc.* Injurious tyrant, wilt thou so defame  
The hateful fortunes of thy victory,  
To exercise upon such guiltless dames  
The violence of thy common soldiers' lust? 80

*Tamb.* Live continent then, ye slaves, and meet not  
me

With troops of harlots at your slothful heels.

*Con.* Oh, pity us, my lord, and save our honours.

*Tamb.* Are ye not gone, ye villains, with your spoils?  
*[They run away with the Concubines.]*

*K. of Jer.* O merciless, infernal cruelty!

*Tamb.* Save your honours! 'Twere but time indeed,  
Lost long before ye knew what honour meant.

*Ther.* It seems they meant to conquer us, my lord,  
And make us jesting pageants for their trulls.

*Tamb.* And now themselves shall make our pageants,  
And common soldiers jest with all their trulls. 91

Let them take pleasure soundly in their spoils,  
Till we prepare our march to Babylon,  
Whither we next make expedition.

*Tech.* Let us not be idle then, my lord,  
But presently be prest to conquer it.

*Tamb.* We will, Techelles. Forward then, ye jades.  
Now crouch, ye kings of greatest Asia,  
And tremble when ye hear this scourge will come  
That whips down cities and controlleth crowns, 100  
Adding their wealth and treasure to my store.

The Euxine Sea, north to Natolia;  
The Terrene, west; the Caspian, north-north-east;  
And on the south, Sinus Arabicus;  
Shall all be loaden with the martial spoils  
We will convey with us to Persia.

Then shall my native city, Samarcanda,  
And crystal waves of fresh Jaertis' stream,  
The pride and beauty of her princely seat,  
Be famous through the furthest continents, 110  
For there my palace-royal shall be placed,  
Whose shining turrets shall dismay the Heavens,  
And cast the fame of Ilion's tower to hell.

Thorough the streets with troops of conquered kings  
I'll ride in golden armour like the sun;  
And in my helm a triple plume shall spring,  
Spangled with diamonds, dancing in the air,  
To note me emperor of the threefold world,  
Like to an almond tree y-mounted high<sup>a</sup>  
Upon the lofty and celestial mount 120  
Of ever-green Selinus quaintly decked



With blooms more white than Erycina's brows,  
Whose tender blossoms tremble every one,  
At every little breath through Heaven is blown.  
Then in my coach, like Saturn's royal son  
Mounted, his shining chariot gilt with fire,  
And drawn with princely eagles through the path  
Paved with bright crystal and enchased with stars,  
When all the gods stand gazing at his pomp,  
So will I ride through Samarcanda streets, 130  
Until my soul, dissevered from this flesh,  
Shall mount the milk-white way, and meet him there.  
To Babylon, my lords; to Babylon! [*Exeunt*.

## ACT THE FIFTH

### SCENE I

*Enter the GOVERNOR of BABYLON, MAXIMUS, and others upon the walls*

*Gov.* What saith Maximus?

*Max.* My lord, the breach the enemy hath made  
Gives such assurance of our overthrow  
That little hope is left to save our lives,  
Or hold our city from the conqueror's hands.  
Then hang out flags, my lord, of humble truce,  
And satisfy the people's general prayers,  
That Tamburlaine's intolerable wrath  
May be suppressed by our submission.

*Gov.* Villain, respect'st thou more thy slavish life 10  
Than honour of thy country or thy name?  
Are not my life and state as dear to me,  
The city, and my native country's weal,  
As anything of price with thy conceit?  
Have we not hope, for all our battered walls,  
To live secure and keep his forces out,  
When this our famous lake of Limnaspheitis  
Makes walls afresh with everything that falls  
Into the liquid substance of his stream,  
More strong than are the gates of death or hell? 20  
What faintness should dismay our courages  
When we are thus defenced against our foes,  
And have no terror but his threatening looks.

*Enter above a Citizen, who kneels to the GOVERNOR*

*Cit.* My lord, if ever you did deed of ruth,  
And now will work a refuge for our lives,

Offer submission, hang up flags of truce,  
That Tamburlaine may pity our distress,  
And use us like a loving conqueror.  
Though this be held his last day's dreadful siege,  
Wherein he spareth neither man nor child,  
Yet are there Christians of Georgia here,  
Whose state was ever pitied and relieved,  
Would get his pardon if your grace would send.

30

*Gov.* How is my soul environèd with cares!  
And this eternized city, Babylon,  
Filled with a pack of faint-heart fugitives  
That thus entreat their shame and servitude!

*Enter another Citizen*

*2d Cit.* My lord, if ever you will win our hearts,  
Yield up the town and save our wives and children;  
For I will cast myself from off these walls  
Or die some death of quickest violence  
Before I bide the wrath of Tamburlaine.

40

*Gov.* Villains, cowards, traitors to our state!  
Fall to the earth and pierce the pit of hell,  
That legions of tormenting spirits may vex  
Your slavish bosoms with continual pains!  
I care not, nor the town will ever yield,  
As long as any life is in my breast.

*Enter THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, with Soldiers*

*Ther.* Thou desperate governor of Babylon,  
To save thy life, and us a little labour,  
Yield speedily the city to our hands,  
Or else be sure thou shalt be forced with pains,  
More exquisite than ever traitor felt.

50

*Gov.* Tyrant! I turn the traitor in thy throat,  
And will defend it in despite of thee. —  
Call up the soldiers to defend these walls!

*Tech.* Yield, foolish governor; we offer more  
Than ever yet we did to such proud slaves  
As durst resist us till our third day's siege.  
Thou seest us prest to give the last assault, 60  
And that shall bide no more regard of parley.

*Gov.* Assault and spare not; we will never yield.

*[Alarms: and they scale the walls.]*

*Enter TAMBURLAINE drawn in his chariot by the KINGS  
of TREBIZOND and SORIA; AMYRAS, CELEBINUS, and  
USUMCASANE; with the two spare<sup>n</sup> KINGS of NATOLIA  
and JERUSALEM led by Soldiers; and others*

*Tamb.* The stately buildings of fair Babylon,  
Whose lofty pillars, higher than the clouds,  
Were wont to guide the seaman in the deep,  
Being carried thither by the cannon's force,  
Now fill the mouth of Limnasphaltis' lake  
And make a bridge unto the battered walls.  
Where Belus, Ninus, and great Alexander  
Have rode in triumph, triumphs Tamburlaine, 70  
Whose chariot wheels have burst the Assyrians' bones,  
Drawn with these kings on heaps of carcasses.  
Now in the place where fair Semiramis,  
Courtied by kings and peers of Asia,  
Hath trod the measures, do my soldiers march;  
And in the streets, where brave Assyrian dames  
Have rid in pomp like rich Saturnia,  
With furious words and frowning visages  
My horsemen brandish their unruly blades.

*Re-enter THERIDAMAS and TECHELLES, bringing in the  
GOVERNOR of BABYLON*

Who have ye there, my lords? 80

*Ther.* The sturdy governor of Babylon,  
That made us all the labour for the town,  
And used such slender reckoning of your majesty.

*Tamb.* Go, bind the villain; he shall hang in chains  
Upon the ruins of this conquered town.  
Sirrah, the view of our vermilion tents,  
(Which threatened more than if the region  
Next underneath the element of fire  
Were full of comets and of blazing stars,  
Whose flaming trains should reach down to the earth,)  
Could not affright you; no, nor I myself, 91  
The wrathful messenger of mighty Jove,  
That with his sword hath quailed all earthly kings,  
Could not persuade you to submission,  
But still the ports were shut; villain! I say,  
Should I but touch the rusty gates of hell,  
The triple-headed Cerberus would howl  
And make black Jove to crouch and kneel to me;  
But I have sent volleys of shot to you,  
Yet could not enter till the breach was made. 100

*Gov.* Nor, if my body could have stopt the breach,  
Should'st thou have entered, cruel Tamburlaine.  
'Tis not thy bloody tents can make me yield,  
Nor yet thyself, the anger of the Highest,  
For though thy cannon shook the city walls,  
My heart did never quake, or courage faint.

*Tamb.* Well, now I'll make it quake; go draw him up,  
Hang him in chains upon the city walls,  
And let my soldiers shoot the slave to death.

*Gov.* Vile monster! born of some infernal hag, 110  
And sent from hell to tyrannize on earth,  
Do all thy worst; nor death, nor Tamburlaine,  
Torture, nor pain, can daunt my dreadless mind.

*Tamb.* Up with him, then; his body shall be scared.

*Gov.* But, Tamburlaine, in Limnæasphaltis' lake  
There lies more gold than Babylon is worth,  
Which when the city was besieged, I hid.  
Save but my life and I will give it thee.

*Tamb.* Then for all your valour you would save your  
life?

Whereabout lies it?

120

*Gov.* Under a hollow bank, right opposite  
Against the western gate of Babylon,

*Tamb.* Go thither, some of you, and take his gold;

*[Exeunt some of the Attendants.]*

The rest — forward with execution!

Away with him hence, let him speak no more.

I think I make your courage something quail.

*[Exeunt other Attendants with the GOVERNOR  
of BABYLON.]*

When this is done, we'll march from Babylon,

And make our greatest haste to Persia.

These jades are broken-winded and half-tired,

Unharness them, and let me have fresh horse.

130

*[Attendants unharness the KINGS of TREBIZOND and SORIA.]*

So, now their best is done to honour me,

Take them and hang them both up presently.

*K. of Treb.* Vile tyrant! barbarous bloody Tamburlaine!

*Tamb.* Take them away, Theridamas; see them dispatched.

*Ther.* I will, my lord.

*[Exit with the KINGS of TREBIZOND and SORIA.]*

*Tamb.* Come, Asian viceroys; to your tasks awhile,  
And take such fortune as your fellows felt.

*Orc.* First let thy Scythian horse tear both our  
limbs,

Rather than we should draw thy chariot,

And like base slaves abject our princely minds

140

To vile and ignominious servitude.

*K. of Jer.* Rather lend me thy weapon, Tamburlaine,  
That I may sheathe it in this breast of mine.

A thousand deaths could not torment our hearts

More than the thought of his doth vex our souls.

*Amy.* They will talk still, my lord, if you don't bridle  
them.

A greater lamp than that bright eye of Heaven,  
From whence the stars do borrow all their light,  
Wanders about the black circumference;  
And now the damnèd souls are free from pain,  
For every Fury gazeth on her looks;  
Infernal Dis is courting of my love,  
Inventing masks and stately shows for her,  
Opening the doors of his rich treasury  
To entertain this queen of chastity;  
Whose body shall be tombèd with all the pomp  
The treasure of my kingdom may afford.

[Exit, with the body.]

#### SCENE IV

*Enter TAMBURLAINE drawn in his chariot by the KINGS of TREBIZOND and SORIA, with bits in their mouths: in his right hand he has a whip with which he scourgeth them, while his left hand holds the reins; then come TECHELLES, THERIDAMAS, USUMCASANE, AMYRAS, and CELEBINUS with the KINGS of NATOLIA and JERUSALEM, led by five or six common Soldiers*

*Tamb.* Holla, ye pampered jades of Asia!<sup>a</sup>  
What! can ye draw but twenty miles a day,  
And have so proud a chariot at your heels,  
And such a coachman as great Tamburlaine,  
But from Asphaltis, where I conquered you,  
To Byron here, where thus I honour you!  
The horse that guide the golden eye of Heaven,  
And blow the morning from their nosterils,  
Making their fiery gait above the clouds,  
Are not so honoured in their governor,  
As you, ye slaves, in mighty Tamburlaine.  
The headstrong jades of Thrace Alcides tamed,  
That King Egeus fed with human flesh,

xc

And made so wanton that they knew their strengths,  
Were not subdued with valour more divine  
Than you by this unconquered arm of mine.  
To make you fierce, and fit my appetite,  
You shall be fed with flesh as raw as blood,  
And drink in pails the strongest muscatel;  
If you can live with it, then live, and draw 20  
My chariot swifter than the racking clouds;  
If not, then die like beasts, and fit for naught  
But perches for the black and fatal ravens.  
Thus am I right the scourge of highest Jove;  
And see the figure of my dignity  
By which I hold my name and majesty!

*Amy.* Let me have coach, my lord, that I may ride,  
And thus be drawn by these two idle kings.

*Tamb.* Thy youth forbids such ease, my kingly boy;  
They shall to-morrow draw my chariot, 30  
While these their fellow-kings may be refreshed.

*Orc.* O thou that sway'st the region under earth,  
And art a king as absolute as Jove,  
Come as thou didst in fruitful Sicily,  
Surveying all the glories of the land,  
And as thou took'st the fair Proserpina,  
Joying the fruit of Ceres' garden-plot,  
For love, for honour, and to make her queen,  
So for just hate, for shame, and to subdue  
This proud contemner of thy dreadful power, 40  
Come once in fury and survey his pride,  
Haling him headlong to the lowest hell.

*Ther.* Your majesty must get some bits for these,  
To bridle their contemptuous, cursing tongues,  
That, like unruly, never-broken jades,  
Break through the hedges of their hateful mouths,  
And pass their fixèd bounds exceedingly.

*Tech.* Nay, we will break the hedges of their mouth,  
And pull their kicking colts<sup>n</sup> out of their pastures.

*Usum.* Your majesty already hath devised 50



A mean, as fit as may be, to restrain  
These coltish coach-horse tongues from blasphemy.

*Cel.* How like you that, sir king? why speak you not?

*K. of Jer.* Ah, cruel brat, sprung from a tyrant's loins!  
How like his cursèd father he begins  
To practise taunts and bitter tyrannies!

*Tamb.* Ay, Turk, I tell thee, this same boy is he  
That must (advanced in higher pomp than this)  
Rifle the kingdoms I shall leave unsacked,  
If Jove, esteeming me too good for earth, 60  
Raise me to match the fair Aldeboran,  
Above the threefold astracism of Heaven,  
Before I conquer all the triple world.  
Now, fetch me out the Turkish concubines;  
I will prefer them for the funeral  
They have bestowed on my abortive son.

[*The Concubines are brought in.*]

Where are my common soldiers now, that fought  
So lion-like upon Asphaltis' plains?

*Sold.* Here, my lord.

*Tamb.* Hold ye, tall soldiers, take ye queens apiece —  
I mean such queens as were kings' concubines — 71  
Take them; divide them, and their jewels too,  
And let them equally serve all your turns.

*Sold.* We thank you.

*Tamb.* Brawl not, I warn you, for your lechery:  
For every man that so offends shall die.

*Orc.* Injurious tyrant, wilt thou so defame  
The hateful fortunes of thy victory,  
To exercise upon such guiltless dames  
The violence of thy common soldiers' lust? 80

*Tamb.* Live continent then, ye slaves, and meet not  
me

With troops of harlots at your slothful heels.

*Con.* Oh, pity us, my lord, and save our honours.

*Tamb.* Are ye not gone, ye villains, with your spoils?

[*They run away with the Concubines.*]

*K. of Jer.* O merciless, infernal cruelty!

*Tamb.* Save your honours! 'Twere but time indeed,  
Lost long before ye knew what honour meant.

*Ther.* It seems they meant to conquer us, my lord,  
And make us jesting pageants for their trulls.

*Tamb.* And now themselves shall make our pageants,  
And common soldiers jest with all their trulls. 91  
Let them take pleasure soundly in their spoils,  
Till we prepare our march to Babylon,  
Whither we next make expedition.

*Tech.* Let us not be idle then, my lord,  
But presently be prest to conquer it.

*Tamb.* We will, Techelles. Forward then, ye jades.  
Now crouch, ye kings of greatest Asia,  
And tremble when ye hear this scourge will come  
That whips down cities and controlleth crowns, 100  
Adding their wealth and treasure to my store.  
The Euxine Sea, north to Natolia;  
The Terrene, west; the Caspian, north-north-east;  
And on the south, Sinus Arabicus;  
Shall all be loaden with the martial spoils  
We will convey with us to Persia.

Then shall my native city, Samarcanda,  
And crystal waves of fresh Jaertis' stream,  
The pride and beauty of her princely seat,  
Be famous through the furthest continents, 110  
For there my palace-royal shall be placed,  
Whose shining turrets shall dismay the Heavens,  
And cast the fame of Ilion's tower to hell.  
Thorough the streets with troops of conquered kings  
I'll ride in golden armour like the sun;  
And in my helm a triple plume shall spring,  
Spangled with diamonds, dancing in the air,  
To note me emperor of the threefold world,  
Like to an almond tree y-mounted high"  
Upon the lofty and celestial mount 120  
Of ever-green Selinus quaintly decked

Before himself or his be conquerèd.  
This is the time that must eternize me  
For conquering the tyrant of the world.  
Come, soldiers, let us lie in wait for him,  
And if we find him absent from his camp,  
Or that it be rejoined again at full,  
Assail it and be sure of victory.

[*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE III

*Enter* THERIDAMAS, TECHELLES, *and* USUMCASANE

*Ther.* Weep, Heavens, and vanish into liquid tears!  
Fall, stars that govern his nativity,  
And summon all the shining lamps of Heaven  
To cast their bootless fires to the earth,  
And shed their feeble influence in the air;  
Muffle your beauties with eternal clouds,  
For Hell and Darkness pitch their pitchy tents,  
And Death with armies of Cimmerian spirits  
Gives battle 'gainst the heart of Tamburlaine!  
Now in defiance of that wonted love  
Your sacred virtues poured upon his throne  
And made his state an honour to the Heavens,  
These cowards invisible assail his soul,  
And threaten conquest on our sovereign;  
But if he die your glories are disgraced;  
Earth droops and says that hell in Heaven is placed.

10

*Tech.* Oh, then, ye powers that sway eternal seats  
And guide this massy substance of the earth,  
If you retain desert of holiness  
As your supreme estates instruct our thoughts,  
Be not inconstant, careless of your fame,  
Bear not the burthen of your enemies' joys  
Triumphing in his fall whom you advanced,  
But as his birth, life, health, and majesty  
Were strangely blest and governèd by Heaven,

20

So honour, Heaven (till Heaven dissolvèd be,) His birth, his life, his health, and majesty!

*Usum.* Blush, Heaven, to lose the honour of thy name!  
To see thy footstool set upon thy head!  
And let no baseness in thy haughty breast 30  
Sustain a shame of such inexcellence,  
To see the devils mount in angels' thrones,  
And angels dive into the pools of hell!  
And though they think their painful date is out,  
And that their power is puissant as Jove's,  
Which makes them manage arms against thy state,  
Yet make them feel the strength of Tamburlaine,  
(Thy instrument and note of majesty,)  
Is greater far than they can thus subdue:  
For if he die thy glory is disgraced; 40  
Earth droops and says that hell in Heaven is placed.

*Enter TAMBURLAINE drawn in his chariot by the captive Kings as before; AMYRAS, CELEBINUS, and Physicians*

*Tamb.* What daring god torments my body thus,  
And seeks to conquer mighty Tamburlaine?  
Shall sickness prove me now to be a man,  
That have been termed the terror of the world?  
Techelles and the rest, come, take your swords,  
And threaten him whose hand afflicts my soul.  
Come, let us march against the powers of Heaven,  
And set black streamers in the firmament,  
To signify the slaughter of the gods. 50  
Ah, friends, what shall I do? I cannot stand.  
Come carry me to war against the gods  
That thus envy the health of Tamburlaine.

*Ther.* Ah, good my lord, leave these impatient words,  
Which add much danger to your malady.

*Tamb.* Why, shall I sit and languish in this pain?  
No, strike the drums, and in revenge of this,  
Come, let us charge our spears and pierce his breast,

Whose shoulders bear the axis of the world,  
That, if I perish, Heaven and earth may fade. 60  
Theridamas, haste to the court of Jove,  
Will him to send Apollo hither straight,  
To cure me, or I'll fetch him down myself.

*Tech.* Sit still, my gracious lord; this grief will cease,  
And cannot last, it is so violent.

*Tamb.* Not last, Techelles? — No! for I shall die.  
See, where my slave, the ugly monster, Death,  
Shaking and quivering, pale and wan for fear,  
Stands aiming at me with his murdering dart,  
Who flies away at every glance I give, 70  
And, when I look away, comes stealing on.  
Villain, away, and hie thee to the field!  
I and mine army come to load thy back  
With souls of thousand mangled carcasses.  
Look, where, he goes; but see, he comes again  
Because I stay: Techelles, let us march  
And weary Death with bearing souls to hell.

*1st Phy.* Pleaseth your majesty to drink this potion,  
Which will abate the fury of your fit,  
And cause some milder spirits govern you. 80

*Tamb.* Tell me what think you of my sickness now?

*1st Phy.* I viewed your urine, and the hypostasis  
Thick and obscure, doth make your danger great;  
Your veins are full of accidental heat,  
Whereby the moisture of your blood is dried.  
The humidum and calor, which some hold  
Is not a parcel of the elements,  
But of a substance more divine and pure,  
Is almost clean extinguishèd and spent;  
Which, being the cause of life, imports your death: 90  
Besides, my lord, this day is critical,  
Dangerous to those whose crisis is as yours:  
Your artiers, which amongst the veins convey  
The lively spirits which the heart engenders,  
Are parched and void of spirits, that the soul,

Wanting those organons by which it moves,  
Cannot endure, by argument of art.  
Yet, if your majesty may escape this day,  
No doubt but you shall soon recover all.

*Tamb.* Then will I comfort all my vital parts, 100  
And live, in spite of death, above a day. [*Alarms within.*]

*Enter Messenger*

*Mes.* My lord, young Callapine, that lately fled from  
your majesty, hath now gathered a fresh army, and  
hearing your absence in the field, offers to set upon us  
presently.

*Tamb.* See, my physicians now, how Jove hath sent  
A present medicine to recure my pain.  
My looks shall make them fly, and might I follow,  
There should not one of all the villain's power  
Live to give offer of another fight. 110

*Usum.* I joy, my lord, your highness is so strong,  
That can endure so well your royal presence,  
Which only will dismay the enemy.

*Tamb.* I know it will, Casane. Draw, you slaves;  
In spite of death, I will go show my face.

[*Alarums. — Exit TAMBURLAINE and the rest,  
with the exception of the Physicians. They  
all presently re-enter.*]

*Tamb.* Thus are the villain cowards fled for fear,  
Like summer's vapours vanished by the sun;  
And could I but awhile pursue the field,  
That Callapine should be my slave again.  
But I perceive my martial strength is spent. 120  
In vain I strive and rail against those powers,  
That mean to invest me in a higher throne,  
As much too high for this disdainful earth.  
Give me a map; then let me see how much  
Is left for me to conquer all the world,  
That these, my boys, may finish all my wants.

[*One brings a map.*]

Here I began to march towards Persia,  
Along Armenia and the Caspian Sea,  
And thence unto Bithynia, where I took  
The Turk and his great Empress prisoners. 130  
Thence marched I into Egypt and Arabia,  
And here, not far from Alexandria,  
Whereas the Terreñe and the Red Sea meet,  
Being distant less than full a hundred leagues,  
I meant to cut a channel to them both,  
That men might quickly sail to India."  
From thence to Nubia near Borno lake,  
And so along the Æthiopian sea,  
Cutting the Tropic line of Capricorn,  
I conquered all as far as Zanzibar. 140  
Then, by the northern part of Africa,  
I came at last to Græcia, and from thence  
To Asia, where I stay against my will;  
Which is from Scythia, where I first began,  
Backwards and forwards near five thousand leagues.  
Look here, my boys; see what a world of ground  
Lies westward from the midst of Cancer's line,  
Unto the rising of this earthly globe;  
Whereas the sun, declining from our sight,  
Begins the day with our Antipodes! 150  
And shall I die, and this unconquerèd?  
Lo, here, my sons, are all the golden mines,  
Inestimable drugs and precious stones,  
More worth than Asia and the world beside;  
And from the Antarctic Pole eastward behold  
As much more land, which never was descried,  
Wherein are rocks of pearl that shine as bright  
As all the lamps that beautify the sky!  
And shall I die, and this unconquerèd?  
Here, lovely boys; what death forbids my life, 160  
That let your lives command in spite of death.

*Amy.* Alas, my lord, how should our bleeding hearts,  
Wounded and broken with your highness' grief,

Retain a thought of joy or spark of life?  
Your soul gives essence to our wretched subjects,  
Whose matter is incorporate in your flesh.

*Cel.* Your pains do pierce our souls; no hope survives,

For by your life we entertain our lives.

*Tamb.* But, sons, this subject, not of force enough  
To hold the fiery spirit it contains, 170  
Must part, imparting his impressions  
By equal portions into both your breasts;  
My flesh, divided in your precious shapes,  
Shall still retain my spirit, though I die,  
And live in all your seeds immortally.  
Then now remove me, that I may resign  
My place and proper title to my son.  
First, take my scourge and my imperial crown,  
And mount my royal chariot of estate,  
That I may see thee crowned before I die. 180  
Help me, my lords, to make my last remove.

*[They lift him from the chariot.]*

*Ther.* A woeful change, my lord, that daunts our thoughts,  
More than the ruin of our proper souls!

*Tamb.* Sit up, my son, and let me see how well  
Thou wilt become thy father's majesty.

*Amy.* With what a flinty bosom should I joy  
The breath of life and burthen of my soul,  
If not resolved into resolvèd pains,  
My body's mortifièd lineaments 190  
Should exercise the motions of my heart,  
Pierced with the joy of any dignity!  
O father! if the unrelenting ears  
Of Death and Hell be shut against my prayers,  
And that the spiteful influence of Heaven,  
Deny my soul fruition of her joy;  
How should I step, or stir my hateful feet  
Against the inward powers of my heart,



Leading a life that only strives to die,  
And plead in vain unpleasing sovereignty<sup>n</sup>?

*Tamb.* Let not thy love exceed thine honour, son,  
Nor bar thy mind that magnanimity  
That nobly must admit necessity. 201

Sit up, my boy, and with those silken reins  
Bridle the steelèd stomachs of those jades.

*Ther.* My lord, you must obey his majesty,  
Since fate commands and proud necessity.

*Amy.* Heavens witness me with what a broken heart  
And damnèd spirit I ascend this seat,  
And send my soul, before my father die,  
His anguish and his burning agony! 210

[*They crown AMYRAS.*

*Tamb.* Now fetch the hearse of fair Zenocrate;  
Let it be placed by this my fatal chair,  
And serve as parcel of my funeral.

*Usum.* Then feels your majesty no sovereign ease,  
Nor may our hearts, all drowned in tears of blood,  
Joy any hope of your recovery?

*Tamb.* Casane, no; the monarch of the earth,  
And eyeless monster that torments my soul,  
Cannot behold the tears ye shed for me,  
And therefore still augments his cruelty. 220

*Tech.* Then let some God oppose his holy power  
Against the wrath and tyranny of Death,  
That his tear-thirsty and unquenched hate  
May be upon himself reverberate!

[*They bring in the hearse of ZENOCRATE.*

*Tamb.* Now eyes enjoy your latest benefit,  
And when my soul hath virtue of your sight,  
Pierce through the coffin and the sheet of gold,  
And glut your longings with a heaven of joy.  
So reign, my son; scourge and control those slaves,  
Guiding thy chariot with thy father's hand. 230  
As precious is the charge thou undertakest  
As that which Clymene's brainsick son did guide,

When wandering Phœbe's ivory cheeks were scorched,  
And all the earth, like Ætna, breathing fire;  
Be warned by him, then; learn with awful eye  
To sway a throne as dangerous as his;  
For if thy body thrive not full of thoughts  
As pure and fiery as Phyteus' beams,  
The nature of these proud rebelling jades  
Will take occasion by the slenderest hair, 240  
And draw thee piecemeal like Hippolitus,  
Through rocks more steep and sharp than Caspian clifts.  
The nature of thy chariot will not bear  
A guide of baser temper than myself,  
More than Heaven's coach the pride of Phaeton.  
Farewell, my boys; my dearest friends farewell!  
My body feels, my soul doth weep to see  
Your sweet desires deprived my company,  
For Tamburlaine, the scourge of God, must die.

[*He dies.*

*Amy.* Meet Heaven and Earth, and here let all things  
end, 250

For Earth hath spent the pride of all her fruit,  
And Heaven consumed his choicest living fire.  
Let Earth and Heaven his timeless death deplore,  
For both their worths will equal him no more.



# THE TRAGICAL HISTORY OF DOCTOR FAUSTUS

## *DRAMATIS PERSONÆ*

THE POPE.<sup>a</sup>

CARDINAL OF LORRAIN.

EMPEROR OF GERMANY.<sup>a</sup>

DUKE OF VANHOLT.

FAUSTUS.

VALDES,                    }  
CORNELIUS,                } Friends to FAUSTUS.

WAGNER, Servant to FAUSTUS.

Clown.

ROBIN.

RALPH.

Vintner, Horse-courser, Knight, Old Man, Scholars,  
Friars, and Attendants.

DUCHESS OF VANHOLT.

LUCIFER.

BELZEBUB.

MEPHISTOPHILES.

Good Angel.

Evil Angel.

The Seven Deadly Sins.<sup>a</sup>

Devils.

Spirits in the shape of ALEXANDER THE GREAT, of  
his Paramour, and of HELEN OF TROY.

Chorus.

# THE TRAGICAL HISTORY OF DOCTOR FAUSTUS

*Enter* CHORUS

*Chorus.* Not marching now in fields of Trasymene,  
Where Mars did mate<sup>n</sup> the Carthaginians;  
Nor sporting in the dalliance of love,  
In courts of kings<sup>n</sup> where state is overturned;  
Nor in the pomp of proud audacious deeds,  
Intends our Muse to vaunt his heavenly verse:  
Only this, gentlemen — we must perform  
The form<sup>n</sup> of Faustus' fortunes, good or bad;  
To patient judgements we appeal our plaud,<sup>n</sup>  
And speak for Faustus in his infancy. 10  
Now is he born, his parents base of stock,  
In Germany, within a town called Rhodes;  
Of riper years to Wertenberg he went,  
Whereas his kinsmen chiefly brought him up.  
So soon he profits in divinity,  
The fruitful plot of scholarism graced,  
That shortly he was graced with doctor's name,  
Excelling all whose sweet delight disputes  
In heavenly matters of theology;  
Till swollen with cunning of a self-conceit, 20  
His waxen wings did mount above his reach,  
And, melting, Heavens conspired his overthrow;  
For, falling to a devilish exercise,  
And glutted now with learning's golden gifts,  
He surfeits upon cursèd necromancy.  
Nothing so sweet as magic is to him,  
Which he prefers before his chiefest bliss.  
And this the man that in his study sits!

[*Exit.*

## SCENE I

FAUSTUS *discovered in his Study*<sup>a</sup>

*Faust.* Settle thy studies, Faustus, and begin  
 To sound the depth of that thou wilt profess;  
 Having commenced, be a divine in show,  
 Yet level at the end of every art,  
 And live and die in Aristotle's works.  
 Sweet Analytics, 'tis thou hast ravished me, [Reads.  
*Bene disserere est finis logices.*  
 Is to dispute well logic's chiefest end?  
 Affords this art no greater miracle?  
 Then read no more, thou hast attained the end; 10  
 A greater subject fitteth Faustus' wit:  
 Bid *on cai me on* farewell; Galen come,  
 Seeing *Ubi desinit Philosophus ibi incipit Medicus*;  
 Be a physician, Faustus, heap up gold,  
 And be eternized for some wondrous cure. [Reads.  
*Summum bonum medicinæ sanitas,*  
 The end of physic is our body's health.  
 Why, Faustus, hast thou not attained that end?  
 Is not thy common talk found aphorisms?  
 Are not thy bills hung up as monuments, 20  
 Whereby whole cities have escaped the plague,  
 And thousand desperate maladies been eased?  
 Yet art thou still but Faustus and a man.  
 Couldst thou make men to live eternally,  
 Or, being dead, raise them to life again,  
 Then this profession were to be esteemed.  
 Physic, farewell. — Where is Justinian?<sup>a</sup> [Reads.  
*Si una eademque res legatur duobus, alter rem, alter*  
*valorem rei, etc.*  
 A pretty case of paltry legacies! [Reads.  
*Exhæreditare filium non potest pater nisi, etc.* 30  
 Such is the subject of the Institute

And universal Body of the Law.  
This study fits a mercenary drudge,  
Who aims at nothing but external trash;  
Too servile and illiberal for me.  
When all is done divinity is best;  
Jerome's Bible, Faustus, view it well. [Reads.  
*Stipendium peccati mors est.* Ha! *Stipendium, etc.*  
The reward of sin is death. That's hard. [Reads.  
*Si peccasse negamus fallimur et nulla est in nobis veritas.*  
If we say that we have no sin we deceive ourselves, and  
there's no truth in us. Why then, belike we must sin,  
and so consequently die. 43  
Ay, we must die an everlasting death.  
What doctrine call you this, *Che sera sera,*⁹  
What will be, shall be? Divinity, adieu!  
These metaphysics of magicians  
And necromantic books are heavenly:  
Lines, circles, scenes, letters, and characters:  
Ay, these are those that Faustus most desires. 50  
Oh, what a world of profit and delight,  
Of power, of honour, of omnipotence  
Is promised to the studious artisan!  
All things that move between the quiet poles  
Shall be at my command: emperors and kings  
Are but obeyed in their several provinces,  
Nor can they raise the wind or rend the clouds;  
But his dominion that exceeds in this  
Stretcheth as far as doth the mind of man,  
A sound magician is a mighty god: 60  
Here, Faustus, tire thy brains to gain a deity.  
Wagner!

*Enter* WAGNER

Commend me to my dearest friends,  
The German Valdes and Cornelius;⁹  
Request them earnestly to visit me.

*Wag.* I will, sir.

[*Exit.*



*Faust.* Their conference will be a greater help to me  
Than all my labours, plod I ne'er so fast.

*Enter Good Angel and Evil Angel*

*G. Ang.* O Faustus! lay that damnèd book aside,  
And gaze not on it lest it tempt thy soul,  
And heap God's heavy wrath upon thy head. 70  
Read, read the Scriptures: that <sup>n</sup> is blasphemy.

*E. Ang.* Go forward, Faustus, in that famous art,  
Wherein all Nature's treasure is contained:  
Be thou on earth as Jove <sup>n</sup> is in the sky,  
Lord and commander of these elements. [*Exeunt Angels.*

*Faust.* How am I glutted with conceit of this!  
Shall I make spirits fetch me what I please,  
Resolve me of all ambiguities,  
Perform what desperate enterprise I will?  
I'll have them fly to India for gold, 80  
Ransack the ocean for orient pearl,  
And search all corners of the new-found world  
For pleasant fruits and princely delicates;  
I'll have them read me strange philosophy  
And tell the secrets of all foreign kings;  
I'll have them wall all Germany with brass,  
And make swift Rhine circle fair Wertenberg,  
I'll have them fill the public schools <sup>n</sup> with silk,  
Wherewith the students shall be bravely clad;  
I'll levy soldiers with the coin they bring, 90  
And chase the Prince of Parma <sup>n</sup> from our land,  
And reign sole king of all the provinces;  
Yea, stranger engines for the brunt of war  
Than was the fiery keel at Antwerp's bridge,<sup>n</sup>  
I'll make my servile spirits to invent.

*Enter VALDES and CORNELIUS*

Come, German Valdes and Cornelius,  
And make me blest with your sage conference.

Valdes, sweet Valdes, and Cornelius,  
Know that your words have won me at the last  
To practise magic and concealèd arts: 100  
Yet not your words only, but mine own fantasy  
That will receive no object;<sup>n</sup> for my head  
But ruminates on necromantic skill.  
Philosophy is odious and obscure,  
Both law and physic are for petty wits;  
Divinity is basest of the three,  
Unpleasant, harsh, contemptible, and vile:  
'Tis magic, magic that hath ravished me.  
Then, gentle friends, aid me in this attempt;  
And I that have with concise syllogisms 110  
Gravelled the pastors of the German church,  
And made the flowering pride of Wertenberg  
Swarm to my problems, as the infernal spirits  
On sweet Musæus,<sup>n</sup> when he came to hell,  
Will be as cunning as Agrippa was,  
Whose shadows <sup>n</sup> made all Europe honour him.

*Vald.* Faustus, these books, thy wit, and our experience

Shall make all nations to canònize us.  
As Indian Moors obey their Spanish lords,  
So shall the spirits of every element 120  
Be always serviceable to us three;  
Like lions shall they guard us when we please;  
Like Almain rutters with their horsemen's staves  
Or Lapland giants,<sup>n</sup> trotting by our sides;  
Sometimes like women or unwedded maids,  
Shadowing more beauty in their airy brows  
Than have the white breasts of the queen of love:  
From Venice shall they drag huge argosies,  
And from America the golden fleece  
That yearly stuffs old Philip's treasury; 130  
If learnèd Faustus will be resolute.

*Faust.* Valdes, as resolute am I in this  
As thou to live; therefore object it not.

*Corn.* The miracles that magic will perform  
Will make thee vow to study nothing else.  
He that is grounded in astrology,  
Enriched with tongues, well seen in minerals,  
Hath all the principles magic doth require.  
Then doubt not, Faustus, but to be renowned,  
And more frequented for this mystery 140  
Than heretofore the Delphian Oracle.

The spirits tell me they can dry the sea,  
And fetch the treasure of all foreign wrecks,  
Ay, all the wealth that our forefathers hid  
Within the massy entrails of the earth;  
Then tell me, Faustus, what shall we three want?

*Faust.* Nothing, Cornelius! Oh, this cheers my soul!  
Come show me some demonstrations magical,  
That I may conjure in some bushy grove,  
And have these joys in full possession. 150

*Vald.* Then haste thee to some solitary grove,  
And bear wise Bacon's and Albanus' works,  
The Hebrew Psalter and New Testament;  
And whatsoever else is requisite  
We will inform thee ere our conference cease.

*Corn.* Valdes, first let him know the words of art;  
And then, all other ceremonies learned,  
Faustus may try his cunning by himself.

*Vald.* First I'll instruct thee in the rudiments,  
And then wilt thou be perfecter than I. 160

*Faust.* Then come and dine with me, and after meat,  
We'll canvass every quiddity thereof;  
For ere I sleep I'll try what I can do:  
This night I'll conjure tho' I die therefore. [Exeunt.]

SCENE II<sup>a</sup>

*Enter two Scholars*

*1st Schol.* I wonder what's become of Faustus that was wont to make our schools ring with *sic probo?*

*2nd Schol.* That shall we know, for see here comes his boy.

*Enter WAGNER*

*1st Schol.* How now, sirrah! Where's thy master?

*Wag.* God in heaven knows!

*2nd Schol.* Why, dost not thou know?

*Wag.* Yes, I know. But that follows not.

*1st Schol.* Go to, sirrah! leave your jesting, and tell us where he is. 10

*Wag.* That follows not necessary by force of argument, that you, being licentiates, should stand upon: therefore acknowledge your error and be attentive.

*2nd Schol.* Why, didst thou not say thou knewest?

*Wag.* Have you any witness on't?

*1st Schol.* Yes, sirrah, I heard you.

*Wag.* Ask my fellow if I be a thief.

*2nd Schol.* Well, you will not tell us?

*Wag.* Yes, sir, I will tell you; yet if you were not dunces, you would never ask me such a question; for is [20 not he *corpus naturale?* and is not that *mobile?* then wherefore should you ask me such a question? But that I am by nature phlegmatic, slow to wrath, and prone to lechery (to love, I would say), it were not for you to come within forty feet of the place of execution,<sup>a</sup> although I do not doubt to see you both hanged the next sessions. Thus having triumphed over you, I will set my countenance like a precisian, and begin to speak thus: Truly, my dear brethren, my master is within at dinner, with

Valdes and Cornelius, as this wine, if it could speak, [30  
would inform your worships; and so the Lord bless you,  
preserve you, and keep you, my dear brethren, my dear  
brethren. [Exit.

1st Schol. Nay, then, I fear he has fallen into that  
damned art, for which they two are infamous through  
the world.

2nd Schol. Were he a stranger, and not allied to me,  
yet should I grieve for him. But come, let us go and  
inform the rector, and see if he by his grave counsel  
can reclaim him. 40

1st Schol. Oh, but I fear me nothing can reclaim him.

2nd Schol. Yet let us try what we can do. [Exeunt.

### SCENE III<sup>a</sup>

*Enter FAUSTUS to conjure*

*Faust.* Now that the gloomy shadow of the earth  
Longing to view Orion's drizzling look,  
Leaps from the antarctic world unto the sky,  
And dims the welkin with her pitchy breath,  
Faustus, begin thine incantations,  
And try if devils will obey thy hest,  
Seeing thou hast prayed and sacrificed to them.  
Within this circle is Jehovah's name,  
Forward and backward anagrammatized,  
The breviated names of holy saints, 10  
Figures of every adjunct to the Heavens,  
And characters of signs and erring stars,  
By which the spirits are enforced to rise:  
Then fear not, Faustus, but be resolute,  
And try the uttermost magic can perform.

*Sint mihi Dei Acherontis propitii! Valeat numen tri-  
plex Jehovah! Ignei, aerii, aquatani spiritus, salvete!  
Orientis princeps Belzebub, inferni ardentis monarcha, et  
Demogorgon, propitiamus vos, ut appareat et surgat*

*Mephistophilis. Quid tu moraris? per Jehovam, Gehen- [20  
nam, et consecratam aquam quam nunc spargo, signumque  
crucis quod nunc facio, et per vota nostra, ipse nunc  
surgat nobis dicatus Mephistophilis!*

*Enter MEPHISTOPHILES*

I charge thee to return and change thy shape;  
Thou art too ugly to attend on me.  
Go, and return an old Franciscan friar;  
That holy shape becomes a devil best. [Exit MEPH.  
I see there's virtue in my heavenly words;  
Who would not be proficient in this art?  
How pliant is this Mephistophiles, 30  
Full of obedience and humility!  
Such is the force of magic and my spells:  
Now Faustus, thou art conjuror laureat,  
That canst command great Mephistophiles:  
*Quin regis Mephistophilis fratris imagine.*

*Re-enter MEPHISTOPHILES like a Franciscan Friar*

*Meph.* Now, Faustus, what would'st thou have me  
to do?

*Faust.* I charge thee wait upon me whilst I live,  
To do whatever Faustus shall command,  
Be it to make the moon drop from her sphere,  
Or the ocean to overwhelm the world. 40

*Meph.* I am a servant to great Lucifer,  
And may not follow thee without his leave:  
No more than he commands must we perform.

*Faust.* Did not he charge thee to appear to me?

*Meph.* No, I came hither of mine own accord.

*Faust.* Did not my conjuring speeches raise thee?  
Speak.

*Meph.* That was the cause, but yet *per accidens*;  
For when we hear one rack the name of God,

Abjure the Scriptures and his Saviour Christ,  
We fly in hope to get his glorious soul; 50  
Nor will we come, unless he use such means  
Whereby he is in danger to be damned:  
Therefore the shortest cut for conjuring  
Is stoutly to abjure the Trinity,  
And pray devoutly to the Prince of Hell.

*Faust.* So Faustus hath  
Already done; and holds this principle,  
There is no chief but only Belzebub,  
To whom Faustus doth dedicate himself.  
This word "damnation" terrifies not him, 60  
For he confounds hell in Elysium;  
His ghost be with the old philosophers!  
But, leaving these vain trifles of men's souls,  
Tell me what is that Lucifer thy lord?

*Meph.* Arch-regent and commander of all spirits.

*Faust.* Was not that Lucifer an angel once?

*Meph.* Yes, Faustus, and most dearly loved of God.

*Faust.* How comes it then that he is Prince of devils?

*Meph.* Oh, by aspiring pride and insolence;  
For which God threw him from the face of Heaven. 70

*Faust.* And what are you that live with Lucifer?

*Meph.* Unhappy spirits that fell with Lucifer,  
Conspired against our God with Lucifer,  
And are for ever damned with Lucifer.

*Faust.* Where are you damned?

*Meph.* In hell.

*Faust.* How comes it then that thou art out of hell?

*Meph.* Why this is hell, nor am I out of it:  
Think'st thou that I who saw the face of God,  
And tasted the eternal joys of Heaven, 80  
Am not tormented with ten thousand hells,  
In being deprived of everlasting bliss?  
O Faustus! leave these frivolous demands,  
Which strike a terror to my fainting soul.

*Faust.* What, is great Mephistophiles so passionate

For being deprived of the joys of Heaven?  
Learn thou of Faustus manly fortitude,  
And scorn those joys thou never shalt possess.  
Go bear these tidings to great Lucifer:  
Seeing Faustus hath incurred eternal death  
By desperate thoughts against Jove's deity,  
Say he surrenders up to him his soul,  
So he will spare him four and twenty years,  
Letting him live in all voluptuousness;  
Having thee ever to attend on me;  
To give me whatsoever I shall ask,  
To tell me whatsoever I demand,  
To slay mine enemies, and aid my friends,  
And always be obedient to my will.  
Go and return to mighty Lucifer,  
And meet me in my study at midnight,  
And then resolve me of thy master's mind.

90

100

*Meph.* I will, Faustus.

[*Exit.*

*Faust.* Had I as many souls as there be stars,  
I'd give them all for Mephistophiles.  
By him I'll be great Emperor of the world,  
And make a bridge thorough the moving air,  
To pass the ocean with a band of men:  
I'll join the hills that bind the Afric shore,  
And make that country continent to Spain,  
And both contributory to my crown.  
The Emperor shall not live but by my leave,  
Nor any potentate of Germany.  
Now that I have obtained what I desire,  
I'll live in speculation of this art  
Till Mephistophiles return again.

110

[*Exit.*



SCENE IV<sup>n</sup>

*Enter WAGNER and Clown*

*Wag.* Sirrah, boy, come hither.

*Clown.* How, boy! Swowns, boy! I hope you have seen many boys with such pickadevaunts as I have; boy, quotha!

*Wag.* Tell me, sirrah, hast thou any comings in?

*Clown.* Ay, and goings out too. You may see else.

*Wag.* Alas, poor slave! see how poverty jesteth in his nakedness! the villain is bare and out of service, and so hungry that I know he would give his soul to the Devil for a shoulder of mutton, though 'twere blood-raw. 10

*Clown.* How? My soul to the Devil for a shoulder of mutton, though 'twere blood-raw! Not so, good friend. By'r lady, I had need have it well roasted and good sauce to it, if I pay so dear.

*Wag.* Well, wilt thou serve us, and I'll make thee go like *Qui mihi discipulus?*<sup>n</sup>

*Clown.* How, in verse?

*Wag.* No, sirrah; in beaten silk and stavesacre.

*Clown.* How, how, Knave's acre! Ay, I thought that was all the land his father left him. Do you hear? I would be sorry to rob you of your living. 21

*Wag.* Sirrah, I say in stavesacre.

*Clown.* Oho! Oho! Stavesacre! Why then belike if I were your man I should be full of vermin.

*Wag.* So thou shalt, whether thou beest with me or no. But, sirrah, leave your jesting, and bind yourself presently unto me for seven years, or I'll turn all the lice about thee into familiars, and they shall tear thee in pieces. 29

*Clown.* Do you hear, sir? You may save that labour: they are too familiar with me already: swowns! they are as bold with my flesh as if they had paid for their meat and drink.

*Wag.* Well, do you hear, sirrah? Hold, take these guilders. [Gives money.]

*Clown.* Gridirons! what be they?

*Wag.* Why, French crowns.

*Clown.* Mass, but in the name of French crowns, a man were as good have as many English counters. And what should I do with these? 40

*Wag.* Why, now, sirrah, thou art at an hour's warning, whensoever and wheresoever the Devil shall fetch thee.

*Clown.* No, no. Here, take your gridirons again.

*Wag.* Truly I'll none of them.

*Clown.* Truly but you shall.

*Wag.* Bear witness I gave them him.

*Clown.* Bear witness I give them you again.

*Wag.* Well, I will cause two devils presently to fetch thee away — Baliol and Belcher. 49

*Clown.* Let your Baliol and your Belcher come here, and I'll knock them, they were never so knocked since they were devils! Say I should kill one of them, what would folks say? "Do you see yonder tall fellow in the round slop" — he has killed the devil." So I should be called Kill-devil all the parish over.

*Enter two Devils: the Clown runs up and down crying*

*Wag.* Baliol and Belcher! Spirits, away!

[Exeunt Devils.]

*Clown.* What, are they gone? A vengeance on them, they have vile long nails! There was a he-devil, and a she-devil! I'll tell you how you shall know them; all he-devils has horns, and all she-devils has clifts and cloven feet. 61

*Wag.* Well, sirrah, follow me.

*Clown.* But, do you hear — if I should serve you, would you teach me to raise up Banios and Belcheos?

*Wag.* I will teach thee to turn thyself to anything; to a dog, or a cat, or a mouse, or a rat, or anything.

*Clown.* How! a Christian fellow to a dog or a cat, a mouse or a rat! No, no, sir. If you turn me into anything, let it be in the likeness of a little pretty frisking flea, that I may be here and there and everywhere. Oh, I'll tickle the pretty wenches' plackets; I'll be amongst them, i' faith. 72

*Wag.* Well, sirrah, come.

*Clown.* But, do you hear, Wagner?

*Wag.* How! Baliol and Belcher!

*Clown.* O Lord! I pray, sir, let Banio and Belcher go sleep.

*Wag.* Villain — call me Master Wagner, and let thy left eye be diametarily fixed upon my right heel, with *quasi vestigiis nostris insistere*. [Exit. 80

*Clown.* God forgive me, he speaks Dutch fustian. Well, I'll follow him: I'll serve him, that's flat. [Exit.

## SCENE V

### FAUSTUS discovered in his Study

*Faust.* Now, Faustus, must  
Thou needs be damned, and canst thou not be saved:  
What boots it then to think of God or Heaven?  
Away with such vain fancies, and despair:  
Despair in God, and trust in Belzebub;  
Now go not backward: no, Faustus, be resolute:  
Why waver'st thou? Oh, something soundeth in mine  
ears

“Abjure this magic, turn to God again!”

Ay, and Faustus will turn to God again.

To God? — He loves thee not — 80

The God thou serv'st is thine own appetite,

Wherein is fixed the love of Belzebub;

To him I'll build an altar and a church,

And offer lukewarm blood of new-born babes.

*Enter Good Angel and Evil Angel*

*G. Ang.* Sweet Faustus, leave that execrable art.

*Faust.* Contrition, prayer, repentance! What of them?

*G. Ang.* Oh, they are means to bring thee unto Heaven.

*E. Ang.* Rather, illusions — fruits of lunacy,  
That makes men foolish that do trust them most.

*G. Ang.* Sweet Faustus, think of Heaven, and heavenly things. 20

*E. Ang.* No, Faustus, think of honour and of wealth.  
[*Exeunt* Angels.]

*Faust.* Of wealth!

Why the signiory of Embden shall be mine.

When Mephistophiles shall stand by me,

What God can hurt thee? Faustus, thou art safe:

Cast no more doubts. Come, Mephistophiles,

And bring glad tidings from great Lucifer;

Is't not midnight? Come, Mephistophiles;

*Veni, veni, Mephistophile!*

*Enter MEPHISTOPHILES*

Now tell me, what says Lucifer, thy lord? 30

*Meph.* That I shall wait on Faustus whilst he lives,  
So he will buy my service with his soul.

*Faust.* Already Faustus hath hazarded that for thee.

*Meph.* But, Faustus, thou must bequeath it solemnly,  
And write a deed of gift with thine own blood,  
For that security craves great Lucifer.  
If thou deny it, I will back to hell.

*Faust.* Stay, Mephistophiles! and tell me what good  
Will my soul do thy lord.

*Meph.* Enlarge his kingdom. 40

*Faust.* Is that the reason why he tempts us thus?

*Meph.* *Solamen miseris socios habuisse doloris.*<sup>a</sup>

*Faust.* Why, have you any pain that tortures others?

*Meph.* As great as have the human souls of men.  
But tell me, Faustus, shall I have thy soul?  
And I will be thy slave, and wait on thee,<sup>1</sup>  
And give thee more than thou hast wit to ask.

*Faust.* Ay, Mephistophiles, I give it thee.

*Meph.* Then, Faustus, stab thine arm courageously,  
And bind thy soul that at some certain day 50  
Great Lucifer may claim it as his own;  
And then be thou as great as Lucifer.

*Faust.* [*stabbing his arm.*] Lo, Mephistophiles, for  
love of thee,  
I cut mine arm, and with my proper blood  
Assure my soul to be great Lucifer's,  
Chief lord and regent of perpetual night!  
View here the blood that trickles from mine arm,  
And let it be propitious for my wish.

*Meph.* But, Faustus, thou must  
Write it in manner of a deed of gift. 60

*Faust.* Ay, so I will. [*Writes.*] But, Mephistophiles,  
My blood congeals, and I can write no more.

*Meph.* I'll fetch thee fire to dissolve it straight.

[*Exit.*

*Faust.* What might the staying of my blood portend?  
Is it unwilling I should write this bill?  
Why streams it not that I may write afresh?  
*Faustus gives to thee his soul.* Ah, there it stayed.  
Why should'st thou not? Is not thy soul thine own?  
Then write again, *Faustus gives to thee his soul.*

*Re-enter MEPHISTOPHILES with a chafer of coals*

*Meph.* Here's fire. Come, Faustus, set it on. 70

*Faust.* So now the blood begins to clear again;  
Now will I make an end immediately. [*Writes.*

*Meph.* Oh, what will not I do to obtain his soul.

[*Aside.*

*Faust.* *Consummatum est*: this bill is ended,

And Faustus hath bequeathed his soul to Lucifer.

But what is this inscription on mine arm?

*Homo, fuge!* Whither should I fly?

If unto God, he'll throw me down to hell.

My senses are deceived; here's nothing writ —

I see it plain; here in this place is writ 80

*Homo, fuge!* Yet shall not Faustus fly.

*Meph.* I'll fetch him somewhat to delight his mind.

[*Exit.*

*Re-enter MEPHISTOPHILES with Devils, who give crowns  
and rich apparel to FAUSTUS, dance, and depart*

*Faust.* Speak, Mephistophiles, what means this show?

*Meph.* Nothing, Faustus, but to delight thy mind  
withal,

And to show thee what magic can perform.

*Faust.* But may I raise up spirits when I please?

*Meph.* Ay, Faustus, and do greater things than these.

*Faust.* Then there's enough for a thousand souls.

Here, Mephistophiles, receive this scroll,

A deed of gift of body and of soul: 90

But yet conditionally that thou perform

All articles prescribed between us both.

*Meph.* Faustus, I swear by hell and Lucifer

To effect all promises between us made.

*Faust.* Then hear me read them: *On these conditions following. First, that Faustus may be a spirit in form and substance. Secondly, that Mephistophiles shall be his servant, and at his command. Thirdly, shall do for him and bring him whatsoever he desires. Fourthly, that he shall be in his chamber or house invisible. Lastly, that he shall appear to the said John Faustus, at all times, and in what form or shape soever he pleases. I, John Faustus, of Wertenberg, Doctor, by these presents do give both body and soul to Lucifer, Prince of the East, and his minister, Mephistophiles: and furthermore grant unto them, that*

*twenty-four years being expired, the articles above written inviolate, full power to fetch or carry the said John Faustus, body and soul, flesh, blood, or goods, into their habitation wheresoever. By me,* *John Faustus.*

*Meph.* Speak, Faustus, do you deliver this as your deed? 110

*Faust.* Ay, take it, and the Devil give thee good on't!

*Meph.* Now, Faustus, ask what thou wilt.

*Faust.* First will I question with thee about hell.

Tell me where is the place that men call hell?

*Meph.* Under the Heavens.

*Faust.* Ay, but whereabout?

*Meph.* Within the bowels of these elements,  
Where we are tortured and remain for ever;  
Hell hath no limits, nor is circumscribed  
In one self place; for where we are is hell, 120  
And where hell is there must we ever be:  
And, to conclude, when all the world dissolves,  
And every creature shall be purified,  
All places shall be hell that is not Heaven.

*Faust.* Come, I think hell's a fable.

*Meph.* Ay, think so still, till experience change thy mind.

*Faust.* Why, think'st thou then that Faustus shall be damned?

*Meph.* Ay, of necessity, for here's the scroll  
Wherein thou hast given thy soul to Lucifer.

*Faust.* Ay, and body too; but what of that? 130  
Think'st thou that Faustus is so fond to imagine  
That, after this life, there is any pain?  
Tush; these are trifles, and mere old wives' tales.

*Meph.* But, Faustus, I am an instance to prove the contrary,  
For I am damnèd, and am now in hell.

*Faust.* How! now in hell?

Nay, an this be hell, I'll willingly be damned here;

What? walking, disputing, etc.?

But, leaving off this, let me have a wife,

The fairest maid in Germany;

140

For I am wanton and lascivious,

And cannot live without a wife.

*Meph.* How — a wife?

I prithee, Faustus, talk not of a wife.

*Faust.* Nay, sweet Mephistophiles, fetch me one, for I will have one.

*Meph.* Well — thou wilt have one. Sit there till I come: I'll fetch thee a wife in the Devil's name. [*Exit.*]

*Re-enter MEPHISTOPHILES with a Devil dressed like a woman, with fireworks*

*Meph.* Tell me, Faustus, how dost thou like thy wife?

*Faust.* A plague on her for a hot whore!

150

*Meph.* Tut, Faustus,

Marriage is but a ceremonial toy;

And if thou lovest me, think no more of it.

I'll cull thee out the fairest courtesans,

And bring them every morning to thy bed;

She whom thine eye shall like, thy heart shall have,

Be she as chaste as was Penelope,

As wise as Saba, or as beautiful

As was bright Lucifer before his fall.

Here, take this book, peruse it thoroughly: [*Gives a book.*]

The iterating of these lines brings gold;

161

The framing of this circle on the ground

Brings whirlwinds, tempests, thunder and lightning;"

Pronounce this thrice devoutly to thyself,

And men in armour shall appear to thee,

Ready to execute what thou desir'st.

*Faust.* Thanks, Mephistophiles; yet fain would I have a book wherein I might behold all spells and incantations, that I might raise up spirits when I please.

*Meph.* Here they are, in this book. [*Turns to them.* 170



*Faust.* Now would I have a book where I might see all characters and planets<sup>n</sup> of the heavens, that I might know their motions and dispositions.

*Meph.* Here they are too. [Turns to them.

*Faust.* Nay, let me have one book more — and then I have done — wherein I might see all plants, herbs, and trees that grow upon the earth.

*Meph.* Here they be.

*Faust.* Oh, thou art deceived.

179

*Meph.* Tut, I warrant thee.<sup>n</sup> [Turns to them. *Exeunt.*

### SCENE VI<sup>n</sup>

*Enter FAUSTUS and MEPHISTOPHILES*

*Faust.* When I behold the heavens, then I repent,  
And curse thee, wicked Mephistophiles,  
Because thou hast deprived me of those joys.

*Meph.* Why, Faustus,  
Thinkest thou Heaven is such a glorious thing?  
I tell thee 'tis not half so fair as thou,  
Or any man that breathes on earth.

*Faust.* How prov'st thou that?

*Meph.* 'Twas made for man, therefore is man more excellent.

*Faust.* If it were made for man, 'twas made for me; 10  
I will renounce this magic and repent.

*Enter Good Angel and Evil Angel*

*G. Ang.* Faustus, repent; yet God will pity thee.

*E. Ang.* Thou art a spirit; God cannot pity thee.

*Faust.* Who buzzeth in mine ears I am a spirit?  
Be I a devil, yet God may pity me;  
Ay, God will pity me if I repent.

*E. Ang.* Ay, but Faustus never shall repent.

[*Exeunt Angels.*

*Faust.* My heart's so hardened I cannot repent.  
Scarce can I name salvation, faith, or Heaven,  
But fearful echoes thunder in mine ears 20  
"Faustus, thou art damned!" Then swords and knives,  
Poison, gun, halters, and envenomed steel  
Are laid before me to dispatch myself,<sup>a</sup>  
And long ere this I should have slain myself,  
Had not sweet pleasure conquered deep despair.  
Have not I made blind Homer sing to me  
Of Alexander's love and Œnon's death?  
And hath not he that built the walls of Thebes<sup>a</sup>  
With ravishing sound of his melodious harp,  
Made music with my Mephistophiles? 30  
Why should I die then, or basely despair?  
I am resolved: Faustus shall ne'er repent —  
Come, Mephistophiles, let us dispute again,  
And argue of divine astrology.  
Tell me, are there many heavens above the moon?  
Are all celestial bodies but one globe,  
As is the substance of this centric earth?<sup>a</sup>

*Meph.* As are the elements, such are the spheres  
Mutually folded in each other's orb,  
And, Faustus, 40  
All jointly move upon one axle-tree  
Whose terminine is termed the world's wide pole;  
Nor are the names of Saturn, Mars, or Jupiter  
Feigned, but are erring stars.

*Faust.* But, tell me, have they all one motion both,  
*situ et tempore?*<sup>a</sup>

*Meph.* All jointly move from east to west in twenty-  
four hours upon the poles of the world; but differ in  
their motion upon the poles of the zodiac.

*Faust.* Tush! 50  
These slender trifles Wagner can decide;  
Hath Mephistophiles no greater skill?  
Who knows not the double motion of the planets?  
The first is finished in a natural day;

The second thus: as Saturn in thirty years; Jupiter in twelve; Mars in four; the Sun, Venus, and Mercury in a year; the moon in twenty-eight days. Tush, these are freshmen's suppositions. But tell me, hath every sphere a dominion or *intelligentia*?

*Meph.* Ay.

60

*Faust.* How many heavens, or spheres, are there?

*Meph.* Nine: the seven planets, the firmament, and the empyreal heaven.

*Faust.* Well, resolve me in this question: Why have we not conjunctions, oppositions, aspects, eclipses, all at one time, but in some years we have more, in some less?

*Meph.* *Per inæqualem motum respectu totius.*

*Faust.* Well, I am answered. Tell me who made the world.

70

*Meph.* I will not.

*Faust.* Sweet Mephistophiles, tell me.

*Meph.* Move me not, for I will not tell thee.

*Faust.* Villain, have I not bound thee to tell me anything?

*Meph.* Ay, that is not against our kingdom; but this is. Think thou on hell, Faustus, for thou art damned.

*Faust.* Think, Faustus, upon God that made the world.

*Meph.* Remember this.<sup>a</sup>

[Exit.

*Faust.* Ay, go, accursèd spirit, to ugly hell.

80

'Tis thou hast damned distressed Faustus' soul.  
Is't not too late?

*Re-enter Good Angel and Evil Angel*

*E. Ang.* Too late.

*G. Ang.* Never too late, if Faustus can repent.

*E. Ang.* If thou repent, devils shall tear thee in pieces.

*G. Ang.* Repent, and they shall never raze thy skin.  
[Exeunt Angels.

*Faust.* Ah, Christ my Saviour,  
Seek to save distressed Faustus' soul!

*Enter* LUCIFER, BELZEBUB, and MEPHISTOPHILES

*Luc.* Christ cannot save thy soul, for he is just;  
There's none but I have interest in the same. 90

*Faust.* Oh, who art thou that look'st so terrible?

*Luc.* I am Lucifer,  
And this is my companion-prince in hell.

*Faust.* O Faustus! they are come to fetch away thy  
soul!

*Luc.* We come to tell thee thou dost injure us;  
Thou talk'st of Christ contrary to thy promise;  
Thou should'st not think of God: think of the Devil.

*Faust.* Nor will I henceforth: pardon me in this,  
And Faustus vows never to look to Heaven,  
Never to name God, or to pray to him, 100  
To burn his Scriptures, slay his ministers,  
And make my spirits pull his churches down.

*Luc.* Do so, and we will highly gratify thee. Faustus,  
we are come from hell to show thee some pastime: sit  
down, and thou shalt see all the Seven Deadly Sins  
appear in their proper shapes.

*Faust.* That sight will be as pleasing unto me,  
As Paradise was to Adam the first day  
Of his creation. 109

*Luc.* Talk not of Paradise nor creation, but mark this  
show: talk of the Devil, and nothing else: come away!

*Enter the Seven Deadly Sins*

Now, Faustus, examine them of their several names and  
dispositions.

*Faust.* What art thou — the first?

*Pride.* I am Pride. I disdain to have any parents.  
I am like to Ovid's flea:<sup>n</sup> I can creep into every corner  
of a wench; sometimes, like a periwig, I sit upon her

brow; or like a fan of feathers, I kiss her lips; indeed I do — what do I not? But, fie, what a scent is here! I'll not speak another word, except the ground were perfumed, and covered with cloth of arras. 121

*Faust.* What art thou — the second?

*Covet.* I am Covetousness, begotten of an old churl in an old leathern bag; and might I have my wish I would desire that this house and all the people in it were turned to gold, that I might lock you up in my good chest. Oh, my sweet gold!

*Faust.* What art thou — the third? 128

*Wrath.* I am Wrath. I had neither father nor mother: I leapt out of a lion's mouth when I was scarce half an hour old; and ever since I have run up and down the world with this case of rapiers, wounding myself when I had nobody to fight withal. I was born in hell; and look to it, for some of you shall be my father.

*Faust.* What art thou — the fourth?

*Envy.* I am Envy, begotten of a chimney-sweeper and an oyster-wife. I cannot read, and therefore wish all books were burnt. I am lean with seeing others eat. Oh, that there would come a famine through all the world, that all might die, and I live alone! then thou should'st see how fat I would be. But must thou sit and I stand! Come down with a vengeance! 142

*Faust.* Away, envious rascal! What art thou — the fifth?

*Glut.* Who, I, sir? I am Gluttony. My parents are all dead, and the devil a penny they have left me, but a bare pension, and that is thirty meals a day and ten bevers — a small trifle to suffice nature. Oh, I come of a royal parentage! My grandfather was a Gammon of Bacon, my grandmother was a Hogshead of Claret wine; my godfathers were these, Peter Pickle-herring, and Martin Martlemas-beef; Oh, but my godmother, she was a jolly gentlewoman, and well beloved in every good town and city; her name was Mistress Margery March-beer.

Now, Faustus, thou hast heard all my progeny, wilt thou bid me to supper? 156

*Faust.* No, I'll see thee hanged: thou wilt eat up all my victuals.

*Glut.* Then the Devil choke thee!

*Faust.* Choke thyself, glutton! Who art thou—the sixth?

*Sloth.* I am Sloth. I was begotten on a sunny bank, where I have lain ever since; and you have done me great injury to bring me from thence: let me be carried thither again by Gluttony and Lechery. I'll not speak another word for a king's ransom. 166

*Faust.* What are you, Mistress Minx, the seventh and last?

*Lechery.* Who, I, sir? I am one that loves an inch of raw mutton better than an ell of fried stock-fish; and the first letter of my name begins with L. 171

*Luc.* Away to hell, to hell! [*Exeunt the Sins.*] Now, Faustus, how dost thou like this?

*Faust.* Oh, this feeds my soul!

*Luc.* Tut, Faustus, in hell is all manner of delight.

*Faust.* Oh, might I see hell, and return again,  
How happy were I then!

*Luc.* Thou shalt; I will send for thee at midnight.  
In meantime take this book; peruse it thoroughly,  
And thou shalt turn thyself into what shape thou wilt.

*Faust.* Great thanks, mighty Lucifer! 181  
This will I keep as chary as my life.

*Luc.* Farewell, Faustus, and think on the Devil.

*Faust.* Farewell, great Lucifer!

[*Exeunt* LUCIFER and BELZEBUB.

Come, Mephistophiles.

[*Exeunt.*

*Enter* CHORUS

*Chorus.* Learned Faustus,  
To know the secrets of astronomy,

Graven in the book of Jove's high firmament,  
 Did mount himself to scale Olympus' top,  
 Being seated in a chariot burning bright,  
 Drawn by the strength of yoky dragons' necks.  
 He now is gone to prove cosmography,  
 And, as I guess, will first arrive at Rome,  
 To see the Pope and manner of his court,  
 And take some part of holy Peter's feast,  
 That to this day<sup>n</sup> is highly solemnized.

10  
 [Exil.

### SCENE VII<sup>n</sup>

*Enter* FAUSTUS *and* MEPHISTOPHILES

*Faust.* Having now, my good Mephistophiles,  
 Passed with delight the stately town of Trier,  
 Environed round with airy mountain tops,  
 With walls of flint, and deep entrenched lakes,  
 Not to be won by any conquering prince;  
 From Paris next, coasting the realm of France,  
 We saw the river Maine fall into Rhine,  
 Whose banks are set with groves of fruitful vines;  
 Then up to Naples, rich Campania,  
 Whose buildings fair and gorgeous to the eye,  
 The streets straight forth, and paved with finest brick,  
 Quarter the town in four equivalents:  
 There saw we learnèd Maro's<sup>n</sup> golden tomb,  
 The way he cut, an English mile in length,  
 Thorough a rock of stone in one night's space;  
 From thence to Venice, Padua, and the rest,  
 In one of which a sumptuous temple<sup>n</sup> stands,  
 That threatens the stars with her aspiring top.  
 Thus hitherto has Faustus spent his time:  
 But tell me, now, what resting-place is this?  
 Hast thou, as erst I did command,  
 Conducted me within the walls of Rome?

10

20

*Meph.* Faustus, I have; and because we will not be unprovided, I have taken up his Holiness' privy chamber for our use.

*Faust.* I hope his Holiness will bid us welcome.

*Meph.* Tut, 'tis no matter, man, we'll be bold with his good cheer.

And now, my Faustus, that thou may'st perceive  
What Rome containeth to delight thee with, 30  
Know that this city stands upon seven hills  
That underprop the groundwork of the same:  
Just through the midst runs flowing Tiber's stream,  
With winding banks that cut it in two parts:  
Over the which four stately bridges lean,  
That make safe passage to each part of Rome:  
Upon the bridge called Ponte Angelo  
Erected is a castle passing strong,  
Within whose walls such store of ordnance are,  
And double cannons<sup>n</sup> formed of carvèd brass, 40  
As match the days within one còmplete year;  
Besides the gates, and high pyramids,  
Which Julius Cæsar brought from Africa.<sup>n</sup>

*Faust.* Now, by the kingdoms of infernal rule,  
Of Styx, of Acheron, and the fiery lake  
Of ever-burning Phlegethon, I swear  
That I do long to see the monuments  
And situation of bright-splendent Rome:  
Come, therefore, let's away.

*Meph.* Nay, Faustus, stay; I know you'd see the Pope,  
And take some part of holy Peter's feast, 51  
Where thou shalt see a troop of bald-pate friars,  
Whose *summum bonum* is in belly-cheer.

*Faust.* Well, I'm content to compass them some sport,  
And by their folly make us merriment.  
Then charm me, Mephistophiles, that I  
May be invisible, to do what I please  
Unseen of any whilst I stay in Rome.

[MEPHISTOPHILES charms him.]



*Meph.* So, Faustus, now  
Do what thou wilt, thou shalt not be discerned. 60

*Sound a sonnet. Enter the POPE and the CARDINAL of  
LORRAIN to the banquet, with Friars attending*

*Pope.* My Lord of Lorrain, wilt please you draw near?

*Faust.* Fall to, and the devil choke you an you spare!

*Pope.* How now! Who's that which spake? — Friars,  
look about.

*1st Friar.* Here's nobody, if it like your Holiness.

*Pope.* My lord, here is a dainty dish was sent me  
from the Bishop of Milan.

*Faust.* I thank you, sir. [*Snatches the dish.*]

*Pope.* How now! Who's that which snatched the  
meat from me? Will no man look? My Lord, this  
dish was sent me from the Cardinal of Florence. 71

*Faust.* You say true; I'll ha't. [*Snatches the dish.*]

*Pope.* What, again! My lord, I'll drink to your grace.

*Faust.* I'll pledge your grace. [*Snatches the cup.*]

*C. of Lor.* My lord, it may be some ghost newly  
crept out of purgatory, come to beg a pardon of your  
Holiness.

*Pope.* It may be so. Friars, prepare a dirge to lay the  
fury of this ghost. Once again, my lord, fall to.

[*The POPE crosses himself.*]

*Faust.* What, are you crossing of yourself? 80  
Well, use that trick no more I would advise you.

[*The POPE crosses himself again.*]

Well, there's the second time. Aware the third,  
I give you fair warning.

[*The POPE crosses himself again, and FAUSTUS  
hits him a box of the ear; and they all run  
away.*]

Come on, Mephistophiles, what shall we do?

*Meph.* Nay, I know not. We shall be cursed with  
bell, book, and candle.

*Faust.* How! bell, book, and candle — candle, book,  
and bell,  
Forward and backward to curse Faustus to hell!  
Anon you shall hear a hog grunt, a calf bleat, an ass bray,  
Because it is Saint Peter's holiday. 90

*Re-enter the Friars to sing the Dirge*

*1st Friar.* Come, brethren, let's about our business  
with good devotion.

*They sing:*

Cursed be he that stole away his Holiness' meat from  
the table! *Maledicat Dominus!*

Cursed be he that struck his Holiness a blow on the face!  
*Maledicat Dominus!*

Cursed be he that took Friar Sandelo a blow on the  
pate! *Maledicat Dominus!*

Cursed be he that disturbeth our holy dirge! *Maledicat*  
*Dominus!* 100

Cursed be he that took away his Holiness' wine!  
*Maledicat Dominus! Et omnes sancti! Amen!*

[MEPHISTOPHILES and FAUSTUS beat the Friars, and  
fling fireworks among them: and so exeunt.]

*Enter CHORUS*

*Chorus.* When Faustus had with pleasure ta'en the  
view

Of rarest things, and royal courts of kings,  
He stayed his course, and so returnèd home;  
Where such as bear his absence but with grief,  
I mean his friends, and near'st companions,  
Did gratulate his safety with kind words,  
And in their conference of what befell,  
Touching his journey through the world and air,  
They put forth questions of Astrology,

Which Faustus answered with such learned skill, 10  
As they admired and wondered at his wit.  
Now is his fame spread forth in every land;  
Amongst the rest the Emperor is one,  
Carolus the Fifth, at whose palace now  
Faustus is feasted 'mongst his noblemen.  
What there he did in trial of his art,  
I leave untold — your eyes shall see performed. [Exit.]

SCENE VIII<sup>a</sup>

*Enter ROBIN the Ostler with a book in his hand*

*Robin.* Oh, this is admirable! here I ha' stolen one of Doctor Faustus' conjuring books, and i' faith I mean to search some circles for my own use. Now will I make all the maidens in our parish dance at my pleasure, stark-naked before me; and so by that means I shall see more than e'er I felt or saw yet.

*Enter RALPH calling ROBIN*

*Ralph.* Robin, prithee, come away; there's a gentleman tarries to have his horse, and he would have his things rubbed and made clean: he keeps such a chafing with my mistress about it; and she has sent me to look thee out; prithee, come away. 11

*Robin.* Keep out, keep out, or else you are blown up; you are dismembered, Ralph: keep out, for I am about a roaring piece of work.

*Ralph.* Come, what dost thou with that same book? Thou can'st not read.

*Robin.* Yes, my master and mistress shall find that I can read, he for his forehead, she for her private study; she's born to bear with me, or else my art fails.

*Ralph.* Why, Robin, what book is that? 20

*Robin.* What book! Why, the most intolerable book

for conjuring that e'er was invented by any brimstone devil.

*Ralph.* Can'st thou conjure with it?

*Robin.* I can do all these things easily with it; first, I can make thee drunk with ippocras at any tavern in Europe for nothing; that's one of my conjuring works.

*Ralph.* Our Master Parson says that's nothing.

*Robin.* True, Ralph; and more, Ralph, if thou hast any mind to Nan Spit, our kitchen-maid, then turn her and wind her to thy own use as often as thou wilt, and at midnight. 32

*Ralph.* O brave Robin, shall I have Nan Spit, and to mine own use? On that condition I'd feed thy devil with horse-bread as long as he lives, of free cost.

*Robin.* No more, sweet Ralph: let's go and make clean our boots, which lie foul upon our hands, and then to our conjuring in the devil's name. [Exeunt.]

## SCENE IX<sup>a</sup>

*Enter ROBIN and RALPH with a silver goblet*

*Robin.* Come, Ralph, did not I tell thee we were for ever made by this Doctor Faustus' book? *ecce signum*, here's a simple purchase<sup>n</sup> for horse-keepers; our horses shall eat no hay as long as this lasts.

*Ralph.* But, Robin, here comes the vintner.

*Robin.* Hush! I'll gull him supernaturally.

*Enter Vintner*

Drawer,<sup>n</sup> I hope all is paid: God be with you; come, Ralph.

*Vint.* Soft, sir; a word with you. I must yet have a goblet paid from you, ere you go. 10

*Robin.* I, a goblet, Ralph; I, a goblet! I scorn you, and you are but a, etc.<sup>n</sup> I, a goblet! search me.

*Vint.* I mean so, sir, with your favour. [*Searches him.*

*Robin.* How say you now?

*Vint.* I must say somewhat to your fellow. You, sir!

*Ralph.* Me, sir! me, sir! search your fill. [*Vintner searches him.*] Now, sir, you may be ashamed to burden honest men with a matter of truth.<sup>n</sup> 18

*Vint.* Well, t'one<sup>n</sup> of you hath this goblet about you.

*Robin.* You lie, drawer, 'tis afore me. [*Aside.*]—Sirrah you, I'll teach you to impeach honest men—stand by—I'll scour you for a goblet!—stand aside you had best, I charge you in the name of Belzebub.—Look to the goblet, Ralph. [*Aside to RALPH.*

*Vint.* What mean you, sirrah?

*Robin.* I'll tell you what I mean. [*Reads from a book.*] *Sanctobulorum Periphrasticon*—nay, I'll tickle you, Vintner.—Look to the goblet, Ralph. [*Aside to RALPH.*

[*Reads.*] *Polypragmos Belseborams framanto pacostiphos iostu, Mephistophilis, etc.* 30

*Enter MEPHISTOPHILES, sets squibs at their backs, and then exit. They run about*

*Vint.* *O nomine Domini!* what meanest thou, Robin? thou hast no goblet.

*Ralph.* *Peccatum peccatorum!* Here's thy goblet, good Vintner. [*Gives the goblet to Vintner, who exit.*

*Robin.* *Misericordia pro nobis!* What shall I do? Good Devil, forgive me now, and I'll never rob thy library more.

*Re-enter MEPHISTOPHILES*

*Meph.* Monarch of hell, under whose black survey  
Great potentates do kneel with awful fear,  
Upon whose altars thousand souls do lie, 40  
How am I vexèd with these villains' charms?  
From Constantinople am I hither come  
Only for pleasure of these damnèd slaves.

*Robin.* How from Constantinople? You have had a great journey: will you take sixpence in your purse to pay for your supper, and begone?

*Meph.* Well, villains, for your presumption, I transform thee into an ape, and thee into a dog; and so begone.  
[Exit.

*Robin.* How, into an ape; that's brave! I'll have fine sport with the boys. I'll get nuts and apples enow.

*Ralph.* And I must be a dog. 51

*Robin.* I'faith thy head will never be out of the pot-tage pot.  
[Exeunt.

### SCENE X<sup>a</sup>

*Enter* EMPEROR, FAUSTUS, and a Knight with Attendants

*Emp.* Master Doctor Faustus, I have heard strange report of thy knowledge in the black art, how that none in my empire nor in the whole world can compare with thee for the rare effects of magic: they say thou hast a familiar spirit, by whom thou canst accomplish what thou list. This therefore is my request, that thou let me see some proof of thy skill, that mine eyes may be witnesses to confirm what mine ears have heard reported: and here I swear to thee by the honour of mine imperial crown, that, whatever thou doest, thou shalt be no ways prejudiced or endamaged. 11

*Knight.* I'faith he looks much like a conjuror. [Aside.

*Faust.* My gracious sovereign, though I must confess myself far inferior to the report men have published, and nothing answerable to the honour of your imperial majesty, yet for that love and duty binds me thereunto, I am content to do whatsoever your majesty shall command me. ●

*Emp.* Then, Doctor Faustus, mark what I shall say. As I was sometime solitary set 23

Within my closet, sundry thoughts arose  
About the honour of mine ancestors,  
How they had won by prowess such exploits,  
Got such riches, subdued so many kingdoms  
As we that do succeed, or they that shall  
Hereafter possess our throne, shall  
(I fear me) ne'er attain to that degree  
Of high renown and great authority;  
Amongst which kings is Alexander the Great,  
Chief spectacle of the world's pre-eminence,  
The bright shining of whose glorious acts  
Lightens the world with his reflecting beams,  
As when I hear but motion made of him  
It grieves my soul I never saw the man.  
If therefore thou by cunning of thine art  
Canst raise this man from hollow vaults below,  
Where lies entombed this famous conqueror,  
And bring with him his beauteous paramour,  
Both in their right shapes, gesture, and attire  
They used to wear during their time of life,  
Thou shalt both satisfy my just desire,  
And give me cause to praise thee whilst I live.

30

40

*Faust.* My gracious lord, I am ready to accomplish  
your request so far forth<sup>n</sup> as by art, and power of my  
spirit, I am able to perform.

*Knight.* I'faith that's just nothing at all. [*Aside.*

*Faust.* But, if it like your grace, it is not in my ability  
to present before your eyes the true substantial bodies  
of those two deceased princes, which long since are con-  
sumed to dust.

50

*Knight.* Ay, marry, Master Doctor, now there's a sign  
of grace in you, when you will confess the truth. [*Aside.*

*Faust.* But such spirits as can lively resemble Alex-  
ander and his paramour shall appear before your grace  
in that manner that they both lived<sup>d</sup> in, in their most  
flourishing estate; which I doubt not shall sufficiently  
content your imperial majesty.

*Emp.* Go to, Master Doctor, let me see them presently.

*Knight.* Do you hear, Master Doctor? You bring Alexander and his paramour before the Emperor! 61

*Faust.* How then, sir?

*Knight.* I'faith that's as true as Diana turned me to a stag!

*Faust.* No, sir, but when Actæon died, he left the horns for you. Mephistophiles, begone. [*Exit* MEPHISTO.]

*Knight.* Nay, an you go to conjuring, I'll begone. [*Exit.*]

*Faust.* I'll meet with you anon for interrupting me so. Here they are, my gracious lord.

*Re-enter* MEPHISTOPHILES *with Spirits in the shape of*  
*ALEXANDER and his Paramour*

*Emp.* Master Doctor, I heard this lady while she lived had a wart or mole in her neck: how shall I know whether it be so or no? 72

*Faust.* Your highness may boldly go and see.

*Emp.* Sure these are no spirits, but the true substantial bodies of those two deceased princes.

[*Exeunt* Spirits.]

*Faust.* Will't please your highness now to send for the knight that was so pleasant with me here of late?

*Emp.* One of you call him forth! [*Exit* Attendant.]

*Re-enter the Knight with a pair of horns on his head*

How now, sir knight! why I had thought thou had'st been a bachelor, but now I see thou hast a wife, that not only gives thee horns, but makes thee wear them. Feel on thy head. 82

*Knight.* Thou damnèd wretch and execrable dog,  
Bred in the concave of some monstrous rock,  
How darest thou thus abuse a gentleman?  
Villain, I say, undo what thou hast done!



*Faust.* Oh, not so fast, sir; there's no haste; but, good, are you remembered how you crossed me in my conference with the Emperor? I think I have met with you for it. 90

*Emp.* Good Master Doctor, at my entreaty release him: he hath done penance sufficient.

*Faust.* My gracious lord, not so much for the injury he offered me here in your presence, as to delight you with some mirth, hath Faustus worthily requited this injurious knight: which, being all I desire, I am content to release him of his horns: and, sir knight, hereafter speak well of scholars. Mephistophiles, transform him straight. [MEPHISTOPHILES removes the horns.] Now, my good lord, having done my duty I humbly take my leave.

*Emp.* Farewell, Master Doctor; yet, ere you go, 101  
Expect from me a bounteous reward. [Exeunt.]

## SCENE XI<sup>a</sup>

### *Enter FAUSTUS and MEPHISTOPHILES*

*Faust.* Now, Mephistophiles, the restless course  
That Time doth run with calm and silent foot,  
Shortening my days and thread of vital life,  
Calls for the payment of my latest years:  
Therefore, sweet Mephistophiles, let us  
Make haste to Wertenberg.

*Meph.* What, will you go on horse-back or on foot?

*Faust.* Nay, till I'm past this fair and pleasant green,  
I'll walk on foot.

### *Enter a Horse-courser*

*Horse-c.* I have been all this day seeking one Master Fustian: mass, see where he is! God save you, Master Doctor! 12

*Faust.* What, horse-courser! You are well met.

*Horse-c.* Do you hear, sir? I have brought you forty dollars for your horse.

*Faust.* I cannot sell him so: if thou likest him for fifty, take him.

*Horse-c.* Alas, sir, I have no more. — I pray you speak for me. 19

*Meph.* I pray you let him have him: he is an honest fellow, and he has a great charge, neither wife nor child.

*Faust.* Well, come, give me your money. [*Horse-courser gives FAUSTUS the money.*] My boy will deliver him to you. But I must tell you one thing before you have him; ride him not into the water at any hand."

*Horse-c.* Why, sir, will he not drink of all waters?

*Faust.* Oh, yes, he will drink of all waters, but ride him not into the water: ride him over hedge or ditch, or where thou wilt, but not into the water. 29

*Horse-c.* Well, sir. — Now am I made man<sup>n</sup> for ever: I'll not leave my horse for twice forty: if he had but the quality of hey-ding-ding, hey-ding-ding,<sup>n</sup> I'd make a brave living on him: he has a buttock as slick as an eel. [*Aside.*] Well, God b' wi' ye, sir, your boy will deliver him me: but hark you, sir; if my horse be sick or ill at ease, if I bring his water to you, you'll tell me what it is.

*Faust.* Away, you villain; what, dost think I am a horse-doctor? [*Exit Horse-courser.*]

What art thou, Faustus, but a man condemned to die? Thy fatal time<sup>n</sup> doth draw to final end; 40

Despair doth drive distrust unto my thoughts:

Confound these passions with a quiet sleep:

Tush, Christ did call the thief upon the cross;

Then rest thee, Faustus, quiet in conceit.

[*Sleeps in his chair.*]

*Re-enter Horse-courser, all wet, crying*

*Horse-c.* Alas, alas! Doctor Fustian quotha? mass, Doctor Lopus<sup>n</sup> was never such a doctor: has given me

a purgation has purged me of forty dollars; I shall never see them more. But yet, like an ass as I was, I would not be ruled by him, for he bade me I should ride him into no water: now I, thinking my horse had had some [50 rare quality that he would not have had me known of, I, like a venturesome youth, rid him into the deep pond at the town's end. I was no sooner in the middle of the pond, but my horse vanished away, and I sat upon a bottle of hay, never so near drowning in my life. But I'll seek out my Doctor, and have my forty dollars again, or I'll make it the dearest horse!<sup>a</sup> — Oh, yonder is his snipper-snapper. — Do you hear? you hey-pass, where's your master?

*Meph.* Why, sir, what would you? You cannot speak with him. 61

*Horse-c.* But I will speak with him.

*Meph.* Why, he's fast asleep. Come some other time.

*Horse-c.* I'll speak with him now, or I'll break his glass windows about his ears.

*Meph.* I tell thee he has not slept this eight nights.

*Horse-c.* An he have not slept this eight weeks I'll speak with him.

*Meph.* See where he is, fast asleep.

*Horse-c.* Ay, this is he. God save you, Master Doctor, Master Doctor, Master Doctor Fustian! — Forty dollars, forty dollars for a bottle of hay! 72

*Meph.* Why, thou seest he hears thee not.

*Horse-c.* So-ho, ho! — so-ho, ho! [*Hollas in his ear.*] No, will you not wake? I'll make you wake ere I go. [*Pulls FAUSTUS by the leg, and pulls it away.*] Alas, I am undone! What shall I do?

*Faust.* Oh, my leg, my leg! Help, Mephistophiles! call the officers. My leg, my leg!

*Meph.* Come, villain, to the constable. 80

*Horse-c.* O lord, sir, let me go, and I'll give you forty dollars more.

*Meph.* Where be they?

*Horse-c.* I have none about me. Come to my ostry and I'll give them you.

*Meph.* Begone quickly. [*Horse-courser runs away.*]

*Faust.* What, is he gone? Farewell he! Faustus has his leg again, and the horse-courser, I take it, a bottle of hay for his labour. Well, this trick shall cost him forty dollars more. 90

*Enter WAGNER*

How now, Wagner, what's the news with thee?

*Wag.* Sir, the Duke of Vanholt doth earnestly entreat your company.

*Faust.* The Duke of Vanholt! an honourable gentleman, to whom I must be no niggard of my cunning. Come, Mephistophiles, let's away to him. [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE XII<sup>a</sup>

*Enter the DUKE of VANHOLT, the DUCHESS, FAUSTUS, and MEPHISTOPHILES*

*Duke.* Believe me, Master Doctor, this merriment hath much pleased me.

*Faust.* My gracious lord, I am glad it contents you so well. — But it may be, madam, you take no delight in this. I have heard that great-bellied women do long for some dainties or other: what is it, madam? tell me, and you shall have it.

*Duchess.* Thanks, good Master Doctor; and for I see your courteous intent to pleasure me, I will not hide from you the thing my heart desires; and were it now summer, as it is January and the dead time of the winter, I would desire no better meat than a dish of ripe grapes. 13

*Faust.* Alas, madam, that's nothing! Mephistophiles, begone. [*Exit MEPHISTOPHILES.*] Were it a greater thing than this, so it would content you, you should have it.

*Re-enter MEPHISTOPHILES with grapes*

Here they be, madam; wilt please you taste on them?

*Duke.* Believe me, Master Doctor, this makes me wonder above the rest, that being in the dead time of winter, and in the month of January, how you should come by these grapes. 21

*Faust.* If it like your grace, the year is divided into two circles over the whole world, that, when it is here winter with us, in the contrary circle it is summer with them, as in India, Saba, and farther countries in the East; and by means of a swift spirit that I have I had them brought hither, as you see. — How do you like them, madam; be they good?

*Duchess.* Believe me, Master Doctor, they be the best grapes that e'er I tasted in my life before. 30

*Faust.* I am glad they content you so, madam.

*Duke.* Come, madam, let us in, where you must well reward this learned man for the great kindness he hath showed to you.

*Duchess.* And so I will, my lord; and, whilst I live, rest beholding for this courtesy.

*Faust.* I humbly thank your grace.

*Duke.* Come, Master Doctor, follow us and receive your reward. *[Exeunt.]*

### SCENE XIII<sup>a</sup>

*Enter WAGNER*

*Wag.* I think my master shortly means to die,  
For he hath given to me all his goods:  
And yet, methinks, if that death were so near,  
He would not banquet, and carouse and swill  
Amongst the students, as even now he doth,  
Who are at supper with such belly-cheer  
As Wagner ne'er beheld in all his life.  
See where they come! belike the feast is ended. 8

*Enter FAUSTUS, with two or three Scholars and  
MEPHISTOPHELES*

*1st Schol.* Master Doctor Faustus, since our conference about fair ladies, which was the beautifullest in all the world, we have determined with ourselves that Helen of Greece was the admirablest lady that ever lived: therefore, Master Doctor, if you will do us that favour, as to let us see that peerless dame of Greece, whom all the world admires for majesty, we should think ourselves much beholding unto you.

*Faust.* Gentlemen,  
For that I know your friendship is unfeigned,  
And Faustus' custom is not to deny  
The just requests of those that wish him well, 20  
You shall behold that peerless dame of Greece,  
No otherways for pomp and majesty,  
Than when Sir Paris crossed the seas with her,  
And brought the spoils to rich Dardania.  
Be silent, then, for danger is in words.

*[Music sounds, and HELEN passeth over the stage.]*

*2nd Schol.* Too simple is my wit to tell her praise,  
Whom all the world admires for majesty.

*3rd Schol.* No marvel though the angry Greeks pursued  
With ten years' war the rape of such a queen,  
Whose heavenly beauty passeth all compare. 30

*1st Schol.* Since we have seen the pride of Nature's  
works,  
And only paragon of excellence,  
Let us depart; and for this glorious deed  
Happy and blest be Faustus evermore.

*Faust.* Gentlemen, farewell — the same I wish to  
you. [Exeunt Scholars and WAGNER.]

*Enter an Old Man*

*Old Man.* Ah, Doctor Faustus, that I might prevail  
To guide thy steps unto the way of life,

By which sweet path thou may'st attain the goal  
That shall conduct thee to celestial rest!

Break heart, drop blood, and mingle it with tears, 40

Tears falling from repentant heaviness

Of thy most vile and loathsome filthiness,

The stench whereof corrupts the inward soul

With such flagitious crimes of heinous sins

As no commiseration may expel,

But mercy, Faustus, of thy Saviour sweet,

Whose blood alone must wash away thy guilt.

*Faust.* Where art thou, Faustus? wretch, what hast  
thou done?

Damned art thou, Faustus, damned; despair and die!

Hell calls for right, and with a roaring voice 50

Says "Faustus! come! thine hour is almost come!"

And Faustus now will come to do thee right."

[MEPHISTOPHILES gives him a dagger.]

*Old Man.* Ah stay, good Faustus, stay thy desperate  
steps!

I see an angel hovers o'er thy head,

And, with a vial full of precious grace,

Offers to pour the same into thy soul:

Then call for mercy, and avoid despair.

*Faust.* Ah, my sweet friend, I feel  
Thy words do comfort my distressed soul.

Leave me a while to ponder on my sins. 60

*Old Man.* I go, sweet Faustus, but with heavy cheer,  
Fearing the ruin of thy hopeless soul. [Exit.]

*Faust.* Accursèd Faustus, where is mercy now?

I do repent; and yet I do despair;

Hell strives with grace for conquest in my breast:

What shall I do to shun the snares of death?

*Meph.* Thou traitor, Faustus, I arrest thy soul  
For disobedience to my sovereign lord;

Revolt, or I'll in piecemeal tear thy flesh.

*Faust.* Sweet Mephistophiles, entreat thy lord 70  
To pardon my unjust presumption.

And with my blood again I will confirm  
My former vow I made to Lucifer.

*Meph.* Do it then quickly, with unfeignèd heart,  
Lest greater danger do attend thy drift.

[FAUSTUS stabs his arm and writes on a paper  
with his blood.]

*Faust.* Torment, sweet friend, that base and crookèd  
age,  
That durst dissuade me from thy Lucifer,  
With greatest torments that our hell affords.

*Meph.* His faith is great: I cannot touch his soul;  
But what I may afflict his body with 80  
I will attempt, which is but little worth.

*Faust.* One thing, good servant, let me crave of  
thee,  
To glut the longing of my heart's desire —  
That I might have unto my paramour  
That heavenly Helen, which I saw of late,  
Whose sweet embracings may extinguish clean  
These thoughts that do dissuade me from my vow,  
And keep mine oath I made to Lucifer.

*Meph.* Faustus, this or what else thou shalt desire  
Shall be performed in twinkling of an eye. 90

*Re-enter HELEN*

*Faust.* Was this the face that launched a thousand  
ships  
And burnt the topless towers of Ilium?  
Sweet Helen, make me immortal with a kiss. [*Kisses her.*]  
Her lips suck forth my soul; see where it flies! —  
Come, Helen, come, give me my soul again.  
Here will I dwell, for Heaven is in these lips,  
And all is dross that is not Helena.  
I will be Paris, and for love of thee,  
Instead of Troy, shall Wertenberg be sacked:  
And I will combat with weak Menelaus, 100



And wear thy colours on my plumèd crest:  
 Yea, I will wound Achilles in the heel,  
 And then return to Helen for a kiss.  
 Oh, thou art fairer than the evening air  
 Clad in the beauty of a thousand stars;  
 Brighter art thou than flaming Jupiter  
 When he appeared to hapless Semele:  
 More lovely than the monarch of the sky  
 In wanton Arethusa's azured arms:<sup>n</sup>  
 And none but thou shalt be my paramour! [*Exeunt.* 11c

*Enter the Old Man*

*Old Man.* Accursèd Faustus, miserable man,  
 That from thy soul exclud'st the grace of Heaven,  
 And fly'st the throne of his tribunal seat!

*Enter Devils*

Satan begins to sift<sup>n</sup> me with his pride:  
 As in this furnace<sup>n</sup> God shall try my faith,  
 My faith, vile hell, shall triumph over thee.  
 Ambitious fiends! see how the heavens smile  
 At your repulse, and laugh your state to scorn!  
 Hence, hell! for hence I fly unto my God.

[*Exeunt on one side Devils — on the other, Old Man.*

SCENE XIV<sup>n</sup>

*Enter FAUSTUS with Scholars*

*Faust.* Ah, gentlemen!

*1st Schol.* What ails Faustus?

*Faust.* Ah, my sweet chamber-fellow, had I lived  
 with thee, then had I lived still! but now I die eternally.  
 Look, comes he not, comes he not?

*2nd Schol.* What means Faustus?

*3rd Schol.* Belike he is grown into some sickness by being over solitary.

*1st Schol.* If it be so, we'll have physicians to cure him. 'Tis but a surfeit. Never fear, man. 10

*Faust.* A surfeit of deadly sin that hath damned both body and soul.

*2nd Schol.* Yet, Faustus, look up to heaven: remember God's mercies are infinite.

*Faust.* But Faustus' offences can never be pardoned: the serpent that tempted Eve may be saved, but not Faustus. Ah, gentlemen, hear me with patience, and tremble not at my speeches! Though my heart pants and quivers to remember that I have been a student here these thirty years, oh, would I had never seen Wertenberg, never read book! and what wonders I have done, all Germany can witness, yea, all the world: for which Faustus hath lost both Germany and the world, yea Heaven itself, Heaven, the seat of God, the throne of the blessed, the kingdom of joy; and must remain in hell for ever, hell, ah, hell, for ever! Sweet friends! what shall become of Faustus being in hell for ever? 27

*3rd Schol.* Yet, Faustus, call on God.

*Faust.* On God, whom Faustus hath abjured! on God, whom Faustus hath blasphemed! Ah, my God, I would weep, but the Devil draws in my tears. Gush forth blood instead of tears! Yea, life and soul! Oh, he stays my tongue! I would lift up my hands, but see, they hold them, they hold them!

*All.* Who, Faustus?

*Faust.* Lucifer and Mephistophiles. Ah, gentlemen, I gave them my soul for my cunning!

*All.* God forbid!

*Faust.* God forbade it indeed; but Faustus hath done it: for vain pleasure of twenty-four years hath Faustus lost eternal joy and felicity. I writ them a bill with mine own blood: the date is expired; the time will come, and he will fetch me. 43

*1st Schol.* Why did not Faustus tell us of this before, that divines might have prayed for thee?

*Faust.* Oft have I thought to have done so: but the Devil threatened to tear me in pieces if I named God; to fetch both body and soul if I once gave ear to divinity: and now 'tis too late. Gentlemen, away! lest you perish with me. 50

*2nd Schol.* Oh, what shall we do to save Faustus?

*Faust.* Talk not of me, but save yourselves, and depart.

*3rd Schol.* God will strengthen me. I will stay with Faustus.

*1st Schol.* Tempt not God, sweet friend; but let us into the next room, and there pray for him.

*Faust.* Ay, pray for me, pray for me! and what noise soever ye hear, come not unto me, for nothing can rescue me.

*2nd Schol.* Pray thou, and we will pray that God may have mercy upon thee. 61

*Faust.* Gentlemen, farewell: if I live till morning I'll visit you: if not — Faustus is gone to hell.

*All.* Faustus, farewell.

[*Exeunt* Scholars. *The clock strikes eleven.*

*Faust.* Ah, Faustus,  
Now hast thou but one bare hour to live,  
And then thou must be damned perpetually!  
Stand still, you ever-moving spheres of Heaven,  
That time may cease, and midnight never come;  
Fair Nature's eye, rise, rise again and make 70  
Perpetual day; or let this hour be but  
A year, a month, a week, a natural day,  
That Faustus may repent and save his soul!  
*O lente, lente, currite noctis equi!*"  
The stars move still, time runs, the clock will strike,  
The Devil will come, and Faustus must be damned.  
Oh, I'll leap up to my God! Who pulls me down?  
See, see where Christ's blood streams in the firmament!  
One drop would save my soul — half a drop: ah, my Christ!

Ah, rend not my heart for naming of my Christ! 80  
Yet will I call on him: Oh, spare me, Lucifer! —  
Where is it now? 'tis gone; and see where God  
Stretcheth out his arm, and bends his ireful brows!  
Mountain and hills come, come and fall on me,  
And hide me from the heavy wrath of God!<sup>a</sup>  
No! no!

Then will I headlong run into the earth;  
Earth gape! Oh, no, it will not harbour me!  
You stars that reigned at my nativity,  
Whose influence hath allotted death and hell, 90  
Now draw up Faustus like a foggy mist  
Into the entrails of yon labouring clouds,  
That when they vomit forth into the air,  
My limbs may issue from their smoky mouths,  
So that my soul may but ascend to Heaven.

*[The clock strikes the half hour.]*

Ah, half the hour is past! 'twill all be past anon!  
O God!

If thou wilt not have mercy on my soul,  
Yet for Christ's sake whose blood hath ransomed me,  
Impose some end to my incessant pain; 100  
Let Faustus live in hell a thousand years —  
A hundred thousand, and — at last — be saved!  
Oh, no end is limited to damnèd souls!  
Why wert thou not a creature wanting soul?  
Or why is this immortal that thou hast?

Ah, Pythagoras' metempsychosis!<sup>a</sup> were that true,  
This soul should fly from me, and I be changed  
Unto some brutish beast! all beasts are happy,  
For, when they die,  
Their souls are soon dissolved in elements; 110  
But mine must live, still to be plagued in hell.  
Curst be the parents that engendered me!  
No, Faustus: curse thyself: curse Lucifer  
That hath deprived thee of the joys of Heaven.

*[The clock strikes twelve.]*

Oh, it strikes, it strikes! Now, body, turn to air,  
Or Lucifer will bear thee quick to hell.

[*Thunder and lightning.*

O soul, be changed into little water-drops,  
And fall into the ocean — ne'er be found. [*Enter Devils.*  
My God! my God! look not so fierce on me!  
Adders and serpents, let me breathe awhile! 120  
Ugly hell, gape not! come not, Lucifer!  
I'll burn my books! — Ah Mephistophiles!

[*Exeunt Devils with FAUSTUS.*

*Enter CHORUS*<sup>a</sup>

*Cho.* Cut is the branch that might have grown full  
straight,  
And burnèd is Apollo's laurel bough,  
That sometime grew within this learnèd man.  
Faustus is gone; regard his hellish fall,  
Whose fiendful fortune may exhort the wise  
Only to wonder at<sup>a</sup> unlawful things,  
Whose deepness doth entice such forward wits  
To practise more than heavenly power permits. [*Exit.*

*Terminat hora diem; terminat auctor opus.*<sup>a</sup>

# THE JEW OF MALTA



## THE PROLOGUE

*Enter MACHIAVEL*

*Machiavel.* Albeit the world thinks Machiavel<sup>n</sup> is dead,  
Yet was his soul but flown beyond the Alps;  
And now the Guise<sup>n</sup> is dead, is come from France,  
To view this land, and frolic with his friends.  
To some perhaps my name is odious,  
But such as love me guard me from their tongues;  
And let them know that I am Machiavel,  
And weigh not men, and therefore not men's words.  
Admired I am of those that hate me most.  
Though some speak openly against my books, 10  
Yet they will read me, and thereby attain  
To Peter's chair: and when they cast me off,  
Are poisoned by my climbing followers.  
I count religion but a childish toy,  
And hold there is no sin but ignorance.  
Birds of the air will tell of murders past!  
I am ashamed to hear such fooleries.  
Many will talk of title to a crown:  
What right had Cæsar to the empery?  
Might first made kings, and laws were then most sure 20  
When like the Draco's they were writ in blood.  
Hence comes it that a strong-built citadel  
Commands much more than letters can import;  
Which maxim had [but] Phalaris observed,  
He had never bellowed, in a brazen bull,  
Of great ones' envy. Of the poor petty wights  
Let me be envied and not pitièd!  
But whither am I bound? I come not, I,  
To read a lecture here in Britain,  
But to present the tragedy of a Jew, 30  
Who smiles to see how full his bags are crammed,  
Which money was not got without my means.  
I crave but this — grace him as he deserves,  
And let him not be entertained the worse  
Because he favours me. [Exit.



## *DRAMATIS PERSONÆ*

**FERNEZE**, Governor of Malta.

**LODOWICK**, his Son.

**SELIM CALYMATH**, Son of the Grand Seignior.

**MARTIN DEL BOSCO**, Vice-Admiral of Spain.

**MATHIAS**, a Gentleman.

**BARABAS**, a wealthy Jew.

**ITHAMORE**, BARABAS's slave.

JACOMO,            }  
BARNARDINE,       } Friars.

**PILIA-BORSA**, a Bully.

Two Merchants.

Three Jews.

Knights, Bassoes, Officers, Guard, Messengers, Slaves  
and Carpenters.

**KATHARINE**, Mother of **MATHIAS**.

**ABIGAIL**, Daughter of **BARABAS**.

**BELLAMIRA**, a Courtesan.

Abbess.

Two Nuns.

**MACHIAVEL**, Speaker of the Prologue.

SCENE — MALTA.

# THE JEW OF MALTA

---

## ACT THE FIRST

### SCENE I

BARABAS *discovered in his counting-house, with heaps of gold before him*

*Bar.* So that of thus much that return was made:  
And of the third part of the Persian ships,  
There was the venture summed and satisfied.  
As for those Sabans,<sup>a</sup> and the men of Uz,  
That bought my Spanish oils and wines of Greece,  
Here have I purst their paltry silverlings.  
Fie; what a trouble 'tis to count this trash.  
Well fare the Arabians, who so richly pay  
The things they traffic for with wedge of gold,  
Whereof a man may easily in a day 10  
Tell that which may maintain him all his life.  
The needy groom that never fingered groat,  
Would make a miracle of thus much coin:  
But he whose steel-barred coffers are crammed full  
And all his lifetime hath been tired,  
Wearying his fingers' ends with telling it,  
Would in his age be loath to labour so,  
And for a pound to sweat himself to death.  
Give me the merchants of the Indian mines,  
That trade in metal of the purest mould; 20  
The wealthy Moor, that in the eastern rocks  
Without control can pick his riches up,  
And in his house heap pearls like pebble-stones,

Receive them free, and sell them by the weight;  
Bags of fiery opals, sapphires, amethysts,  
Jacinths, hard topaz, grass-green emeralds,  
Beauteous rubies, sparkling diamonds,  
And seld-seen costly stones of so great price,  
As one of them indifferently rated,  
And of a carat of this quantity, 30  
May serve in peril of calamity  
To ransom great kings from captivity.  
This is the ware wherein consists my wealth;  
And thus methinks should men of judgement frame  
Their means of traffic from the vulgar trade,  
And as their wealth increaseth, so enclose  
Infinite riches in a little room.  
But now how stands the wind?  
Into what corner peers my halcyon's bill?<sup>a</sup>  
Ha! to the east? yes: see, how stand the vanes? 40  
East and by south: why then I hope my ships  
I sent for Egypt and the bordering isles  
Are gotten up by Nilus' winding banks:  
Mine argosy from Alexandria,  
Loaden with spice and silks, now under sail,  
Are smoothly gliding down by Candy shore  
To Malta, through our Mediterranean sea.  
But who comes here?

*Enter a Merchant*

How now?

*Merch.* Barabas, thy ships are safe,  
Riding in Malta-road: and all the merchants 50  
With other merchandise are safe arrived,  
And have sent me to know whether yourself  
Will come and custom them.

*Bar.* The ships are safe thou say'st, and richly fraught.

*Merch.* They are.

*Bar.* Why then go bid them come ashore,

And bring with them their bills of entry:  
I hope our credit in the custom-house  
Will serve as well as I were present there.  
Go send 'em threescore camels, thirty mules, 60  
And twenty wagons to bring up the ware.  
But art thou master in a ship of mine,  
And is thy credit not enough for that?

*Merch.* The very custom barely comes to more  
Than many merchants of the town are worth,  
And therefore far exceeds my credit, sir.

*Bar.* Go tell 'em the Jew of Malta sent thee, man:  
Tush! who amongst 'em knows not Barabas?

*Merch.* I go.

*Bar.* So then, there's somewhat come. 70  
Sirrah, which of my ships art thou master of?

*Merch.* Of the Speranza, sir.

*Bar.* And saw'st thou not  
Mine argosy at Alexandria?  
Thou could'st not come from Egypt, or by Caire,  
But at the entry there into the sea,  
Where Nilus pays his tribute to the main,  
Thou needs must sail by Alexandria.

*Merch.* I neither saw them, nor inquired of them:  
But this we heard some of our seamen say, 80  
They wondered how you durst with so much wealth  
Trust such a crazèd vessel, and so far.

*Bar.* Tush, they are wise! I know her and her strength.  
But go, go thou thy ways, discharge thy ship,  
And bid my factor bring his loading in. [*Exit Merch.*]  
And yet I wonder at this argosy.

*Enter a second Merchant*

*2nd Merch.* Thine argosy from Alexandria,  
Know, Barabas, doth ride in Malta-road,  
Laden with riches, and exceeding store  
Of Persian silks, of gold, and orient pearl. 90

*Bar.* How chance you came not with those other ships  
That sailed by Egypt?

*2nd Merch.* Sir, we saw 'em not.

*Bar.* Belike they coasted round by Candy shore  
About their oils, or other businesses.  
But 'twas ill done of you to come so far  
Without the aid or conduct of their ships.

*2nd Merch.* Sir, we were wafted by a Spanish fleet,  
That never left us till within a league,  
That had the galleys of the Turk in chase. 100

*Bar.* Oh! — they were going up to Sicily —  
Well, go,  
And bid the merchants and my men dispatch  
And come ashore, and see the fraught discharged.

*2nd Merch.* I go. [Exit.]

*Bar.* Thus trowls our fortune in by land and sea,  
And thus are we on every side enriched:  
These are the blessings promised to the Jews,  
And herein was old Abram's happiness:  
What more may Heaven do for earthly man 110  
Than thus to pour out plenty in their laps,  
Ripping the bowels of the earth for them,  
Making the sea[s] their servants, and the winds  
To drive their substance with successful blasts?  
Who hateth me but for my happiness?  
Or who is honoured now but for his wealth?  
Rather had I a Jew be hated thus,  
Than pitied in a Christian poverty:  
For I can see no fruits in all their faith,  
But malice, falsehood, and excessive pride, 120  
Which methinks fits not their profession.  
Haply some hapless man hath conscience,  
And for his conscience lives in beggary.  
They say we are a scattered nation:  
I cannot tell, but we have scrambled up  
More wealth by far than those that brag of faith.  
There's Kirriah Jairim, the great Jew of Greece,

Obed in Bairseth, Nones in Portugal,  
Myself in Malta, some in Italy,  
Many in France, and wealthy every one; 730  
Ay, wealthier far than any Christian.  
I must confess we come not to be kings;  
That's not our fault: alas, our number's few,  
And crowns come either by succession,  
Or urged by force; and nothing violent,  
Oft have I heard tell, can be permanent.  
Give us a peaceful rule, make Christians kings,  
That thirst so much for principality.  
I have no charge, nor many children,  
But one sole daughter, whom I hold as dear 140  
As Agamemnon did his Iphigen:  
And all I have is hers. But who comes here?

*Enter three Jews<sup>a</sup>*

*1st Jew.* Tush, tell not me; 'twas done of policy.

*2nd Jew.* Come, therefore, let us go to Barabas,  
For he can council best in these affairs;  
And here he comes.

*Bar.* Why, how now, countrymen!  
Why flock you thus to me in multitudes?  
What accident's betided to the Jews?

*1st Jew.* A fleet of warlike galleys, Barabas,  
Are come from Turkey, and lie in our road: 150  
And they this day sit in the council-house  
To entertain them and their embassy.

*Bar.* Why, let 'em come, so they come not to war;  
Or let 'em war, so we be conquerors. —  
Nay, let 'em combat, conquer, and kill all!  
So they spare me, my daughter, and my wealth. [*Aside.*

*1st Jew.* Were it for confirmation of a league,  
They would not come in warlike manner thus.

*2nd Jew.* I fear their coming will afflict us all.

*Bar.* Fond men! what dream you of their multitudes?

What need they treat of peace that are in league? 161

The Turks and those of Malta are in league.

Tut, tut, there is some other matter in't.

1st Jew. Why, Barabas, they come for peace or war.

Bar. Haply for neither, but to pass along

Towards Venice by the Adriatic Sea;

With whom they have attempted many times,

But never could effect their stratagem.

3rd Jew. And very wisely said. It may be so.

2nd Jew. But there's a meeting in the senate-house,  
And all the Jews in Malta must be there. 171

Bar. Hum; all the Jews in Malta must be there?

Ay, like enough: why, then, let every man

Provide him, and be there for fashion-sake.

If anything shall there concern our state,

Assure yourselves I'll look — unto myself. [Aside. 181

1st Jew. I know you will. Well, brethren, let us go.

2nd Jew. Let's take our leaves. Farewell, good  
Barabas.

Bar. Farewell, Zaareth; farewell, Temainte.

[Exeunt Jews. 180

And, Barabas, now search this secret out;

Summon thy senses, call thy wits together:

These silly men mistake the matter clean.

Long to the Turk did Malta contribute;

Which tribute, all in policy I fear,

The Turks have let increase to such a sum

As all the wealth of Malta cannot pay;

And now by that advantage thinks, belike,

To seize upon the town: ay, that he seeks.

Howe'er the world go, I'll make sure for one,

And seek in time to intercept the worst, 190

Warily guarding that which I ha' got.

*Ego mihimet sum semper proximus.*<sup>n</sup>

Why, let 'em enter, let 'em take the town.

[Exit. 190

SCENE II<sup>a</sup>

*Enter FERNEZE, Governor of Malta, Knights, and Officers;  
met by CALYMATH and Bassoes of the Turk*

*Fern.* Now, Bassoes, what demand you at our hands?

*1st Bas.* Know, Knights of Malta, that we came from  
Rhodes,

From Cyprus, Candy, and those other Isles  
That lie betwixt the Mediterranean seas.

*Fern.* What's Cyprus, Candy, and those other Isles  
To us, or Malta? What at our hands demand ye?

*Caly.* The ten years' tribute that remains unpaid.

*Fern.* Alas! my lord, the sum is over-great,  
I hope your highness will consider us.

*Caly.* I wish, grave governor, 'twere in my power 10  
To favour you, but 'tis my father's cause,  
Wherein I may not, nay, I dare not dally.

*Fern.* Then give us leave, great Selim Calymath.

*[Consults apart with the Knights.]*

*Caly.* Stand all aside, and let the knights determine,  
And send to keep our galleys under sail,  
For happily we shall not tarry here;  
Now, governor, [say,] how are you resolved?

*Fern.* Thus: since your hard conditions are such  
That you will needs have ten years' tribute past,  
We may have time to make collection 20  
Amongst the inhabitants of Malta for't.

*1st Bas.* That's more than is in our commission.

*Caly.* What, Callipine! a little courtesy.  
Let's know their time, perhaps it is not long;  
And 'tis more kingly to obtain by peace  
Than to enforce conditions by constraint.  
What respite ask you, governor?

*Fern.* But a month.

*Caly.* We grant a month, but see you keep your prom-  
ise.



Now launch our galleys back again to sea,  
Where we'll attend the respite you have ta'en, 30  
And for the money send our messenger.

Farewell, great governor and brave Knights of Malta.

*Fern.* And all good fortune wait on Calymath!

[*Exeunt CALYMATH and Bassoos.*]

Go one and call those Jews of Malta hither:

Were they not summoned to appear to-day?

*Off.* They were, my lord, and here they come.

*Enter BARABAS and three Jews*

*1st Knight.* Have you determined what to say to them?

*Fern.* Yes, give me leave — and, Hebrews, now come near.

From the Emperor of Turkey is arrived  
Great Selim Calymath, his highness' son, 40  
To levy of us ten years' tribute past,  
Now then, here know that it concerneth us —

*Bar.* Then, good my lord, to keep your quiet still,  
Your lordship shall do well to let them have it.

*Fern.* Soft, Barabas, there's more 'longs to 't than so.  
To what this ten years' tribute will amount,  
That we have cast, but cannot compass it  
By reason of the wars that robbed our store;  
And therefore are we to request your aid.

*Bar.* Alas, my lord, we are no soldiers! 50  
And what's our aid against so great a prince?

*1st Knight.* Tut, Jew, we know thou art no soldier;  
Thou art a merchant and a moneyed man,  
And 'tis thy money, Barabas, we seek.

*Bar.* How, my lord! my money?

*Fern.* Thine and the rest.  
For, to be short, amongst you 't must be had.

*1st Jew.* Alas, my lord, the most of us are poor.

*Fern.* Then let the rich increase your portions.

*Bar.* Are strangers with your tribute to be taxed?

*2nd Knight.* Have strangers leave with us to get their wealth? 60

Then let them with us contribute.

*Bar.* How! equally?

*Fern.* No, Jew, like infidels.

For through our sufferance of your hateful lives,

Who stand accursèd in the sight of Heaven,

These taxes and afflictions are befallen,

And therefore thus we are determinèd.

Read there the articles of our decrees.

*Off. (reads).* "First, the tribute-money of the Turks shall all be levied amongst the Jews, and each of them to pay one half of his estate." 70

*Bar.* How, half his estate?—I hope you mean not mine. [Aside.

*Fern.* Read on.

*Off. (reading).* "Secondly, he that denies to pay shall straight become a Christian."

*Bar.* How! a Christian?—Hum,—what's here to do? [Aside.

*Off. (reading).* "Lastly, he that denies this shall absolutely lose all he has."

*The three Jews.* Oh, my lord, we will give half.

*Bar.* O earth-mettled villains, and no Hebrews born!  
And will you basely thus submit yourselves 80  
To leave your goods to their arbitrament?

*Fern.* Why, Barabas, wilt thou be christenèd?

*Bar.* No, governor, I will be no convertite.⁵

*Fern.* Then pay thy half.

*Bar.* Why, know you what you did by this device?  
Half of my substance is a city's wealth.

Governor, it was not got so easily;

Nor will I part so slightly therewithal.

*Fern.* Sir, half is the penalty of our decree,  
Either pay that, or we will seize on all. 90

*Bar. Corpo di Dio!* stay! you shall have the half;

Let me be used but as my brethren are.

*Fern.* No, Jew, thou hast denied the articles,  
And now it cannot be recalled.

[*Exeunt Officers, on a sign from FERNEZE.*]

*Bar.* Will you, then, steal my goods?  
Is theft the ground of your religion?

*Fern.* No, Jew, we take particularly thine  
To save the ruin of a multitude:

And better one want for the common good  
Than many perish for a private man:

100

Yet, Barabas, we will not banish thee,  
But here in Malta, where thou gott'st thy wealth,  
Live still; and, if thou canst, get more.

*Bar.* Christians, what or how can I multiply?  
Of naught is nothing made.

*1st Knight.* From naught at first thou cam'st to little  
wealth,

From little unto more, from more to most:

If your first curse fall heavy on thy head,  
And make thee poor and scorned of all the world,  
'Tis not our fault, but thy inherent sin.

110

*Bar.* What, bring you Scripture to confirm your  
wrongs?

Preach me not out of my possessions.

Some Jews are wicked, as all Christians are:

But say the tribe that I descended of

Were all in general cast away for sin,

Shall I be tried by their transgression?

The man that dealeth righteously shall live:

And which of you can charge me otherwise?

*Fern.* Out, wretched Barabas!

Sham'st thou not thus to justify thyself,

120

As if we knew not thy profession?

If thou rely upon thy righteousness,

Be patient and thy riches will increase.

Excess of wealth is cause of covetousness:  
And covetousness, Oh, 'tis a monstrous sin.

*Bar.* Ay, but theft is worse: tush! take not from me  
then,

For that is theft! and if you rob me thus,  
I must be forced to steal and compass more.

*1st Knight.* Grave governor, listen not to his ex-  
claims.

Convert his mansion to a nunnery; 130  
His house will harbour many holy nuns.

*Fern.* It shall be so.

*Re-enter Officers*

Now, officers, have you done?

*Off.* Ay, my lord, we have seized upon the goods  
And wares of Barabas, which being valued,  
Amount to more than all the wealth in Malta.  
And of the other we have seizèd half.

*Fern.* Then we'll take order for the residue.

*Bar.* Well then, my lord, say, are you satisfied?  
You have my goods, my money, and my wealth,  
My ships, my store, and all that I enjoyed; 140  
And, having all, you can request no more;  
Unless your unrelenting flinty hearts  
Suppress all pity in your stony breasts,  
And now shall move you to bereave my life.

*Fern.* No, Barabas; to stain our hands with blood  
Is far from us and our profession.

*Bar.* Why, I esteem the injury far less  
To take the lives of miserable men  
Than be the causers of their misery.  
You have my wealth, the labour of my life, 150  
The comfort of mine age, my children's hope,  
And therefore ne'er distinguish of the wrong.

*Fern.* Content thee, Barabas, thou hast naught but  
right.

*Bar.* Your extreme right does me exceeding wrong:  
But take it to you, i' the devil's name.

*Fern.* Come, let us in, and gather of these goods  
The money for this tribute of the Turk.

*1st Knight.* 'Tis necessary that be looked unto:  
For, if we break our day, we break the league,  
And that will prove but simple policy. 160

[*Exeunt all except BARABAS and the Jews.*]

*Bar.* Ay, policy! that's their profession,  
And not simplicity, as they suggest.  
The plagues of Egypt, and the curse of Heaven,  
Earth's barrenness, and all men's hatred  
Inflict upon them, thou great *Primus Motor!*  
And here upon my knees, striking the earth,  
I ban their souls to everlasting pains  
And extreme tortures of the fiery deep,  
That thus have dealt with me in my distress.

*1st Jew.* Oh, yet be patient, gentle Barabas. 170

*Bar.* O silly brethren, born to see this day,  
Why stand you thus unmoved with my laments?  
Why weep you not to think upon my wrongs?  
Why pine not I, and die in this distress?

*1st Jew.* Why, Barabas, as hardly can we brook  
The cruel handling of ourselves in this;  
Thou seest they have taken half our goods.

*Bar.* Why did you yield to their extortion?  
You were a multitude, and I but one:  
And of me only have they taken all. 180

*1st Jew.* Yet, brother Barabas, remember Job.

*Bar.* What tell you me of Job? I wot his wealth  
Was written thus: he had seven thousand sheep,  
Three thousand camels, and two hundred yoke  
Of labouring oxen, and five hundred  
She-asses: but for every one of those,  
Had they been valued at indifferent rate,  
I had at home, and in mine argosy,  
And other ships that came from Egypt last,

As much as would have bought his beasts and him,  
And yet have kept enough to live upon: 191

So that not he, but I, may curse the day,  
Thy fatal birthday, forlorn Barabas;  
And henceforth wish for an eternal night,  
That clouds of darkness may enclose my flesh,  
And hide these extreme sorrows from mine eyes:  
For only I have toiled to inherit here  
The months of vanity and loss of time,  
And painful nights, have been appointed me.

*2nd Jew.* Good Barabas, be patient. 200

*Bar.* Ay, I pray, leave me in my patience. You, that  
Were ne'er possessed of wealth, are pleased with  
want;

But give him liberty at least to mourn,  
That in a field amidst his enemies  
Doth see his soldiers slain, himself disarmed,  
And knows no means of his recovery:  
Ay, let me sorrow for this sudden chance;  
'Tis in the trouble of my spirit I speak;  
Great injuries are not so soon forgot.

*1st Jew.* Come, let us leave him; in his ireful mood  
Our words will but increase his ecstasy. 211

*2nd Jew.* On, then; but, trust me, 'tis a misery  
To see a man in such affliction. —

Farewell, Barabas! [*Exeunt the three Jews.*"]

*Bar.* Ay, fare you well.  
See the simplicity of these base slaves,  
Who, for the villains have no wit themselves,  
Think me to be a senseless lump of clay  
That will with every water wash to dirt:  
No, Barabas is born to better chance,  
And framed of finer mould than common men, 220  
That measure naught but by the present time.  
A reaching thought will search his deepest wits,  
And cast with cunning for the time to come:  
For evils are apt to happen every day.

*Enter ABIGAIL*

But whither wends my beauteous Abigail?  
Oh! what has made my lovely daughter sad?  
What, woman! moan not for a little loss:  
Thy father hath enough in store for thee.

*Abig.* Not for myself, but agèd Barabas:  
Father, for thee lamenteth Abigail: 230  
But I will learn to leave these fruitless tears,  
And, urged thereto with my afflictions,  
With fierce exclaims run to the senate-house,  
And in the senate reprehend them all,  
And rend their hearts with tearing of my hair,  
Till they reduce the wrongs done to my father.

*Bar.* No, Abigail, things past recovery  
Are hardly cured with exclamations.  
Be silent, daughter, sufferance breeds ease,  
And time may yield us an occasion 240  
Which on the sudden cannot serve the turn.  
Besides, my girl, think me not all so fond  
As negligently to forego so much  
Without provision for thyself and me,  
Ten thousand portagues, besides great pearls,  
Rich costly jewels, and stones infinite,  
Fearing the worst of this before it fell,  
I closely hid.

*Abig.* Where, father?

*Bar.* In my house, my girl.

*Abig.* Then shall they ne'er be seen of Barabas: 250  
For they have seized upon thy house and wares.

*Bar.* But they will give me leave once more, I trow,  
To go into my house.

*Abig.* That may they not:  
For there I left the governor placing nuns,  
Displacing me; and of thy house they mean  
To make a nunnery, where none but their own sect  
Must enter in; men generally barred.

*Bar.* My gold! my gold! and all my wealth is gone!  
You partial heavens, have I deserved this plague?

What, will you thus oppose me, luckless stars, 260

To make me desperate in my poverty?

And knowing me impatient in distress,

Think me so mad as I will hang myself,

That I may vanish o'er the earth in air,

And leave no memory that e'er I was?

No, I will live; nor loathe I this my life:

And, since you leave me in the ocean thus

To sink or swim, and put me to my shifts,

I'll rouse my senses and awake myself.

Daughter! I have it: thou perceiv'st the plight 270

Wherein these Christians have oppressèd me:

Be ruled by me, for in extremity

We ought to make bar of no policy.

*Abig.* Father, whate'er it be to injure them

That have so manifestly wrongèd us,

What will not Abigail attempt?

*Bar.*

Why, so;

Then thus, thou told'st me they have turned my house

Into a nunnery, and some nuns are there?

*Abig.* I did.

*Bar.*

Then, Abigail, there must my girl

Entreat the abbess to be entertained. 280

*Abig.* How, as a nun?

*Bar.*

Ay, daughter, for religion

Hides many mischiefs from suspicion.

*Abig.* Ay, but, father, they will suspect me there.

*Bar.* Let 'em suspect; but be thou so precise

As they may think it done of holiness.

Entreat 'em fair, and give them friendly speech,

And seem to them as if thy sins were great,

Till thou hast gotten to be entertained.

*Abig.* Thus, father, shall I much dissemble.

*Bar.*

Tush!

As good dissemble that thou never mean'st, 290



As first mean truth and then dissemble it —  
A counterfeit profession is better  
Than unseen hypocrisy. <sup>a</sup>

*Abig.* Well, father, say [that] I be entertained,  
What then shall follow?

*Bar.* This shall follow then;  
There have I hid, close underneath the plank  
That runs along the upper-chamber floor,  
The gold and jewels which I kept for thee.  
But here they come; be cunning, Abigail.

*Abig.* Then, father, go with me.

*Bar.* No, Abigail, in this  
It is not necessary I be seen: 301  
For I will seem offended with thee for't:  
Be close, my girl, for this must fetch my gold.  
[*They retire.*]

*Enter* Friar JACOMO, Friar BARNARDINE, Abbess,  
and a Nun

*F. Jac.* Sisters, we now are almost at the new-made  
nunnery.

*Abb.* The better; for we love not to be seen:  
'Tis thirty winters long since some of us  
Did stray so far amongst the multitude.

*F. Jac.* But, madam, this house  
And waters<sup>n</sup> of this new-made nunnery  
Will much delight you. 310

*Abb.* It may be so; but who comes here?

[*ABIGAIL comes forward.*]

*Abig.* Grave abbess, and you, happy virgins' guide,  
Pity the state of a distressed maid.

*Abb.* What art thou, daughter?

*Abig.* The hopeless daughter of a hapless Jew,  
The Jew of Malta, wretched Barabas;  
Sometime the owner of a goodly house,  
Which they have now turned to a nunnery.

*Abb.* Well, daughter, say, what is thy suit with us?

*Abig.* Fearing the afflictions which my father feels  
Proceed from sin, or want of faith in us, 321  
I'd pass away my life in penitence,  
And be a novice in your nunnery,  
To make atonement for my labouring soul.

*F. Jac.* No doubt, brother, but this proceedeth of the spirit.

*F. Barn.* Ay, and of a moving spirit too, brother; but come,

Let us entreat she may be entertained.

*Abb.* Well, daughter, we admit you for a nun.

*Abig.* First let me as a novice learn to frame  
My solitary life to your strait laws, 330  
And let me lodge where I was wont to lie,  
I do not doubt, by your divine precepts  
And mine own industry, but to profit much.

*Bar.* As much, I hope, as all I hid is worth. [*Aside.*

*Abb.* Come, daughter, follow us.

*Bar.* (*coming forward*). Why, how now, Abigail,  
What makest thou amongst these hateful Christians?

*F. Jac.* Hinder her not, thou man of little faith,  
For she has mortified herself.

*Bar.* How! mortified?

*F. Jac.* And is admitted to the sisterhood.

*Bar.* Child of perdition, and thy father's shame!  
What wilt thou do among these hateful fiends? 341  
I charge thee on my blessing that thou leave  
These devils, and their damnèd heresy.

*Abig.* Father, forgive me — [*She goes to him.*

*Bar.* Nay, back, Abigail,  
(And think upon the jewels and the gold;  
The board is markèd thus that covers it.)

[*Aside to ABIGAIL in a whisper.*  
Away, accursèd, from thy father's sight.

*F. Jac.* Barabas, although thou art in misbelief,

And wilt not see thine own afflictions,  
Yet let thy daughter be no longer blind. 350

*Bar.* Blind friar, I reckon not thy persuasions,  
(The board is marked thus<sup>n</sup> that covers it.)

*[Aside to ABIGAIL in a whisper.]*

For I had rather die than see her thus.  
Wilt thou forsake me too in my distress,  
Seducèd daughter? (Go, forget not.) *[Aside in a whisper.]*  
Becomes it Jews to be so credulous?  
(To-morrow early I'll be at the door.) *[Aside in a whisper.]*  
No, come not at me; if thou wilt be damned,  
Forget me, see me not, and so be gone.  
(Farewell, remember to-morrow morning.) 360

*[Aside in a whisper.]*

Out, out, thou wretch!

*[Exeunt, on one side BARABAS, on the other side  
Friars, Abbess, Nun, and ABIGAIL; as they  
are going out,*

*Enter MATHIAS*

*Math.* Who's this? fair Abigail, the rich Jew's daughter,  
Become a nun! her father's sudden fall  
Has humbled her and brought her down to this:  
Tut, she were fitter for a tale of love,  
Than to be tired out with orisons:  
And better would she far become a bed,  
Embracèd in a friendly lover's arms,  
Than rise at midnight to a solemn mass.

*Enter LODOWICK*

*Lod.* Why, how now, Don Mathias! in a dump? 370

*Math.* Believe me, noble Lodowick, I have seen  
The strangest sight, in my opinion,  
That ever I beheld.

*Lod.* What was't, I prithee?

*Math.* A fair young maid, scarce fourteen years of age,  
The sweetest flower in Cytherea's field,  
Cropt from the pleasures of the fruitful earth,  
And strangely metamorphosèd to a nun.

*Lod.* But say, what was she?

*Math.* Why, the rich Jew's daughter.

*Lod.* What, Barabas, whose goods were lately seized?  
Is she so fair?

*Math.* And matchless beautiful; 380  
As, had you seen her, 'twould have moved your heart,  
Though countermined with walls of brass, to love,  
Or at the least to pity.

*Lod.* And if she be so fair as you report,  
'Twere time well spent to go and visit her:  
How say you, shall we?

*Math.* I must and will, sir; there's no remedy.

*Lod.* And so will I too, or it shall go hard.  
Farewell, Mathias.

*Math.* Farewell, Lodowick. [*Exeunt severally.*]

## ACT THE SECOND

### SCENE I

*Enter BARABAS with a light<sup>a</sup>*

*Bar.* Thus, like the sad presaging raven, that tolls  
The sick man's passport in her hollow beak,  
And in the shadow of the silent night  
Doth shake contagion from her sable wings;  
Vexed and tormented runs poor Barabas  
With fatal curses towards these Christians.  
The uncertain pleasures of swift-footed time  
Have ta'en their flight, and left me in despair;  
And of my former riches rests no more  
But bare remembrance, like a soldier's scar, 10  
That has no further comfort for his maim.  
O thou, that with a fiery pillar led'st  
The sons of Israel through the dismal shades,  
Light Abraham's offspring; and direct the hand  
Of Abigail this night; or let the day  
Turn to eternal darkness after this!  
No sleep can fasten on my watchful eyes,  
Nor quiet enter my distempered thoughts,  
Till I have answer of my Abigail.

*Enter ABIGAIL above*

*Abig.* Now have I happily espied a time 20  
To search the plank my father did appoint;  
And here behold, unseen, where I have found  
The gold, the pearls, and jewels, which he hid.

*Bar.* Now I remember those old women's words,

Who in my wealth<sup>a</sup> would tell me winter's tales,  
And speak of spirits and ghosts that glide by night  
About the place where treasure hath been hid:  
And now methinks that<sup>e</sup> I am one of those:  
For, whilst I live, here lives my soul's sole hope,  
And, when I die, here shall my spirit walk. 30

*Abig.* Now that my father's fortune were so good  
As but to be about this happy place;  
'Tis not so happy: yet, when we parted last,  
He said he would attend me in the morn.  
Then, gentle sleep, where'er his body rests,  
Give charge to Morpheus that he may dream  
A golden dream, and of the sudden wake,  
Come and receive the treasure I have found.

*Bar.* *Bueno para todos mi ganado no era:*<sup>a</sup>  
As good go on as sit-so sadly thus. 40  
But stay, what star shines yonder in the east?  
The loadstar of my life, if Abigail.  
Who's there?

*Abig.* Who's that?

*Bar.* Peace, Abigail, 'tis I.

*Abig.* Then, father, here receive thy happiness.

*Bar.* Hast thou't?

*Abig.* Here, [*Throws down the bags*] hast thou't?  
There's more, and more, and more.

*Bar.* O my girl,

My gold, my fortune, my felicity!

Strength to my soul, death to mine enemy!

Welcome the first beginner of my bliss!

O Abigail, Abigail, that I had thee here too! 50

Then my desires were fully satisfied:

But I will practise thy enlargement thence:

O girl! O gold! O beauty! O my bliss!

[*Hugs the bags.*]

*Abig.* Father, it draweth towards midnight now,  
And 'bout this time the nuns begin to wake;  
To shun suspicion, therefore, let us part.

*Bar. Corpo di Dio!* stay! you shall have the half;

Let me be used but as my brethren are.

*Fern.* No, Jew, thou hast denied the articles,  
And now it cannot be recalled.

[*Exeunt Officers, on a sign from FERNEZE.*]

*Bar.* Will you, then, steal my goods?  
Is theft the ground of your religion?

*Fern.* No, Jew, we take particularly thine  
To save the ruin of a multitude:

And better one want for the common good  
Than many perish for a private man:

100

Yet, Barabas, we will not banish thee,  
But here in Malta, where thou gott'st thy wealth,  
Live still; and, if thou canst, get more.

*Bar.* Christians, what or how can I multiply?  
Of naught is nothing made.

*1st Knight.* From naught at first thou cam'st to little  
wealth,

From little unto more, from more to most:

If your first curse fall heavy on thy head,  
And make thee poor and scorned of all the world,  
'Tis not our fault, but thy inherent sin.

110

*Bar.* What, bring you Scripture to confirm your  
wrongs?

Preach me not out of my possessions.

Some Jews are wicked, as all Christians are:

But say the tribe that I descended of

Were all in general cast away for sin,

Shall I be tried by their transgression?

The man that dealeth righteously shall live:

And which of you can charge me otherwise?

*Fern.* Out, wretched Barabas!

Sham'st thou not thus to justify thyself,

120

As if we knew not thy profession?

If thou rely upon thy righteousness,

Be patient and thy riches will increase.

Excess of wealth is cause of covetousness:  
And covetousness, Oh, 'tis a monstrous sin.

*Bar.* Ay, but theft is worse: tush! take not from me  
then,

For that is theft! and if you rob me thus,  
I must be forced to steal and compass more.

*1st Knight.* Grave governor, listen not to his ex-  
claims.

Convert his mansion to a nunnery; 130  
His house will harbour many holy nuns.

*Fern.* It shall be so.

*Re-enter Officers*

Now, officers, have you done?

*Off.* Ay, my lord, we have seized upon the goods  
And wares of Barabas, which being valued,  
Amount to more than all the wealth in Malta.  
And of the other we have seizèd half.

*Fern.* Then we'll take order for the residue.

*Bar.* Well then, my lord, say, are you satisfied?  
You have my goods, my money, and my wealth,  
My ships, my store, and all that I enjoyed; 140  
And, having all, you can request no more;  
Unless your unrelenting flinty hearts  
Suppress all pity in your stony breasts,  
And now shall move you to bereave my life.

*Fern.* No, Barabas; to stain our hands with blood  
Is far from us and our profession.

*Bar.* Why, I esteem the injury far less  
To take the lives of miserable men  
Than be the causers of their misery.  
You have my wealth, the labour of my life, 150  
The comfort of mine age, my children's hope,  
And therefore ne'er distinguish of the wrong.

*Fern.* Content thee, Barabas, thou hast naught but  
right.



*Bar.* Farewell, my joy, and by my fingers take  
A kiss from him that sends it from his soul.

[*Exit ABIGAIL above.*

Now Phœbus ope the eyelids of the day,  
And for the raven wake the morning lark,  
That I may hover with her in the air;  
Singing o'er these, as she does o'er her young.  
*Hermoso placer de los dineros.*"

60

[*Exit.*

## SCENE II

*Enter FERNEZE, MARTIN DEL BOSCO, and Knights*

*Fern.* Now, captain, tell us whither thou art bound?  
Whence is thy ship that anchors in our road?  
And why thou cam'st ashore without our leave?

*Bosc.* Governor of Malta, hither am I bound;  
My ship, the Flying Dragon, is of Spain,  
And so am I: Del Bosco is my name;  
Vice-admiral unto the Catholic King.

*1st Knight.* 'Tis true, my lord, therefore entreat him  
well.

*Bosc.* Our fraught is Grecians, Turks, and Afric Moors.  
For late upon the coast of Corsica,  
Because we vailed not to the Turkish fleet,  
Their creeping galleys had us in the chase:  
But suddenly the wind began to rise,  
And then we luffed and tacked, and fought at ease:  
Some have we fired, and many have we sunk;  
But one amongst the rest became our prize:  
The captain's slain, the rest remain our slaves,  
Of whom we would make sale in Malta here.

10

*Fern.* Martin del Bosco, I have heard of thee;  
Welcome to Malta, and to all of us;  
But to admit a sale of these thy Turks  
We may not, nay, we dare not give consent  
By reason of a tributary league.

20

*1st Knight.* Del Bosco, as thou lov'st and honour'st us,  
Persuade our governor against the Turk;  
This truce we have is but in hope of gold,  
And with that sum he craves might we wage war.

*Bosc.* Will Knights of Malta be in league with Turks,  
And buy it basely too for sums of gold?  
My lord, remember that, to Europe's shame, 30  
The Christian Isle of Rhodes, from whence you came,  
Was lately lost,<sup>n</sup> and you were stated here  
To be at deadly enmity with Turks.

*Fern.* Captain, we know it, but our force is small.

*Bosc.* What is the sum that Calymath requires?

*Fern.* A hundred thousand crowns.

*Bosc.* My lord and king hath title to this isle,  
And he means quickly to expel you hence;  
Therefore be ruled by me, and keep the gold:  
I'll write unto his majesty for aid, 40  
And not depart until I see you free.

*Fern.* On this condition shall thy Turks be sold:  
Go, officers, and set them straight in show.

[*Exeunt Officers.*

Bosco, thou shalt be Malta's general;  
We and our warlike Knights will follow thee  
Against these barb'rous misbelieving Turks.

*Bosc.* So shall you imitate those you succeed:  
For when their hideous force environed Rhodes,  
Small though the number was that kept the town,  
They fought it out, and not a man survived 50  
To bring the hapless news to Christendom.

*Fern.* So will we fight it out; come, let's away:  
Proud daring Calymath, instead of gold,  
We'll send thee bullets wrapt in smoke and fire:  
Claim tribute where thou wilt, we are resolved,  
Honour is bought with blood and not with gold.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III<sup>a</sup>

*Enter Officers with ITHAMOR and other Slaves*

*1st Off.* This is the market-place, here let 'em stand:  
Fear not their sale, for they'll be quickly bought.

*2nd Off.* Every one's price is written on his back,  
And so much must they yield or not be sold.

*1st Off.* Here comes the Jew; had not his goods been  
seized,  
He'd given us present money for them all.

*Enter BARABAS*

*Bar.* In spite of these swine-eating Christians —  
Unchosen nation, never circumcised,  
Such as (poor villains!) were ne'er thought upon  
Till Titus and Vespasian conquered us —

10

Am I become as wealthy as I was:  
They hoped my daughter would ha' been a nun;  
But she's at home, and I have bought a house  
As great and fair as is the governor's;  
And there, in spite of Malta, will I dwell,  
Having Ferneze's hand, whose heart I'll have;  
Ay, and his son's too, or it shall go hard.

I am not of the tribe of Levi, I,  
That can so soon forget an injury.

We Jews can fawn like spaniels when we please:  
And when we grin we bite, yet are our looks  
As innocent and harmless as a lamb's.

20

I learned in Florence how to kiss my hand,  
Heave up my shoulders when they call me dog,<sup>n</sup>  
And duck as low as any barefoot friar;  
Hoping to see them starve upon a stall,  
Or else be gathered for in our synagogue,  
That, when the offering-basin comes to me,

Even for charity I may spit into 't.  
Here comes Don Lodowick, the governor's son, 30  
One that I love for his good father's sake.

*Enter LODOWICK*

*Lod.* I hear the wealthy Jew walkèd this way:  
I'll seek him out, and so insinuate,  
That I may have a sight of Abigail;  
For Don Mathias tells me she is fair.

*Bar.* Now will I show myself  
To have more of the serpent than the dove;  
That is — more knave than fool. [*Aside.*

*Lod.* Yond' walks the Jew; now for fair Abigail.

*Bar.* Ay, ay, no doubt but she's at your command. 40  
[*Aside.*

*Lod.* Barabas, thou know'st I am the governor's son.

*Bar.* I would you were his father, too, sir;  
That's all the harm I wish you. — The slave looks  
Like a hog's cheek new singed. [*Aside.*

*Lod.* Whither walk'st thou, Barabas?

*Bar.* No farther: 'tis a custom held with us,  
That when we speak with Gentiles like to you,  
We turn into the air to purge ourselves:  
For unto us the promise doth belong.

*Lod.* Well, Barabas, can'st help me to a diamond?

*Bar.* Oh, sir, your father had my diamonds. 51  
Yet I have one left that will serve your turn —  
I mean my daughter: but ere he shall have her  
I'll sacrifice her on a pile of wood.  
I ha' the poison of the city for him,  
And the white leprosy. [*Aside.*

*Lod.* What sparkle does it give without a foil?

*Bar.* The diamond that I talk of ne'er was foiled —  
But when he touches it, it will be foiled — [*Aside.*  
Lord Lodowick, it sparkles bright and fair. 60

*Lod.* Is it square or pointed, pray let me know.

*Bar.* Pointed it is, good sir — but not for you. [*Aside.*

*Lod.* I like it much the better.

*Bar.*

So do I too.

*Lod.* How shows it by night?

*Bar.* Outshines Cynthia's rays —

You'll like it better far o' nights than days. [*Aside*

*Lod.* And what's the price?

*Bar.* Your life an if you have it. [*Aside.*] O my lord,

We will not jar about the price; come to my house  
And I will give't your honour — with a vengeance. [*Aside.*

*Lod.* No, Barabas, I will deserve it first. 70

*Bar.* Good sir,

Your father has deserved it at my hands,  
Who, of mere charity and Christian truth,  
To bring me to religious purity,  
And as it were in catechizing sort,  
To make me mindful of my mortal sins,  
Against my will, and whether I would or no,  
Seized all I had, and thrust me out o' doors,  
And made my house a place for nuns most chaste.

*Lod.* No doubt your soul shall reap the fruit of it. 80

*Bar.* Ay, but, my lord, the harvest is far off.

And yet I know the prayers of those nuns  
And holy friars, having money for their pains,  
Are wondrous — and indeed do no man good: [*Aside.*  
And seeing they are not idle, but still doing,  
'Tis likely they in time may reap some fruit,  
I mean in fullness of perfection.

*Lod.* Good Barabas, glance not at our holy nuns.

*Bar.* No, but I do it through a burning zeal —

Hoping ere long to set the house afire; 90  
For though they do a while increase and multiply,  
I'll have a saying to that nunnery. — [*Aside.*

As for the diamond, sir, I told you of,  
Come home, and there's no price shall make us part,  
Even for your honourable father's sake. —

It shall go hard but I will see your death. — [Aside.  
But now I must be gone to buy a slave.

*Lod.* And, Barabas, I'll bear thee company.

*Bar.* Come, then — here's the market-place.

What's the price of this slave? Two hundred crowns!  
Do the Turks weigh so much?

*1st Off.* Sir, that's his price. 101

*Bar.* What, can he steal that you demand so much?  
Belike he has some new trick for a purse;  
And if he has, he is worth three hundred plates,  
So that, being bought, the town-seal might be got  
To keep him for his lifetime from the gallows:  
The sessions day is critical to thieves,  
And few or none 'scape but by being purged.

*Lod.* Rat'st thou this Moor but at two hundred plates?

*1st Off.* No more, my lord. 110

*Bar.* Why should this Turk be dearer than that Moor?

*1st Off.* Because he is young and has more qualities.

*Bar.* What, hast the philosopher's stone? an thou  
hast, break my head with it, I'll forgive thee.

*Slave.* No, sir; I can cut and shave.

*Bar.* Let me see, sirrah, are you not an old shaver?

*Slave.* Alas, sir! I am a very youth.

*Bar.* A youth? I'll buy you, and marry you to Lady  
Vanity, if you do well.

*Slave.* I will serve you, sir. 120

*Bar.* Some wicked trick or other. It may be, under  
colour of shaving, thou'lt cut my throat for my goods.  
Tell me, hast thou thy health well?

*Slave.* Ay, passing well.

*Bar.* So much the worse; I must have one that's  
sickly, an't be but for sparing victuals: 'tis not a stone of  
beef a day will maintain you in these chops; let me see  
one that's somewhat leaner.

*1st Off.* Here's a leaner, how like you him?

*Bar.* Where wast thou born? 130

*Itha.* In Thrace; brought up in Arabia.

*Bar.* So much the better, thou art for my turn.  
An hundred crowns? I'll have him; there's the coin.

[*Gives money.*]

*1st Off.* Then mark him, sir, and take him hence.

*Bar.* Ay, mark him, you were best, for this is he  
That by my help shall do much villainy. [Aside.

My lord, farewell: Come, sirrah, you are mine.

As for the diamond, it shall be yours;

I pray, sir, be no stranger at my house,

All that I have shall be at your command.

140

*Enter MATHIAS and his Mother KATHERINE*

*Math.* What makes the Jew and Lodowick so private?  
I fear me 'tis about fair Abigail. [Aside.

*Bar.* Yonder comes Don Mathias, let us stay;

[Exit LODOWICK.

He loves my daughter, and she holds him dear:

But I have sworn to frustrate both their hopes,

And be revenged upon the governor.

*Kath.* This Moor is comeliest, is he not? speak, son.

*Math.* No, this is the better, mother; view this well.

*Bar.* Seem not to know me here before your mother,  
Lest she mistrust the match that is in hand: 150

When you have brought her home, come to my house;

Think of me as thy father; son, farewell.

*Math.* But wherefore talked Don Lodowick with you?

*Bar.* Tush! man, we talked of diamonds, not of Abi-  
gail.

*Kath.* Tell me, Mathias, is not that the Jew?

*Bar.* As for the comment on the Maccabees,  
I have it, sir, and 'tis at your command.

*Math.* Yes, madam, and my talk with him was [but]  
About the borrowing of a book or two.

*Kath.* Converse not with him, he's cast off from  
Heaven. 160

Thou hast thy crowns, fellow; come, let's away.

*Math.* Sirrah, Jew, remember the book.

*Bar.* Marry will I, sir.

[*Exeunt* MATHIAS and his Mother.

*Off.* Come, I have made reasonable market; let's away.

[*Exeunt* Officers with Slaves.

*Bar.* Now let me know thy name, and therewithal Thy birth, condition, and profession.

*Itha.* Faith, sir, my birth is but mean: my name's Ithamore, my profession what you please.

*Bar.* Hast thou no trade? then listen to my words,  
And I will teach thee that shall stick by thee: 170  
First be thou void of these affections,  
Compassion, love, vain hope, and heartless fear,  
Be moved at nothing, see thou pity none,  
But to thyself smile when the Christians moan.

*Itha.* Oh, brave! master, I worship your nose<sup>n</sup> for this.

*Bar.* As for myself, I walk abroad o' nights  
And kill sick people groaning under walls:  
Sometimes I go about and poison wells;  
And now and then, to cherish Christian thieves,  
I am content to lose some of my crowns, 180  
That I may, walking in my gallery,  
See 'em go pinioned along by my door.  
Being young, I studied physic, and began  
To practise first upon the Italian;  
There I enriched the priests with burials,  
And always kept the sextons' arms in ure  
With digging graves and ringing dead men's knells:  
And after that was I an engineer,  
And in the wars 'twixt France and Germany,  
Under pretence of helping Charles the Fifth, 190  
Slew friend and enemy with my stratagems.  
Then after that was I an usurer,  
And with extorting, cozening, forfeiting,  
And tricks belonging unto brokery,  
I filled the jails with bankrupts in a year,  
And with young orphans planted hospitals,



And every moon made some or other mad,  
And now and then one hang himself for grief,  
Pinning upon his breast a long great scroll  
How I with interest tormented him.

200

But mark how I am blest for plaguing them;  
I have as much coin as will buy the town.  
But tell me now, how hast thou spent thy time?

*Itha.* 'Faith, master,  
In setting Christian villages on fire,  
Chaining of eunuchs, binding galley-slaves.  
One time I was an hostler in an inn,  
And in the night-time secretly would I steal  
To travellers' chambers, and there cut their throats:  
Once at Jerusalem, where the pilgrims kneeled,  
I strewèd powder on the marble stones,  
And therewithal their knees would rankle so,  
That I have laughed a-good to see the cripples  
Go limping home to Christendom on stilts.

210

*Bar.* Why, this is something: make account of me  
As of thy fellow; we are villains both:  
Both circumcisèd, we hate Christians both:  
Be true and secret, thou shalt want no gold,  
But stand aside, here comes Don Lodowick.

*Enter LODOWICK<sup>a</sup>*

*Lod.* O Barabas, well met;  
Where is the diamond you told me of?

220

*Bar.* I have it for you, sir; please you walk in with  
me:  
What ho, Abigail! open the door, I say.

*Enter ABIGAIL with letters*

*Abig.* In good time, father; here are letters come  
From Ormus, and the post stays here within.

*Bar.* Give me the letters. — Daughter, do you hear,

Entertain Lodowick the governor's son  
With all the courtesy you can afford;  
Provided that you keep your maidenhead.

Use him as if he were a Philistine, 230  
Dissemble, swear, protest, vow love to him,  
He is not of the seed of Abraham. — [Aside.  
I am a little busy, sir, pray pardon me.  
Abigail, bid him welcome for my sake.

*Abig.* For your sake and his own he's welcome hither.

*Bar.* Daughter, a word more; kiss him; speak him fair,  
And like a cunning Jew so cast about,  
That ye be both made sure ere you come out. [Aside.

*Abig.* O father! Don Mathias is my love.

*Bar.* I know it: yet I say, make love to him; 240  
Do, it is requisite it should be so — [Aside.  
Nay, on my life, it is my factor's hand —  
But go you in, I'll think upon the account.

*[Exeunt ABIGAIL and LODOWICK into the house.*

The account is made, for Lodowick [he] dies.

My factor sends me word a merchant's fled

That owes me for a hundred tun of wine:

I weigh it thus much *[Snapping his fingers]*; I have  
wealth enough.

For now by this has he kissed Abigail;

And she vows love to him, and he to her.

As sure as Heaven rained manna for the Jews, 250

So sure shall he and Don Mathias die:

His father was my chiefest enemy.

*Enter MATHIAS*

Whither goes Don Mathias? stay awhile.

*Math.* Whither, but to my fair love Abigail?

*Bar.* Thou know'st, and Heaven can witness this is  
true,

That I intend my daughter shall be thine.

*Math.* Ay, Barabas, or else thou wrong'st me much.

*Bar.* Oh, Heaven forbid I should have such a thought.  
Pardon me though I weep: the governor's son  
Will, whether I will or no, have Abigail: 260  
He sends her letters, bracelets, jewels, rings.

*Math.* Does she receive them?

*Bar.* She? No, Mathias, no, but sends them back,  
And when he comes, she locks herself up fast;  
Yet through the keyhole will he talk to her,  
While she runs to the window looking out,  
When you should come and hale him from the door.

*Math.* O treacherous Lodowick!

*Bar.* Even now as I came home, he slipt me in,  
And I am sure he is with Abigail. 270

*Math.* I'll rouse him thence.

*Bar.* Not for all Malta, therefore sheathe your sword;  
If you love me, no quarrels in my house;  
But steal you in, and seem to see him not;  
I'll give him such a warning ere he goes  
\* As he shall have small hopes of Abigail.  
Away, for here they come.

*Re-enter LODOWICK and ABIGAIL*

*Math.* What, hand in hand! I cannot suffer this.

*Bar.* Mathias, as thou lovest me, not a word.

*Math.* Well, let it pass, another time shall serve. 280

*[Exit into the house.]*

*Lod.* Barabas, is not that the widow's son?

*Bar.* Ay, and take heed, for he hath sworn your death.

*Lod.* My death? what, is the base-born peasant mad?

*Bar.* No, no, but happily he stands in fear  
Of that which you, I think, ne'er dream upon,  
My daughter here, a paltry silly girl.

*Lod.* Why, loves she Don Mathias?

*Bar.* Doth she not with her smiling answer you?

*Abig.* He has my heart; I smile against my will.

*[Aside.]*

*Lod.* Barabas, thou know'st I've loved thy daughter long. 290

*Bar.* And so has she done you, even from a child.

*Lod.* And now I can no longer hold my mind.

*Bar.* Nor I the affection that I bear to you.

*Lod.* This is thy diamond, tell me shall I have it?

*Bar.* Win it, and wear it, it is yet unsoiled.

Oh! but I know your lordship would disdain

To marry with the daughter of a Jew;

And yet I'll give her many a golden cross

With Christian posies round about the ring.

*Lod.* 'Tis not thy wealth, but her that I esteem. 300

Yet crave I thy consent.

*Bar.* And mine you have, yet let me talk to her. —

This offspring of Cain, this Jebusite,<sup>a</sup>

That never tasted of the Passover,

Nor e'er shall see the land of Canaan,

Nor our Messiah that is yet to come;

This gentle maggot, Lodowick, I mean,

Must be deluded: let him have thy hand,

But keep thy heart till Don Mathias comes. [*Aside.*

*Abig.* What, shall I be betrothed to Lodowick? 310

*Bar.* It's no sin to deceive a Christian;

For they themselves hold it a principle,

Faith is not to be held with heretics;

But all are heretics that are not Jews;

This follows well, and therefore, daughter, fear not.

[*Aside.*

I have entreated her, and she will grant.

*Lod.* Then, gentle Abigail, plight thy faith to me.

*Abig.* I cannot choose, seeing my father bids. —

Nothing but death shall part my love and me. [*Aside.*

*Lod.* Now have I that for which my soul hath longed.

*Bar.* So have not I, but yet I hope I shall. [*Aside.* 321

*Abig.* O wretched Abigail, what hast thou done?

[*Aside.*

*Lod.* Why on the sudden is your colour changed?

*Abig.* I know not, but farewell, I must be gone.

*Bar.* Stay her, but let her not speak one word more.

*Lod.* Mute o' the sudden! here's a sudden change.

*Bar.* Oh, muse not at it, 'tis the Hebrews' guise,  
That maidens new betrothed should weep awhile:  
Trouble her not; sweet Lodowick, depart:  
She is thy wife, and thou shalt be mine heir.

330

*Lod.* Oh, is't the custom? then I am resolved:  
But rather let the brightsome heavens be dim,  
And nature's beauty choke with stifling clouds,  
Than my fair Abigail should frown on me. —  
There comes the villain, now I'll be revenged.

*Re-enter MATHIAS*

*Bar.* Be quiet, Lodowick, it is enough  
That I have made thee sure to Abigail.

*Lod.* Well, let him go.

[Exit.

*Bar.* Well, but for me, as you went in at doors  
You had been stabbed, but not a word on't now;  
Here must no speeches pass, nor swords be drawn.

340

*Math.* Suffer me, Barabas, but to follow him.

*Bar.* No; so shall I, if any hurt be done,  
Be made an accessory of your deeds;  
Revenge it on him when you meet him next.

*Math.* For this I'll have his heart.

*Bar.* Do so; lo here I give thee Abigail.

*Math.* What greater gift can poor Mathias have?  
Shall Lodowick rob me of so fair a love?  
My life is not so dear as Abigail.

350

*Bar.* My heart misgives me, that, to cross your  
love,  
He's with your mother; therefore after him.

*Math.* What, is he gone unto my mother?

*Bar.* Nay, if you will, stay till she comes herself.

*Math.* I cannot stay; for if my mother come,  
She'll die with grief.

[Exit.

*Abig.* I cannot take my leave of him for tears:  
Father, why have you thus incensed them both?

*Bar.* What's that to thee?

*Abig.* I'll make 'em friends again. 360

*Bar.* You'll make 'em friends!

Are there not Jews enow in Malta,  
But thou must dote upon a Christian?

*Abig.* I will have Don Mathias, he is my love.

*Bar.* Yes, you shall have him: go put her in.

*Itha.* Ay, I'll put her in. [*Puts ABIGAIL in.*]

*Bar.* Now tell me, Ithamore, how lik'st thou this?

*Itha.* Faith, master, I think by this  
You purchase both their lives; is it not so?

*Bar.* True; and it shall be cunningly performed. 370

*Itha.* O master, that I might have a hand in this.

*Bar.* Ay, so thou shalt, 'tis thou must do the deed:  
Take this, and bear it to Mathias straight,  
[*Gives a letter.*]

And tell him that it comes from Lodowick.

*Itha.* 'Tis poisoned, is it not?

*Bar.* No, no, and yet it might be done that way:  
It is a challenge feigned from Lodowick.

*Itha.* Fear not; I will so set his heart afire,  
That he shall verily think it comes from him.

*Bar.* I cannot choose but like thy readiness: 380  
Yet be not rash, but do it cunningly.

*Itha.* As I behave myself in this, employ me hereafter.

*Bar.* Away then. [*Exit ITHAMORE.*]

So, now will I go in to Lodowick,  
And, like a cunning spirit, feign some lie,  
Till I have set 'em both at enmity. [*Exit.*]

## ACT THE THIRD

### SCENE I<sup>n</sup>

*Enter BELLAMIRA, a Courtesan*

*Bell.* Since this town was besieged, my gain grows cold:  
The time has been that, but for one bare night,  
A hundred ducats have been freely given:  
But now against my will I must be chaste;  
And yet I know my beauty doth not fail.  
From Venice merchants, and from Padua  
Were wont to come rare-witted gentlemen,  
Scholars I mean, learnèd and liberal;  
And now, save Pilia-Borsa, comes there none,  
And he is very seldom from my house;  
And here he comes. 10

*Enter PILIA-BORSA*

*Pilia.* Hold thee, wench, there's something for thee to  
spend. [Shows a bag of silver.]

*Bell.* 'Tis silver. I disdain it.

*Pilia.* Ay, but the Jew has gold,  
And I will have it, or it shall go hard.

*Bell.* Tell me, how cam'st thou by this?

*Pilia.* 'Faith, walking the back-lanes, through the  
gardens, I chanced to cast mine eye up to the Jew's  
counting-house, where I saw some bags of money, and in  
the night I clambered up with my hooks, and, as I was  
taking my choice, I heard a rumbling in the house; so I  
took only this, and run my way: but here's the Jew's  
man. 24

*Bell.* Hide the bag.

*Enter* ITHAMORE

*Pilia.* Look not towards him, let's away; zoons, what a looking thou keep'st; thou'lt betray 's anon.

[*Exeunt* BELLAMIRA and PILIA-BORSA.]

*Itha.* Oh, the sweetest face that ever I beheld! I know she is a courtesan by her attire: now would I give a hundred of the Jew's crowns that I had such a concubine.

31

Well, I have delivered the challenge in such sort,  
As meet they will, and fighting die; brave sport. [*Exit.*

SCENE II<sup>a</sup>

*Enter* MATHIAS

*Math.* This is the place; now Abigail shall see  
Whether Mathias holds her dear or no.

*Enter* LODOWICK

What, dares the villain write in such base terms?

[*Reading a letter.*

*Lod.* I did it; and revenge it if thou dar'st.

[*They fight.*

*Enter* BARABAS, above,<sup>n</sup> on a balcony

*Bar.* Oh! bravely fought; and yet they thrust not home.

Now, Lodovico! now, Mathias! So — [Both fall.  
So now they have showed themselves to be tall fellows.

[*Cries within.*] Part 'em, part 'em.

*Bar.* Ay, part 'em now they are dead. Farewell, farewell. [*Exit.*

*Enter* FERNEZE, KATHERINE, and Attendants

*Fern.* What sight<sup>n</sup> is this! — my Lodowick<sup>n</sup> slain! 10  
These arms of mine shall be thy sepulchre.



*Kath.* Who is this? my son Mathias slain!

*Fern.* O Lodowick! had'st thou perished by the Turk,  
Wretched Ferneze might have 'venged thy death.

*Kath.* Thy son slew mine, and I'll revenge his death.

*Fern.* Look, Katherine, look! — thy son gave mine  
these wounds.

*Kath.* Oh! leave to grieve me, I am grieved enough.

*Fern.* Oh! that my sighs could turn to lively breath;  
And these my tears to blood, that he might live.

*Kath.* Who made them enemies? 20

*Fern.* I know not, and that grieves me most of all.

*Kath.* My son loved thine.

*Fern.* And so did Lodowick him.

*Kath.* Lend me that weapon that did kill my son,  
And it shall murder me.

*Fern.* Nay, madam, stay; that weapon was my son's,  
And on that rather should Ferneze die.

*Kath.* Hold, let's inquire the causers of their deaths,  
That we may 'venge their blood upon their heads.

*Fern.* Then take them up, and let them be interred  
Within one sacred monument of stone; 30  
Upon which altar I will offer up  
My daily sacrifice of sighs and tears,  
And with my prayers pierce impartial Heavens,  
Till they reveal the causers of our smarts,  
Which forced their hands divide united hearts:  
Come, Katherine, our losses equal are,  
Then of true grief let us take equal share.

*[Exeunt with the bodies.]*

### SCENE III<sup>a</sup>

*Enter ITHAMORE*

*Itha.* Why, was there ever seen such villainy,  
So neatly plotted, and so well performed?  
Both held in hand," and flatly both beguiled?

*Enter ABIGAIL*

*Abig.* Why, how now, Ithamore, why laugh'st thou so?

*Itha.* O mistress, ha! ha! ha!

*Abig.* Why, what ail'st thou?

*Itha.* O my master!

*Abig.* Ha!

*Itha.* O mistress! I have the bravest, gravest, secret, subtle, bottle-nosed knave to my master, that ever gentleman had. 11

*Abig.* Say, knave, why rail'st upon my father thus?

*Itha.* Oh, my master has the bravest policy.

*Abig.* Wherein?

*Itha.* Why, know you not?

*Abig.* Why, no.

*Itha.* Know you not of Mathias' and Don Lodowick's disaster?

*Abig.* No, what was it?

*Itha.* Why, the devil invented a challenge, my master writ it, and I carried it, first to Lodowick, and *imprimis* to Mathias. 22

And then they met, and, as the story says,  
In doleful wise they ended both their days.

*Abig.* And was my father furtherer of their deaths?

*Itha.* Am I Ithamore?

*Abig.* Yes.

*Itha.* So sure did your father write, and I carry the challenge.

*Abig.* Well, Ithamore, let me request thee this, 30  
Go to the new-made nunnery, and inquire  
For any of the friars of Saint Jaques,  
And say, I pray them come and speak with me.

*Itha.* I pray, mistress, will you answer me but one question?

*Abig.* Well, sirrah, what is't?

*Itha.* A very feeling one; have not the nuns fine sport with the friars now and then?

*Abig.* Go to, sirrah sauce, is this your question? get ye gone.

*Itha.* I will, forsooth, mistress.

[*Exit.*]

*Abig.* Hard-hearted father, unkind Barabas! Was this the pursuit of thy policy!

To make me show them favour severally,  
That by my favour they should both be slain?

Admit thou lov'dst not Lodowick for his sire,

Yet Don Mathias ne'er offended thee:

But thou wert set upon extreme revenge,

Because the governor dispossessed thee once,

And could'st not 'venge it, but upon his son,

Nor on his son, but by Mathias' means;

Nor on Mathias, but by murdering me.

But I perceive there is no love on earth,

Pity in Jews, or piety in Turks,

But here comes cursed Ithamore, with the friar.

*Enter ITHAMORE and Friar JACOMO*

*F. Jac. Virgo, salve.*

*Itha.* When! duck you!

*Abig.* Welcome, grave friar; Ithamore, begone.

[*Exit ITHAMORE.*]

Know, holy sir, I am bold to solicit thee.

*F. Jac.* Wherein?

*Abig.* To get me be admitted for a nun.

*F. Jac.* Why, Abigail, it is not yet long since  
That I did labour thy admission,  
And then thou did'st not like that holy life.

*Abig.* Then were my thoughts so frail and unconfirmed,  
And I was chained to follies of the world:  
But now experience, purchasèd with grief,  
Has made me see the difference of things.  
My sinful soul, alas, hath paced too long  
The fatal labyrinth of misbelief,  
Far from the sun that gives eternal life.

*F. Jac.* Who taught thee this?

*Abig.* The abbess of the house,  
Whose zealous admonition I embrace:  
Oh, therefore, Giacomo, let me be one,  
Although unworthy, of that sisterhood.

*F. Jac.* Abigail, I will, but see thou change no more,  
For that will be most heavy to thy soul.

*Abig.* That was my father's fault.

*F. Jac.* Thy father's! how?

*Abig.* Nay, you shall pardon me. — O Barabas,  
Though thou deservest hardly at my hands, 80  
Yet never shall these lips bewray thy life! [Aside.

*F. Jac.* Come, shall we go?

*Abig.* My duty waits on you.  
[Exeunt.

#### SCENE IV<sup>a</sup>

*Enter BARABAS, reading a letter*

*Bar.* What, Abigail become a nun again!  
False and unkind; what, hast thou lost thy father?  
And all unknown, and unconstrained of me,  
Art thou again got to the nunnery?  
Now here she writes, and wills me to repent.  
Repentance! *Spurca!* what pretendeth this?  
I fear she knows — 'tis so — of my device  
In Don Mathias' and Lodovico's deaths:  
If so, 'tis time that it be seen into:  
For she that varies from me in belief 10  
Gives great presumption that she loves me not;  
Or loving, doth dislike of something done. —  
But who comes here?

*Enter ITHAMORE*

O Ithamore, come near;  
Come near, my love; come near, thy master's life,  
My trusty servant, nay, my second self:

For I have now no hope but even in thee,  
And on that hope my happiness is built.  
When saw'st thou Abigail?

*Itha.* To-day.

*Bar.* With whom? 20

*Itha.* A friar.

*Bar.* A friar! false villain, he hath done the deed.

*Itha.* How, sir?

*Bar.* Why, made mine Abigail a nun.

*Itha.* That's no lie, for she sent me for him.

*Bar.* O unhappy day!

False, credulous, inconstant Abigail!

But let 'em go: and, Ithamore, from hence

Ne'er shall she grieve me more with her disgrace;

Ne'er shall she live to inherit aught of mine, 30

Be blest of me, nor come within my gates,

But perish underneath my bitter curse,

Like Cain by Adam for his brother's death.

*Itha.* O master!

*Bar.* Ithamore, entreat not for her, I am moved,  
And she is hateful to my soul and me:

And 'less thou yield to this that I entreat,  
I cannot think but that thou hat'st my life.

*Itha.* Who, I, master? Why, I'll run to some rock,  
And throw myself headlong into the sea; 40

Why, I'll do anything for your sweet sake.

*Bar.* O trusty Ithamore, no servant, but my friend:  
I here adopt thee for mine only heir,

All that I have is thine when I am dead,

And whilst I live use half; spend as myself;

Here, take my keys — I'll give 'em thee anon:

Go buy thee garments: but thou shalt not want:

Only know this, that thus thou art to do:

But first go fetch me in the pot of rice

That for our supper stands upon the fire. 50

*Itha.* I hold my head my master's hungry. [*Aside.*] I  
go, sir. [Exit.]

*Bar.* Thus every villain ambles after wealth,  
Although he ne'er be richer than in hope:  
But, husht!

*Re-enter ITHAMORE with the pot*

*Itha.* Here 'tis, master.

*Bar.* Well said, Ithamore; what, hast thou brought  
The ladle with thee too?

*Itha.* Yes, sir, the proverb says, he that eats with the  
devil had need of a long spoon.<sup>a</sup> I have brought you a  
ladle. 60

*Bar.* Very well, Ithamore, then now be secret;  
And for thy sake, whom I so dearly love,  
Now shalt thou see the death of Abigail,  
That thou may'st freely live to be my heir.

*Itha.* Why, master, will you poison her with a mess of  
rice porridge? that will preserve life, make her round and  
plump, and batten more than you are aware.

*Bar.* Ay, but, Ithamore, seest thou this?  
It is a precious powder that I bought  
Of an Italian, in Ancona, once, 70  
Whose operation is to bind, infect,  
And poison deeply, yet not appear  
In forty hours after it is ta'en.

*Itha.* How, master?

*Bar.* Thus, Ithamore.  
This even they use in Malta here — 'tis called  
Saint Jaques' Even — and then I say they use  
To send their alms unto the nunneries:  
Among the rest bear this, and set it there;  
There's a dark entry where they take it in, 80  
Where they must neither see the messenger,  
Nor make inquiry who hath sent it them.

*Itha.* How so?

*Bar.* Belike there is some ceremony in't.  
There, Ithamore, must thou go place this pot!  
Stay, let me spice it first.

*Itha.* Pray do, and let me help you, master. Pray let me taste first.

*Bar.* Prythee do [*ITHAMORE tastes*]: what say'st thou now?

*Itha.* Troth, master, I'm loath such a pot of pottage should be spoiled. 91

*Bar.* Peace, Ithamore, 'tis better so than spared. Assure thyself thou shalt have broth by the eye," My purse, my coffer, and myself is thine.

*Itha.* Well, master, I go.

*Bar.* Stay, first let me stir it, Ithamore. As fatal be it to her as the draught  
Of which great Alexander drunk and died:  
And with her let it work like Borgia's wine,  
Whereof his sire, the Pope, was poisonèd. 100  
In few," the blood of Hydra, Lerna's bane:  
The juice of hebon," and Cocytus' breath,  
And all the poisons of the Stygian pool  
Break from the fiery kingdom; and in this  
Vomit your venom and envenom her  
That like a fiend hath left her father thus.

*Itha.* What a blessing has he given't! was ever pot of rice porridge so sauced! [*Aside.*] What shall I do with it?

*Bar.* Oh, my sweet Ithamore, go set it down, 110  
And come again so soon as thou hast done,  
For I have other business for thee.

*Itha.* Here's a drench to poison a whole stable of Flanders mares: I'll carry't to the nuns with a powder.

*Bar.* And the horse pestilence to boot; away!

*Itha.* I am gone.

Pay me my wages, for my work is done. [*Exit.*]

*Bar.* I'll pay thee with a vengeance, Ithamore. [*Exit.*]

SCENE V<sup>a</sup>

*Enter FERNEZE, MARTIN DEL BOSCO, Knights,  
and Basso*

*Fern.* Welcome, great basso; how fares Calymath?  
What wind drives you thus into Malta-road?

*Bas.* The wind that bloweth all the world besides —  
Desire of gold.

*Fern.* Desire of gold, great sir?  
That's to be gotten in the Western Inde:  
In Malta are no golden minerals.

*Bas.* To you of Malta thus saith Calymath:  
The time you took for respite is at hand,  
For the performance of your promise passed,  
And for the tribute-money I am sent. 10

*Fern.* Basso, in brief, 'shalt have no tribute here,  
Nor shall the heathens live upon our spoil:  
First will we raze the city walls ourselves,  
Lay waste the island, hew the temples down,  
And, shipping off our goods to Sicily,  
Open an entrance for the wasteful sea,  
Whose billows beating the resistless banks,  
Shall overflow it with their refluxence.

*Bas.* Well, Governor, since thou hast broke the league  
By flat denial of the promised tribute, 20  
Talk not of razing down your city walls,  
You shall not need trouble yourselves so far,  
For Selim Calymath shall come himself,  
And with brass bullets batter down your towers,  
And turn proud Malta to a wilderness  
For these intolerable wrongs of yours;  
And so farewell.

*Fern.* Farewell: [Exit Basso.  
And now, ye men of Malta, look about,  
And let's provide to welcome Calymath: 30



Close your portcullis, charge your basilisks,  
And as you profitably take up arms,  
So now courageously encounter them;  
For by this answer, broken is the league,  
And naught is to be looked for now but wars,  
And naught to us more welcome is than wars. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE VI<sup>a</sup>

*Enter* Friar JACOMO and Friar BARNARDINE

*F. Jac.* Oh, brother, brother, all the nuns are sick,  
And physic will not help them: they must die.

*F. Barn.* The abbess sent for me to be confessed:  
Oh, what a sad confession will there be!

*F. Jac.* And so did fair Maria send for me:  
I'll to her lodging: hereabouts she lies. [*Exit.*]

*Enter* ABIGAIL

*F. Barn.* What, all dead, save only Abigail?

*Abig.* And I shall die too, for I feel death coming.  
Where is the friar that conversed with me?

*F. Barn.* Oh, he is gone to see the other nuns. 10

*Abig.* I sent for him, but seeing you are come,  
Be you my ghostly father: and first know,  
That in this house I lived religiously,  
Chaste, and devout, much sorrowing for my sins;  
But, ere I came ——

*F. Barn.* What then?

*Abig.* I did offend high Heaven so grievously,  
As I am almost desperate for my sins:  
And one offence torments me more than all.  
You knew Mathias and Don Lodowick? 20

*F. Barn.* Yes, what of them?

*Abig.* My father did contract me to 'em both:  
First to Don Lodowick; him I never loved;

Mathias was the man that I held dear,  
And for his sake did I become a nun.

*F. Barn.* So, say how was their end?

*Abig.* Both, jealous of my love, envied each other,  
And by my father's practice, which is there  
Set down at large, the gallants were both slain.

[*Gives a written paper.*

*F. Barn.* O monstrous villainy! 30

*Abig.* To work my peace, this I confess to thee;  
Reveal it not, for then my father dies.

*F. Barn.* Know that confession must not be revealed,  
The canon law forbids it, and the priest  
That makes it known, being degraded first,  
Shall be condemned, and then sent to the fire.

*Abig.* So I have heard; pray, therefore keep it close.  
Death seizeth on my heart: ah, gentle friar!

Convert my father that he may be saved,  
And witness that I die a Christian. [*Dies.* 40

*F. Barn.* Ay, and a virgin too; that grieves me  
most:

But I must to the Jew and exclaim on him,  
And make him stand in fear of me.

*Re-enter Friar JACOMO*

*F. Jac.* O brother, all the nuns are dead, let's bury  
them.

*F. Barn.* First help to bury this; then go with me  
And help me to exclaim against the Jew.

*F. Jac.* Why, what has he done?

*F. Barn.* A thing that makes me tremble to unfold.

*F. Jac.* What, has he crucified a child?"

*F. Barn.* No, but a worse thing: 'twas told me in  
shrift, 50

Thou know'st 'tis death an if it be revealed.  
Come, let's away.

[*Exeunt.*

## ACT THE FOURTH

### SCENE I<sup>n</sup>

*Enter BARABAS and ITHAMORE. Bells within*

*Bar.* There is no music to a Christian's knell:  
How sweet the bells ring now the nuns are dead,  
That sound at other times like tinker's pans!  
I was afraid the poison had not wrought:  
Or, though it wrought, it would have done no good,  
For every year they swell, and yet they live;  
Now all are dead, not one remains alive.

*Itha.* That's brave, master, but think you it will not  
be known?

*Bar.* How can it, if we two be secret? 10

*Itha.* For my part fear you not.

*Bar.* I'd cut thy throat if I did.

*Itha.* And reason too.

But here's a royal monastery hard by;  
Good master, let me poison all the monks.

*Bar.* Thou shalt not need, for now the nuns are dead  
They'll die with grief.

*Itha.* Do you not sorrow for your daughter's death?

*Bar.* No, but I grieve because she lived so long.  
An Hebrew born, and would become a Christian! 20  
*Cazzo, diabolo.*

*Enter Friar JACOMO and Friar BARNARDINE*

*Itha.* Look, look, master, here come two religious  
caterpillars.

*Bar.* I smelt 'em ere they came.

*Itha.* God-a-mercy, nose! come, let's begone.

*F. Barn.* Stay, wicked Jew, repent, I say, and stay.

*F. Jac.* Thou hast offended, therefore must be damned.

*Bar.* I fear they know we sent the poisoned broth.

*Itha.* And so do I, master; therefore speak 'em fair.

*F. Barn.* Barabas, thou hast —

30

*F. Jac.* Ay, that thou hast —

*Bar.* True, I have money, what though I have?

*F. Barn.* Thou art a —

*F. Jac.* Ay, that thou art, a —

*Bar.* What needs all this? I know I am a Jew.

*F. Barn.* Thy daughter —

*F. Jac.* Ay, thy daughter —

*Bar.* Oh, speak not of her! then I die with grief.

*F. Barn.* Remember that —

*F. Jac.* Ay, remember that —

40

*Bar.* I must needs say that I have been a great usurer.

*F. Barn.* Thou hast committed —

*Bar.* Fornication — but that was in another country;  
And besides, the wench is dead.

*F. Barn.* Ay, but, Barabas,  
Remember Mathias and Don Lodowick.

*Bar.* Why, what of them?

*F. Barn.* I will not say that by a forged challenge  
they met.

*Bar.* She has confest, and we are both undone,  
My bosom inmate! but I must dissemble. — [*Aside.* 50  
O holy friars, the burthen of my sins  
Lie heavy on my soul; then pray you tell me,  
Is't not too late now to turn Christian?  
I have been zealous in the Jewish faith,  
Hard-hearted to the poor, a covetous wretch,  
That would for lucre's sake have sold my soul.  
A hundred for a hundred I have ta'en;  
And now for store of wealth may I compare  
With all the Jews of Malta; but what is wealth?

I am a Jew, and therefore am I lost.

60

Would penance serve to atone for this my sin,  
I could afford to whip myself to death —

*Itha.* And so could I; but penance will not serve.

*Bar.* To fast, to pray, and wear a shirt of hair,  
And on my knees creep to Jerusalem.

Cellars of wine, and sollars full of wheat,

Warehouses stult with spices and with drugs,

Whole chests of gold, in bullion, and in coin,

• Besides, I know not how much weight in pearl,  
Orient and round, have I within my house;

70

At Alexandria, merchandise unsold:

But yesterday two ships went from this town,

Their voyage will be worth ten thousand crowns.

In Florence, Venice, Antwerp, London, Seville,

Frankfort, Lubeck, Moscow, and where not,

Have I debts owing; and in most of these,

Great sums of money lying in the banco;

All this I'll give to some religious house.

So I may be baptized, and live therein.

*F. Jac.* O good Barabas, come to our house.

80

*F. Barn.* Oh, no, good Barabas, come to our house;  
And, Barabas, you know —

*Bar.* I know that I have highly sinned.

You shall convert me, you shall have all my wealth.

*F. Jac.* O Barabas, their laws are strict.

*Bar.* I know they are, and I will be with you.

*F. Barn.* They wear no shirts, and they go barefoot  
too.

*Bar.* Then 'tis not for me; and I am resolved  
You shall confess me, and have all my goods.

[To Friar BARNARDINE.]

*F. Jac.* Good Barabas, come to me.

90

*Bar.* You see I answer him, and yet he stays;  
Rid him away, and go you home with me.

*F. Jac.* I'll be with you to-night.

*Bar.* Come to my house at one o'clock this night.

*F. Jac.* You hear your answer, and you may be gone.

*F. Barn.* Why, go, get you away.

*F. Jac.* I will not go for thee.

*F. Barn.* Not! then I'll make thee go.

*F. Jac.* How, dost call me rogue? [*They fight.*]

*Itha.* Part 'em, master, part 'em. 100

*Bar.* This is mere frailty, brethren; be content.

Friar Barnardine, go you with Ithamore:

You know my mind, let me alone with him.

[*Aside to Friar BARNARDINE.*]

*F. Jac.* Why does he go to thy house? let him be gone.

*Bar.* I'll give him something and so stop his mouth.

[*Exit ITHAMORE with Friar BARNARDINE.*]

I never heard of any man but he

Maligned the order of the Jacobins:

But do you think that I believe his words?

Why, brother, you converted Abigail;

And I am bound in charity to requite it, 110

And so I will. O Jacomo, fail not, but come.

*F. Jac.* But, Barabas, who shall be your godfathers?  
For presently you shall be shrived.

*Bar.* Marry, the Turk<sup>n</sup> shall be one of my godfathers,  
But not a word to any of your covent.

*F. Jac.* I warrant thee, Barabas. [*Exit.*]

*Bar.* So, now the fear is past, and I am safe,

For he that shrived her is within my house;

What if I murdered him ere Jacomo comes?

Now I have such a plot for both their lives 120

As never Jew nor Christian knew the like:

One turned my daughter, therefore he shall die;

The other knows enough to have my life,

Therefore 'tis not requisite he should live.

But are not both these wise men to suppose

That I will leave my house, my goods, and all,

To fast and be well whipt? I'll none of that.

Now Friar Barnardine I come to you,

I'll feast you, lodge you, give you fair words,  
And after that, I and my trusty Turk —  
No more, but so: it must and shall be done.

130  
[Exit.

SCENE II<sup>a</sup>

*Enter BARABAS and ITHAMORE*

*Bar.* Ithamore, tell me, is the friar asleep?

*Itha.* Yes; and I know not what the reason is,  
Do what I can he will not strip himself,  
Nor go to bed, but sleeps in his own clothes;  
I fear me he mistrusts what we intend.

*Bar.* No, 'tis an order which the friars use:  
Yet, if he knew our meanings, could he 'scape?

*Itha.* No, none can hear him, cry he ne'er so loud.

*Bar.* Why, true, therefore did I place him there:  
The other chambers open towards the street. 10

*Itha.* You loiter, master; wherefore stay we thus?  
Oh, how I long to see him shake his heels.

*Bar.* Come on, sirrah.  
Off with your girdle, make a handsome noose.

[ITHAMORE takes off his girdle and ties a noose  
in it.

Friar, awake! [They put the noose round the Friar's neck.

*F. Barn.* What, do you mean to strangle me?

*Itha.* Yes, 'cause you use to confess.

*Bar.* Blame not us but the proverb — Confess and be  
hanged; pull hard!

*F. Barn.* What, will you have my life? 20

*Bar.* Pull hard, I say; you would have had my goods.

*Itha.* Ay, and our lives too, therefore pull amain.

[They strangle him.

'Tis neatly done, sir, here's no print at all. •

*Bar.* Then it is as it should be; take him up.

*Itha.* Nay, master, be ruled by me a little. [Stands the  
body upright against the wall and puts a staff in its hand.]

So, let him lean upon his staff; excellent! he stands as if he were begging of bacon."

*Bar.* Who would not think but that this friar lived? What time o' night is't now, sweet Ithamore?

*Itha.* Towards one.

30

*Bar.* Then will not Jacomo be long from hence.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III<sup>a</sup>

*Enter* Friar JACOMO

*F. Jac.* This is the hour wherein I shall proceed;  
O happy hour wherein I shall convert  
An infidel, and bring his gold into our treasury!  
But soft, is not this Barnardine? it is;  
And, understanding I should come this way,  
Stands here a purpose, meaning me some wrong,  
And intercept my going to the Jew. —  
Barnardine!

Wilt thou not speak? thou think'st I see thee not;  
Away, I'd wish thee, and let me go by: 10  
No, wilt thou not? nay, then, I'll force my way;  
And see, a staff stands ready for the purpose:  
As thou lik'st that, stop me another time.

[*Takes the staff and strikes the body, which falls down.*

*Enter* BARABAS and ITHAMORE

*Bar.* Why, how now, Jacomo, what hast thou done?

*F. Jac.* Why, stricken him that would have struck at me.

*Bar.* Who is it? Barnardine! now out, alas, he's slain!

*Itha.* Ay, master, he's slain; look how his brains drop out on's nose.

*F. Jac.* Good sirs, I have done't, but nobody knows it but you two — I may escape. 20



*Bar.* So might my man and I hang with you for company.

*Itha.* No, let us bear him to the magistrates.

*F. Jac.* Good Barabas, let me go.

*Bar.* No, pardon me; the law must have its course. I must be forced to give in evidence,  
That being importuned by this Barnardine  
To be a Christian, I shut him out,  
And there he sat: now I, to keep my word,  
And give my goods and substance to your house, 30  
Was up thus early; with intent to go  
Unto your friary, because you stayed.

*Itha.* Fie upon 'em, master; will you turn Christian when holy friars turn devils and murder one another?

*Bar.* No, for this example I'll remain a Jew:  
Heaven bless me! what, a friar a murderer?  
When shall you see a Jew commit the like?

*Itha.* Why, a Turk could ha' done no more.

*Bar.* To-morrow is the sessions; you shall to it. 40  
Come, Ithamore, let's help to take him hence.

*F. Jac.* Villains, I am a sacred person; touch me not.

*Bar.* The law shall touch you, we'll but lead you, we:  
'Las, I could weep at your calamity!  
Take in the staff too, for that must be shown:  
Law wills that each particular be known. [Exeunt.]

#### SCENE IV<sup>a</sup>

*Enter BELLAMIRA and PILIA-BORSA*

*Bell.* Pilia-Borsa, did'st thou meet with Ithamore?

*Pilia.* I did.

*Bell.* And did'st thou deliver my letter?

*Pilia.* I did.

*Bell.* And what think'st thou? will he come?

*Pilia.* I think so, but yet I cannot tell; for at the reading of the letter he looked like a man of another world.

*Bell.* Why so?

*Pilia.* That such a base slave as he should be saluted by such a tall man as I am, from such a beautiful dame as you.

11

*Bell.* And what said he?

*Pilia.* Not a wise word, only gave me a nod, as who should say, "Is it even so?" and so I left him, being driven to a nonplus at the critical aspect of my terrible countenance.

*Bell.* And where didst meet him?

*Pilia.* Upon mine own freehold, within forty feet of the gallows, conning his neck-verse, I take it, looking of a friar's execution, whom I saluted with an old hempen proverb, *Hodie tibi, cras mihi*, and so I left him to the mercy of the hangman: but the exercise being done, see where he comes.

23

*Enter ITHAMORE*

*Itha.* I never knew a man take his death so patiently as this friar; he was ready to leap off ere the halter was about his neck; and when the hangman had put on his hempen tippet, he made such haste to his prayers, as if he had had another cure to serve. Well, go whither he will, I'll be none of his followers in haste: and, now I think on't, going to the execution, a fellow met me with a muschatoes like a raven's wing, and a dagger with a hilt like a warming-pan, and he gave me a letter from one Madam Bellamira, saluting me in such sort as if he had meant to make clean my boots with his lips; the effect was, that I should come to her house. I wonder what the reason is; it may be she sees more in me than I can find in myself: for she writes further, that she loves me ever since she saw me, and who would not requite such love? Here's her house, and here she

comes, and now would I were gone; I am not worthy to look upon her. 41

*Pilia.* This is the gentleman you writ to.

*Itha.* Gentleman! he flouts me; what gentry can be in a poor Turk of tenpence? <sup>n</sup> I'll be gone. [*Aside.*

*Bell.* Is't not a sweet-faced youth, *Pilia*?

*Itha.* Again, "sweet youth!" [*Aside.*] — Did not you, sir, bring the sweet youth a letter?

*Pilia.* I did, sir, and from this gentlewoman, who, as myself, and the rest of the family, stand or fall at your service. 50

*Bell.* Though woman's modesty should hale me back, I can withhold no longer; welcome, sweet love.

*Itha.* Now am I clean, or rather foully out of the way. [*Aside.*

*Bell.* Whither so soon?

*Itha.* I'll go steal some money from my master to make me handsome [*Aside.*] — Pray, pardon me, I must go and see a ship discharged.

*Bell.* Canst thou be so unkind to leave me thus?

*Pilia.* An ye did but know how she loves you, sir!

*Itha.* Nay, I care not how much she loves me — Sweet *Bellamira*, would I had my master's wealth for thy sake! 62

*Pilia.* And you can have it, sir, an if you please.

*Itha.* If 'twere above ground, I could and would have it; but he hides and buries it up, as partridges do their eggs, under the earth.

*Pilia.* And is't not possible to find it out?

*Itha.* By no means possible.

*Bell.* What shall we do with this base villain, then? [*Aside to PILIA-BORSA.*

*Pilia.* Let me alone; do you but speak him fair. — [*Aside to her.*

But, [sir,] you know some secrets of the Jew, 71  
Which, if they were revealed, would do him harm.

*Itha.* Ay, and such as — Go to, no more! I'll make

him send me half he has, and glad he 'scapes so too. I'll write unto him; we'll have money straight.

*Pilia.* Send for a hundred crowns at least.

*Itha.* Ten hundred thousand crowns. [*Writing.*]  
"Master Barabas."

*Pilia.* Write not so submissively, but threatening him.

*Itha.* [*writing*] "Sirrah, Barabas, send me a hundred crowns."80

*Pilia.* Put in two hundred at least.

*Itha.* [*writing*] "I charge thee send me three hundred by this bearer, and this shall be your warrant: if you do not — no more, but so."

*Pilia.* Tell him you will confess.

*Itha.* [*writing*] "Otherwise I'll confess all." — Vanish, and return in a twinkle.

*Pilia.* Let me alone; I'll use him in his kind.

[*Exit PILIA-BORSA with the letter.*]

*Itha.* Hang him, Jew!

*Bell.* Now, gentle Ithamore, lie in my lap. — 90  
Where are my maids? provide a running banquet;  
Send to the merchant, bid him bring me silks,  
Shall Ithamore, my love, go in such rags?

*Itha.* And bid the jeweller come hither too.

*Bell.* I have no husband, sweet; I'll marry thee.

*Itha.* Content: but we will leave this paltry land,  
And sail from hence to Greece, to lovely Greece.  
I'll be thy Jason, thou my golden fleece;  
Where painted carpets o'er the meads are hurled,  
And Bacchus' vineyards overspread the world; 100  
Where woods and forests go in goodly green,  
I'll be Adonis, thou shalt be Love's Queen.  
The meads, the orchards, and the primrose-lanes,  
Instead of sedge and reed, bear sugar-canes:  
Thou in those groves, by Dis above,<sup>n</sup>  
Shalt live with me and be my love.<sup>n</sup>

*Bell.* Whither will I not go with gentle Ithamore?

*Re-enter PILIA-BORSA*

*Itha.* How now! hast thou the gold?

*Pilia.* Yes.

*Itha.* But came it freely? did the cow give down her milk freely? 111

*Pilia.* At reading of the letter, he stared and stamped and turned aside. I took him by the beard, and looked upon him thus; told him he were best to send it; then he hugged and embraced me.

*Itha.* Rather for fear than love.

*Pilia.* Then, like a Jew, he laughed and jeered, and told me he loved me for your sake, and said what a faithful servant you had been.

*Itha.* The more villain he to keep me thus; here's goodly 'parel, is there not? 121

*Pilia.* To conclude, he gave me ten crowns.

*[Gives the money to ITHAMORE.]*

*Itha.* But ten? I'll not leave him worth a grey groat. Give me a ream<sup>n</sup> of paper; we'll have a kingdom of gold for't.

*Pilia.* Write for five hundred crowns.

*Itha.* *[writing].* "Sirrah, Jew, as you love your life send me five hundred crowns, and give the bearer one hundred." — Tell him I must have't.

*Pilia.* I warrant your worship shall have't. 130

*Itha.* And if he ask why I demand so much, tell him I scorn to write a line under a hundred crowns.

*Pilia.* You'd make a rich poet, sir. I am gone.

*[Exit.]*

*Itha.* Take thou the money; spend it for my sake.

*Bell.* 'Tis not thy money, but thyself I weigh;  
Thus Bellamira esteems of gold. *[Throws it aside.]*  
But thus of thee. *[Kisses him.]*

*Itha.* That kiss again! she runs division<sup>n</sup> of my lips. What an eye she casts on me! It twinkles like a star.

*Bell.* Come, my dear love, let's in and sleep together.

*Itha.* Oh, that ten thousand nights were put in one,  
that we might sleep seven years together afore we waken!

*Bell.* Come, amorous wag, first banquet, and then  
sleep. • [Exeunt. 143

SCENE V<sup>a</sup>

*Enter BARABAS, reading a letter*

*Bar.* "Barabas, send me three hundred crowns." —  
Plain Barabas! Oh, that wicked courtesan!

He was not wont to call me Barabas.

"Or else I will confess:" ay, there it goes:

But, if I get him, *coupe de gorge* for that.

He sent a shaggy, tattered, staring slave,

That when he speaks draws out his grisly beard,

And winds it twice or thrice about his ear;

Whose face has been a grindstone for men's swords;

His hands are hacked, some fingers cut quite off; 10

Who, when he speaks, grunts like a hog, and looks

Like one that is employed in catzerie

And crossbiting — such a rogue

As is the husband to a hundred whores:

And I by him must send three hundred crowns!

Well, my hope is, he will not stay there still;

And when he comes: Oh, that he were but here!

*Enter PILIA-BORSA*

*Pilia.* Jew, I must have more gold.

*Bar.* Why, want'st thou any of thy tale?

*Pilia.* No; but three hundred will not serve his turn.

*Bar.* Not serve his turn, sir? 11

*Pilia.* No, sir; and, therefore, I must have five hundred more.

*Bar.* I'll rather —

*Pilia.* Oh, good words, sir, and send it you were best!  
see, there's his letter. [Gives letter.

*Bar.* Might he not as well come as send? pray, bid him come and fetch it; what he writes for you, ye shall have straight.

*Pilia.* Ay, and the rest too, or else — 30

*Bar.* I must make this villain away. [*Aside.*] Please you dine with me, sir — and you shall be most heartily poisoned. [*Aside.*]

*Pilia.* No, God-a-mercy. Shall I have these crowns?

*Bar.* I cannot do it, I have lost my keys.

*Pilia.* Oh, if that be all, I can pick ope your locks.

*Bar.* Or climb up to my counting-house window: you know my meaning.

*Pilia.* I know enough, and therefore talk not to me of your counting-house. The gold! or know, Jew, it is in my power to hang thee. 41

*Bar.* I am betrayed. — [*Aside.*]

'Tis not five hundred crowns that I esteem,  
I am not moved at that: this angers me,  
That he, who knows I love him as myself,  
Should write in this imperious vein. Why, sir,  
You know I have no child, and unto whom  
Should I leave all but unto Ithamore?

*Pilia.* Here's many words, but no crowns: the crowns!

*Bar.* Commend me to him, sir, most humbly, 50  
And unto your good mistress, as unknown.

*Pilia.* Speak, shall I have 'em, sir

*Bar.* Sir, here they are. — [*Gives money.*]

Oh, that I should part with so much gold! — [*Aside.*]

Here, take 'em, fellow, with as good a will —

As I would see thee hanged [*Aside*]; Oh, love stops my breath:

Never loved man servant as I do Ithamore!

*Pilia.* I know it, sir.

*Bar.* Pray, when, sir, shall I see you at my house?

*Pilia.* Soon enough, to your cost, sir. Fare you well. [*Exit.*]

*Bar.* Nay, to thine own cost, villain, if thou com'st!  
Was ever Jew tormented as I am? 62

To have a shag-rag knave to come, force from me  
Three hundred crowns — and then five hundred crowns!  
Well, I must seek a means to rid 'em all,  
And presently; for in his villainy  
He will tell all he knows, and I shall die for't.  
I have it:

I will in some disguise go see the slave,  
And how the villain revels with my gold. [Exit. 70

SCENE VI<sup>a</sup>

*Enter BELLAMIRA, ITHAMORE, and PILIA-BORSA*

*Bell.* I'll pledge thee, love, and therefore drink it  
off.

*Itha.* Say'st thou me so? have at it; and do you  
hear? [Whispers.

*Bell.* Go to, it shall be so.

*Itha.* Of that condition I will drink it up.  
Here's to thee!

*Bell.* Nay, I'll have all or none.

*Itha.* There, if thou lov'st me do not leave a drop.

*Bell.* Love thee! fill me three glasses.

*Itha.* Three and fifty dozen, I'll pledge thee. 10

*Pilia.* Knavely spoke, and like a knight-at-arms.

*Itha.* Hey, *Rivo Castiliano!* a man's a man!

*Bell.* Now to the Jew.

*Itha.* Ha! to the Jew, and send me money he were  
best.

*Pilia.* What would'st thou do if he should send thee  
none?

*Itha.* Do nothing; but I know what I know; he's a  
murderer.

*Bell.* I had not thought he had been so brave a  
man. 20



*Itha.* You knew Mathias and the governor's son; he and I killed 'em both, and yet never touched 'em.

*Pilia.* Oh, bravely done.

*Itha.* I carried the broth that poisoned the nuns; and he and I, snickle hand too fast,<sup>a</sup> strangled a friar.

*Bell.* You two alone?

*Itha.* We two; and 'twas never known, nor never shall be for me.

*Pilia.* This shall with me unto the governor. 30

[*Aside to BELLAMIRA.*

*Bell.* And fit it should: but first let's ha' more gold. —

[*Aside to PILIA-BORSA.*

Come, gentle Ithamore, lie in my lap.

*Itha.* Love me little, love me long; let music rumble  
Whilst I in thy incony lap do tumble.

*Enter BARABAS, disguised as a French musician, with a lute, and a nosegay in his hat*

*Bell.* A French musician! come, let's hear your skill.

*Bar.* Must tuna my lute for sound, twang, twang, first.

*Itha.* Wilt drink, Frenchman? here's to thee with a  
— Pox on this drunken hiccup!

*Bar.* Gramercy, monsieur. 40

*Bell.* Prythee, Pilia-Borsa, bid the fiddler give me the posy in his hat there.

*Pilia.* Sirrah, you must give my mistress your posy.

*Bar.* *A votre commandement, madame.* [*Giving nosegay.*

*Bell.* How sweet, my Ithamore, the flowers smell!

*Itha.* Like thy breath, sweetheart; no violet like 'em.

*Pilia.* Foh! methinks they stink like a hollyhock.

*Bar.* So, now I am revenged upon 'em all.

The scent thereof was death; I poisoned it. [*Aside.*

*Itha.* Play, fiddler, or I'll cut your cat's guts into chit-terlings. 51

*Bar. Pardonnez moi*, be no in tune yet; so now, now all be in.

*Itha.* Give him a crown, and fill me out more wine.

*Pilia.* There's two crowns for thee; play.

*Bar.* How liberally the villain gives me mine own gold! [*Aside.* BARABAS *then plays.*]

*Pilia.* Methinks he fingers very well.

*Bar.* So did you when you stole my gold. [*Aside.*

*Pilia.* How swift he runs! 60

*Bar.* You ran swifter when you threw my gold out of my window. [*Aside.*

*Bell.* Musician, hast been in Malta long?

*Bar.* Two, three, four month, madame.

*Itha.* Dost not know a Jew, one Barabas?

*Bar.* Very mush; monsieur, you no be his man?

*Pilia.* His man?

*Itha.* I scorn the peasant; tell him so.

*Bar.* He knows it already. [*Aside.*

*Itha.* 'Tis a strange thing of that Jew, he lives upon pickled grasshoppers and sauced mushrooms. 71

*Bar.* What a slave's this? the governor feeds not as I do. [*Aside.*

*Itha.* He never put on clean shirt since he was circumcised.

*Bar.* O rascal! I change myself twice a day. [*Aside.*

*Itha.* The hat he wears, Judas left under the elder<sup>n</sup> when he hanged himself.

*Bar.* 'Twas sent me for a present from the great Cham. [*Aside.* 80

*Pilia.* A musty slave he is. — Whither now, fiddler?

*Bar.* *Pardonnez moi*, monsieur, me be no well.

*Pilia.* Farewell, fiddler! [*Exit BARABAS*] One letter more to the Jew.

*Bell.* Prythee, sweet love, one more, and write it sharp.

*Itha.* No, I'll send by word of mouth now. — Bid him deliver thee a thousand crowns, by the same token, that

the nuns loved rice, that Friar Barnardine slept in his own clothes; any of 'em will do it. 90

*Pilia.* Let me alone to urge it, now I know the meaning.

*Itha.* The meaning has a meaning. Come let's in:  
To undo a Jew is charity, and not sin. [*Exeunt.*

*Re-enter First Officer*

*1st Off.* My lord, the courtesan and her man are  
dead: 50

So is the Turk and Barabas the Jew.

*Fern.* Dead!

*1st Off.* Dead, my lord, and here they bring his body.

*Bosc.* This sudden death of his is very strange.

*Re-enter Officers carrying BARABAS as dead*

*Fern.* Wonder not at it, sir, the Heavens are just;  
Their deaths were like their lives, then think not of 'em.  
Since they are dead, let them be buried;  
For the Jew's body, throw that o'er the walls,  
To be a prey for vultures and wild beasts. —  
So now away, and fortify the town. 60

*[Exeunt all, leaving BARABAS on the floor.]*

## SCENE II<sup>a</sup>

*BARABAS discovered rising*

*Bar.* What, all alone? well fare, sleepy drink.  
I'll be revenged on this accursèd town;  
For by my means Calymath shall enter in.  
I'll help to slay their children and their wives,  
To fire the churches, pull their houses down,  
Take my goods too, and seize upon my lands.  
I hope to see the governor a slave,  
And, rowing in a galley, whipt to death.

*Enter CALYMATH, Bassoes, and Turks*

*Caly.* Whom have we here, a spy?

*Bar.* Yes, my good lord, one that can spy a place  
Where you may enter, and surprise the town:  
My name is Barabas: I am a Jew.

*Bar.* One dram of powder more had made all sure;  
What a damned slave was I! [*Aside.*

*Fern.* Make fires, heat irons, let the rack be fetched.

*1st Knight.* Nay, stay, my lord; 't may be he will confess.

*Bar.* Confess! what mean you, lords? who should confess?

*Fern.* Thou and thy Turk; 'twas you that slew my son.

*Itha.* Guilty, my lord, I confess. Your son and Mathias were both contracted unto Abigail; he forged a counterfeit challenge. 30

*Bar.* Who carried that challenge?

*Itha.* I carried it, I confess; but who writ it? Marry, even he that strangled Barnardine, poisoned the nuns and his own daughter.

*Fern.* Away with him! his sight is death to me.

*Bar.* For what, you men of Malta? hear me speak:  
She is a courtesan, and he a thief,  
And he my bondman. Let me have law,  
For none of this can prejudice my life.

*Fern.* Once more, away with him; you shall have law.

*Bar.* Devils, do your worst! I'll live in spite of you. [*Aside.*

As these have spoke, so be it to their souls! — 42  
I hope the poisoned flowers will work anon. [*Aside.*

[*Exeunt Officers with BARABAS and ITHAMORE,*  
*BELLAMIRA and PILIA-BORSA.*

*Enter KATHERINE*

*Kath.* Was my Mathias murdered by the Jew?  
Ferneze, 'twas thy son that murdered him.

*Fern.* Be patient, gentle madam, it was he;  
He forged the daring challenge made them fight.

*Kath.* Where is the Jew? where is that murderer?

*Fern.* In prison till the law has passed on him.

*Re-enter First Officer*

*1st Off.* My lord, the courtesan and her man are  
dead: 50

So is the Turk and Barabas the Jew.

*Fern.* Dead!

*1st Off.* Dead, my lord, and here they bring his body.

*Bosc.* This sudden death of his is very strange.

*Re-enter Officers carrying BARABAS as dead*

*Fern.* Wonder not at it, sir, the Heavens are just;  
Their deaths were like their lives, then think not of 'em.  
Since they are dead, let them be buried;  
For the Jew's body, throw that o'er the walls,  
To be a prey for vultures and wild beasts. —  
So now away, and fortify the town. 60

*[Exeunt all, leaving BARABAS on the floor.]*

## SCENE II<sup>a</sup>

*BARABAS discovered rising*

*Bar.* What, all alone? well fare, sleepy drink.  
I'll be revenged on this accursèd town;  
For by my means Calymath shall enter in.  
I'll help to slay their children and their wives,  
To fire the churches, pull their houses down,  
Take my goods too, and seize upon my lands.  
I hope to see the governor a slave,  
And, rowing in a galley, whipt to death.

*Enter CALYMATH, Bassoes, and Turks*

*Caly.* Whom have we here, a spy?

*Bar.* Yes, my good lord, one that can spy a place 10  
Where you may enter, and surprise the town:  
My name is Barabas: I am a Jew.

*Caly.* Art thou that Jew whose goods we heard were sold  
For tribute-money?

*Bar.* The very same, my lord:  
And since that time they have hired a slave, my man,  
To accuse me of a thousand villainies:  
I was imprisonèd, but 'scaped their hands.

*Caly.* Did'st break prison?

*Bar.* No, no;  
I drank of poppy and cold mandrake juice: 20  
And being asleep, belike they thought me dead,  
And threw me o'er the walls: so, or how else,  
The Jew is here, and rests at your command.

*Caly.* 'Twas bravely done: but tell me, Barabas,  
Canst thou, as thou report'st, make Malta ours?

*Bar.* Fear not, my lord, for here against the sluice,  
The rock is hollow, and of purpose digged,  
To make a passage for the running streams  
And common channels of the city.  
Now, whilst you give assault unto the walls, 30  
I'll lead five hundred soldiers through the vault,  
And rise with them i' the middle of the town,  
Open the gates for you to enter in;  
And by this means the city is your own.

*Caly.* If this be true, I'll make thee governor.

*Bar.* And if it be not true, then let me die.

*Caly.* Thou'st doomed thyself. Assault it presently.  
[*Exeunt.*]

### SCENE III<sup>a</sup>

*Alarums within. Enter CALYMATH, Bassoos, Turks, and  
BARABAS, with FERNEZE and Knights prisoners*

*Caly.* Now vail your pride, you captive Christians,  
And kneel for mercy to your conquering foe:  
Now where's the hope you had of haughty Spain?

Ferneze, speak, had it not been much better  
T'have kept thy promise than be thus surprised?

*Fern.* What should I say? We are captives and must  
yield.

*Caly.* Ay, villains, you must yield, and under Turkish  
yokes

Shall groaning bear the burden of our ire;  
And, Barabas, as erst we promised thee,  
For thy desert we make thee governor; 10  
Use them at thy discretion.

*Bar.* Thanks, my lord.

*Fern.* O fatal day, to fall into the hands  
Of such a traitor and unhallowed Jew!  
What greater misery could Heaven inflict?

*Caly.* 'Tis our command: and, Barabas, we give  
To guard thy person these our Janizaries:  
Entreat them well, as we have used thee.  
And now, brave bassoes, come, we'll walk about  
The ruined town, and see the wreck we made —  
Farewell, brave Jew; farewell, great Barabas! 20

*Bar.* May all good fortune follow Calymath!  
[*Exeunt CALYMATH and Bassoes.*]

And now, as entrance to our safety,  
To prison with the governor and these  
Captains, his consorts and confederates.

*Fern.* O villain! Heaven will be revenged on thee.

*Bar.* Away! no more; let him not trouble me.

[*Exeunt Turks, with FERNEZE and Knights.*"]

Thus hast thou gotten, by thy policy,  
No simple place, no small authority,  
I now am governor of Malta; true —  
But Malta hates me, and, in hating me, 30  
My life's in danger, and what boots it thee,  
Poor Barabas, to be the governor,  
Whenas thy life shall be at their command?  
No, Barabas, this must be looked into;  
And, since by wrong thou gott'st authority,



Maintain it bravely by firm policy,  
At least unprofitably lose it not:  
For he that liveth in authority,  
And neither gets him friends, nor fills his bags,  
Lives like the ass, that Æsop speaketh of, 40  
That labours with a load of bread and wine,  
And leaves it off to snap on thistle-tops:  
But Barabas will be more circumspect.  
Begin betimes; occasion's bald behind;  
Slip not thine opportunity, for fear too late  
Thou seek'st for much, but canst not compass it. —  
Within here!

*Enter FERNEZE, with a Guard*

*Fern.* My lord?

*Bar.* Ay, "lord"; thus slaves will learn.  
Now, governor — stand by there, wait within.

[*Exeunt* Guard.]

This is the reason that I sent for thee;  
Thou seest thy life and Malta's happiness 50  
Are at my arbitrament; and Barabas  
At his discretion may dispose of both;  
Now tell me, governor, and plainly too,  
What think'st thou shall become of it and thee?

*Fern.* This, Barabas; since things are in thy power,  
I see no reason but of Malta's wreck,  
Nor hope of thee but extreme cruelty;  
Nor fear I death, nor will I flatter thee.

*Bar.* Governor, good words; be not so furious.  
'Tis not thy life which can avail me aught; 60  
Yet you do live, and live for me you shall:  
And, as for Malta's ruin, think you not  
'Twere slender policy for Barabas  
To dispossess himself of such a place?  
For sith, as once you said, 'tis in this isle,  
In Malta here, that I have got my goods,

And in this city still have had success,  
And now at length am grown your governor,  
Yourselves shall see it shall not be forgot:  
For, as a friend not known, but in distress, 70  
I'll rear up Malta, now remediless.

*Fern.* Will Barabas recover Malta's loss?  
Will Barabas be good to Christians?

*Bar.* What wilt thou give me, governor, to procure  
A dissolution of the slavish bands  
Wherein the Turk hath yoked your land and you?  
What will you give me if I render you  
The life of Calymath, surprise his men,  
And in an outhouse of the city shut  
His soldiers, till I have consumed 'em all with fire? 80  
What will you give him that procureth this?

*Fern.* Do but bring this to pass which thou pretendest,  
Deal truly with us as thou intimatest,  
And I will send amongst the citizens,  
And by my letters privately procure  
Great sums of money for thy recompense:  
Nay more, do this, and live thou governor still.

*Bar.* Nay, do thou this, Ferneze, and be free;  
Governor, I enlarge thee; live with me,  
Go walk about the city, see thy friends: 90  
Tush, send not letters to 'em, go thyself,  
And let me see what money thou canst make;  
Here is my hand that I'll set Malta free:  
And thus we cast it: to a solemn feast  
I will invite young Selim Calymath,  
Where be thou present only to perform  
One stratagem that I'll impart to thee,  
Wherein no danger shall betide thy life,  
And I will warrant Malta free for ever.

*Fern.* Here is my hand; believe me, Barabas, 100  
I will be there, and do as thou desirest.  
When is the time?

*Bar.* Governor, presently:

For Calymath, when he hath viewed the town,  
Will take his leave and sail towards Ottoman.

*Fern.* Then will I, Barabas, about this coin,  
And bring it with me to thee in the evening.

*Bar.* Do so, but fail not; now farewell, Ferneze! —

[*Exit FERNEZE.*

And thus far roundly goes the business:  
Thus loving neither, will I live with both,  
Making a profit of my policy;  
And he from whom my most advantage comes  
Shall be my friend.

110

This is the life we Jews are used to lead;  
And reason too, for Christians do the like.  
Well, now about effecting this device;  
First to surprise great Selim's soldiers,  
And then to make provision for the feast,  
That at one instant all things may be done:  
My policy detests prevention:

To what event my secret purpose drives,  
I know; and they shall witness with their lives. [*Exit.*

120

#### SCENE IV<sup>a</sup>

*Enter CALYMATH and Bassoos*

*Caly.* Thus have we viewed the city, seen the sack,  
And caused the ruins to be new-repaired,  
Which with our bombards' shot and basilisk[s]  
We rent in sunder at our entry:  
And now I see the situation,  
And how secure this conquered island stands  
Environed with the Mediterranean Sea,  
Strong-countermined with other petty isles;  
And, toward Calabria, backed by Sicily,  
(Where Syracusian Dionysius reigned,)  
Two lofty turrets that command the town;  
I wonder how it could be conquered thus.

10

*Enter a Messenger*

*Mess.* From Barabas, Malta's governor, I bring  
A message unto mighty Calymath;  
Hearing his sovereign was bound for sea,  
To sail to Turkey, to great Ottoman,  
He humbly would entreat your majesty  
To come and see his homely citadel,  
And banquet with him ere thou leav'st the isle.

*Caly.* To banquet with him in his citadel? 20  
I fear me, messenger, to feast my train  
Within a town of war so lately pillaged,  
Will be too costly and too troublesome:  
Yet would I gladly visit Barabas  
For well has Barabas deserved of us.

*Mess.* Selim, for that, thus saith the governor,  
That he hath in his store a pearl so big,  
So precious, and withal so orient,  
As, be it valued but indifferently,  
The price thereof will serve to entertain 30  
Selim and all his soldiers for a month;  
Therefore he humbly would entreat your highness  
Not to depart till he has feasted you.

*Caly.* I cannot feast my men in Malta walls,  
Except he place his tables in the streets.

*Mess.* Know, Selim, that there is a monastery  
Which standeth as an outhouse to the town:  
There will he banquet them; but thee at home,  
With all thy bassoes and brave followers.

*Caly.* Well, tell the governor we grant his suit, 40  
We'll in this summer evening feast with him.

*Mess.* I shall, my lord. [Exit.

*Caly.* And now, bold bassoes, let us to our tents,  
And meditate how we may grace us best  
To solemnize our governor's great feast. [Exeunt.

SCENE V<sup>n</sup>

*Enter FERNEZE, Knights, and MARTIN DEL BOSCO*

*Fern.* In this, my countrymen, be ruled by me,  
Have special care that no man sally forth  
Till you shall hear a culverin discharged  
By him that bears the linstock, kindled thus;  
Then issue out and come to rescue me,  
For happily I shall be in distress,  
Or you released of this servitude.

*1st Knight.* Rather than thus to live as Turkish thralls,  
What will we not adventure?

*Fern.* On then, begone.

10

*Knights.* Farewell, grave governor!

*[Exeunt on one side Knights and MARTIN DEL BOSCO; on the other FERNEZE.]*

SCENE VI<sup>n</sup>

*Enter, above, BARABAS, with a hammer, very busy;  
and Carpenters*

*Bar.* How stand the cords? How hang these hinges?  
fast?

Are all the cranes and pulleys sure?

*1st Carp.*

All fast.

*Bar.* Leave nothing loose, all levelled to my mind.  
Why now I see that you have art indeed.  
There, carpenters, divide that gold amongst you:

*[Gives money.]*

Go swill in bowls of sack and muscadine!  
Down to the cellar, taste of all my wines.

*1st Carp.* We shall, my lord, and thank you.

*[Exeunt Carpenters.]*

*Bar.* And, if you like them, drink your fill and die:  
For so I live, perish may all the world!

10

Now Selim Calymath return me word  
That thou wilt come, and I am satisfied.

*Enter Messenger*

Now, sirrah, what, will he come?

*Mess.* He will; and has commanded all his men  
To come ashore, and march through Malta streets,  
That thou mayest feast them in thy citadel.

*Bar.* Then now are all things as my wish would have  
'em,  
There wanteth nothing but the governor's pelf,  
And see, he brings it.

*Enter FERNEZE*

Now, governor, the sum.

*Fern.* With free consent, a hundred thousand pounds.

*Bar.* Pounds say'st thou, governor? well, since it is  
no more, 21

I'll satisfy myself with that; nay, keep it still,

For, if I keep not promise, trust not me.

And, governor, now partake my pol'cy:

First, for his army; they are sent before,

Entered the monastery, and underneath

In several places are fie d-pieces pitched,

Bombards, whole barrels full of gunpowder,

That on the sudden shall dissever it,

And batter all the stones about their ears, 30

Whence none can possibly escape alive.

Now, as for Calymath and his consorts,

Here have I made a dainty gallery,

The floor whereof, this cable being cut,

Doth fall asunder; so that it doth sink

Into a deep pit past recovery.

Here, hold that knife [*Throws down a knife*], and when  
thou seest he comes,

And with his bassoes shall be blithely set,

A warning-piece shall be shot off from the tower,  
To give thee knowledge when to cut the cord 40  
And fire the house; say, will not this be brave?

*Fern.* Oh, excellent! here, hold thee, Barabas,  
I trust thy word, take what I promised thee.

*Bar.* No, governor, I'll satisfy thee first,  
Thou shalt not live in doubt of anything.  
Stand close, for here they come [*FERNEZE retires*]. Why,  
is not this

A kingly kind of trade to purchase towns  
By treachery and sell 'em by deceit?  
Now tell me, worldlings, underneath the sun  
If greater falsehood ever has been done? 50

*Enter CALYMATH and Bassoos*

*Caly.* Come, my companion bassoos; see, I pray,  
How busy Barabas is there above  
To entertain us in his gallery;  
Let us salute him. Save thee, Barabas!

*Bar.* Welcome, great Calymath!

*Fern.* How the slave jeers at him. [Aside.]

*Bar.* Will't please thee, mighty Selim Calymath,  
To ascend our homely stairs?

*Caly.* Ay, Barabas —  
Come, bassoos, ascend. 60

*Fern.* [*coming forward*]. Stay, Calymath!  
For I will show thee greater courtesy  
Than Barabas would have afforded thee.

*Knight* [*within*]. Sound a charge there!

[*A charge sounded within. FERNEZE cuts the  
cord: the floor of the gallery gives way, and  
BARABAS falls into a caldron.*]

*Enter MARTIN DEL BOSCO and Knights*

*Caly.* How now! what means this?

*Bar.* Help, help me! Christians, help!

*Fern.* See, Calymath, this was devised for thee!

*Caly.* Treason! treason! bassoes, fly!

*Fern.* No, Selim, do not fly;

See his end first, and fly then if thou canst.

70

*Bar.* Oh, help me, Selim! help me, Christians!

Governor, why stand you all so pitiless?

*Fern.* Should I in pity of thy complaints or thee,  
Accursèd Barabas, base Jew, relent?

No, thus I'll see thy treachery repaid,

But wish thou hadst behaved thee otherwise.

*Bar.* You will not help me then?

*Fern.* No, villain, no.

*Bar.* And, villains, know you cannot help me now. —

Then, Barabas, breathe forth thy latest hate,

And in the fury of thy torments strive

80

To end thy life with resolution.

Know, governor, 'twas I that slew thy son;

I framed the challenge that did make them meet:

Know, Calymath, I aimed thy overthrow,

And had I but escaped this stratagem,

I would have brought confusion on you all,

Damned Christian dogs! and Turkish infidels!

But now begins the extremity of heat

To pinch me with intolerable pangs:

Die, life! fly, soul! tongue, curse thy fill, and die! [*Dies.*

*Caly.* Tell me, you Christians, what doth this portend?

*Fern.* This train he laid to have entrapped thy life;

Now, Selim, note the unhallowed deeds of Jews:

93

Thus he determined to have handled thee,

But I have rather chose to save thy life.

*Caly.* Was this the banquet he prepared for us?

Let's hence, lest further mischief be pretended.

*Fern.* Nay, Selim, stay; for, since we have thee here,

We will not let thee part so suddenly:

Besides, if we should let thee go, all's one,

100

For with thy galleys could'st thou not get hence,

Without fresh men to rig and furnish them.



*Caly.* Tush, governor, take thou no care for that,  
My men are all aboard,  
And do attend my coming there by this.

*Fern.* Why, heard'st thou not the trumpet sound a  
charge?

*Caly.* Yes, what of that?

*Fern.* Why, then the house was fired,  
Blown up, and all thy soldiers massacred.

*Caly.* O monstrous treason!

*Fern.* A Jew's courtesy:

110

For he that did by treason work our fall,  
By treason hath delivered thee to us:  
Know, therefore, till thy father hath made good  
The ruins done to Malta and to us,  
Thou canst not part; for Malta shall be freed,  
Or Selim ne'er return to Ottoman.

*Caly.* Nay, rather, Christians, let me go to Turkey,  
In person there to mediate your peace;  
To keep me here will not advantage you.

*Fern.* Content thee, Calymath, here thou must stay,  
And live in Malta prisoner; for, come all the world 111  
To rescue thee, so will we guard us now,  
As sooner shall they drink the ocean dry  
Than conquer Malta, or endanger us.  
So march away, and let due praise be given  
Neither to Fate nor Fortune, but to Heaven. [*Exeunt.*

# EDWARD THE SECOND

## *DRAMATIS PERSONÆ*<sup>a</sup>

**KING EDWARD THE SECOND.**

**PRINCE EDWARD**, his Son, afterwards King Edward the Third.

**EARL OF KENT**, Brother of King Edward the Second.

**GAVESTON.**

**WARWICK.**

**LANCASTER.**

**PEMBROKE.**

**ARUNDEL.**

**LEICESTER.**

**BERKELEY.**

**MORTIMER**, the elder.

**MORTIMER**, the younger, his Nephew.

**SPENSER**, the elder.

**SPENSER**, the younger, his Son.

**ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY.**

**BISHOP OF COVENTRY.**

**BISHOP OF WINCHESTER.**

**BALDOCK.**

**BEAUMONT.**

**TRUSSEL.**

**GURNEY.**

**MATREVIS.**

**LIGHTBORN.**

**SIR JOHN OF HAINAULT.**

**LEVUNE.**

**RICE AP HOWEL.**

**Abbot, Monks, Herald, Lords, Poor Men, James, Mower,**  
**Champion, Messengers, Soldiers, and Attendants.**

**QUEEN ISABELLA**, Wife of King Edward the Second.

**Niece to King Edward the Second, Daughter of the Duke of**  
**Gloucester.**

**Ladies.**

# EDWARD THE SECOND

## ACT THE FIRST

### SCENE I<sup>a</sup>

*Enter GAVESTON, reading a letter*

*Gav.* "My father is deceased! Come, Gaveston,  
And share the kingdom with thy dearest friend."

Ah! words that make me surfeit with delight!

What greater bliss can hap to Gaveston

Than live and be the favourite of a king!

Sweet prince, I come; these, these thy amorous lines

Might have enforced me to have swum from France,

And, like Leander, gasped upon the sand,

So thou would'st smile, and take me in thine arms.

The sight of London to my exiled eyes

10

Is as Elysium to a new-come soul;

Not that I love the city, or the men,

But that it harbours him I hold so dear —

The king, upon whose bosom let me lie,

And with the world be still at enmity.

What need the arctic people love starlight,

To whom the sun shines both by day and night?

Farewell base stooping to the lordly peers!

My knee shall bow to none but to the king.

As for the multitude, that are but sparks,

20

Raked up in embers of their poverty; —

*Tanti;* I'll fawn first on the wind

That glanceth at my lips, and flieth away.

But how now, what are these?

*Enter three Poor Men*

*Poor Men.* Such as desire your worship's service.

*Gav.* What canst thou do?

*1st P. Man.* I can ride.

*Gav.* But I have no horse. What art thou?

*2nd P. Man.* A traveller.

*Gav.* Let me see — thou would'st do well 30  
To wait at my trencher and tell me lies at dinner-time;  
And as I like your discoursing, I'll have you.  
And what art thou?

*3rd P. Man.* A soldier, that hath served against the  
Scot.

*Gav.* Why, there are hospitals for such as you;  
I have no war, and therefore, sir, begone.

*3rd P. Man.* Farewell, and perish by a soldier's hand,  
That would'st reward them with an hospital.

*Gav.* Ay, ay, these words of his move me as much  
As if a goose would play the porcupine, 40  
And dart her plumes, thinking to pierce my breast.  
But yet it is no pain to speak men fair;  
I'll flatter these, and make them live in hope. [Aside.  
You know that I came lately out of France,  
And yet I have not viewed my lord the king;  
If I speed well, I'll entertain you all.

*All.* We thank your worship.

*Gav.* I have some business. Leave me to myself.

*All.* We will wait here about the court. [Exeunt.

*Gav.* Do; these are not men for me: 50  
I must have wanton poets, pleasant wits,  
Musicians, that with touching of a string  
May draw the pliant king which way I please.  
Music and poetry is his delight;  
Therefore I'll have Italian masks by night,  
Sweet speeches, comedies, and pleasing shows;  
And in the day, when he shall walk abroad,  
Like sylvan nymphs my pages shall be clad;

My men, like satyrs grazing on the lawns,  
Shall with their goat-feet dance the antic hay. 60  
Sometime a lovely boy<sup>n</sup> in Dian's shape,  
With hair that gilds the water as it glides,  
Crowns of pearl about his naked arms,  
And in his sportful hands an olive-tree,  
To hide those parts which men delight to see,  
Shall bathe him in a spring; and there hard by,  
One like Actæon peeping through the grove,  
Shall by the angry goddess be transformed,  
And running in the likeness of an hart  
By yelping hounds pulled down, shall seem to die; 70  
Such things as these best please his majesty.  
Here comes my lord the king, and the nobles  
From the parliament. I'll stand aside. [Retires.

*Enter* KING EDWARD, LANCASTER, *the* Elder MORTIMER,  
Young MORTIMER, KENT, WARWICK, PEMBROKE,  
and Attendants

*K. Edw.* Lancaster!<sup>a</sup>

*Lan.* My lord.

*Gav.* That Earl of Lancaster do I abhor. [Aside.

*K. Edw.* Will you not grant me this?—In spite of them  
I'll have my will; and these two Mortimers,  
That cross me thus, shall know I am displeased. [Aside.

*E. Mor.* If you love us, my lord, hate Gaveston. 80

*Gav.* That villain Mortimer! I'll be his death.

[Aside.

*Y. Mor.* Mine uncle here, this earl, and I myself,  
Were sworn to your father at his death,  
That he should ne'er return into the realm:  
And know, my lord, ere I will break my oath,  
This sword of mine, that should offend your foes,  
Shall sleep within the scabbard at thy need,  
And underneath thy banners march who will,  
For Mortimer will hang his armour up.

*Gav. Mort Dieu!*

*[Aside. 90*

*K. Edw.* Well, Mortimer, I'll make thee rue these words.

Beseems it thee to contradict thy king?  
Frown'st thou thereat, aspiring Lancaster?  
The sword shall plane the furrows of thy brows,  
And hew these knees that now are grown so stiff.  
I will have Gaveston; and you shall know  
What danger 'tis to stand against your king.

*Gav.* Well done, Ned!

*[Aside. 100*

*Lan.* My lord, why do you thus incense your peers,  
That naturally would love and honour you,  
But for that base and obscure Gaveston?  
Four earldoms<sup>n</sup> have I, besides Lancaster —  
Derby, Salisbury, Lincoln, Leicester —  
These will I sell, to give my soldiers pay,  
Ere Gaveston shall stay within the realm;  
Therefore, if he be come, expel him straight.

*Kent.* Barons and earls, your pride hath made me mute;  
But now I'll speak, and to the proof, I hope.  
I do remember, in my father's days,  
Lord Percy of the north, being highly moved,  
Braved Moubery in presence of the king;  
For which, had not his highness loved him well,  
He should have lost his head; but with his look  
The undaunted spirit of Percy was appeased,  
And Moubery and he were reconciled:  
Yet dare you brave the king unto his face. —  
Brother,<sup>n</sup> revenge it, and let these their heads  
Preach upon poles, for trespass of their tongues.

*War.* Oh, our heads!

*K. Edw.* Ay, yours; and therefore I would wish you  
grant —

*War.* Bridle thy anger, gentle Mortimer.

*Y. Mor.* I cannot, nor I will not; I must speak. —  
Cousin, our hands I hope shall fence our heads,  
And strike off his that makes you threaten us.

Come, uncle, let us leave the brainsick king,  
And henceforth parley with our naked swords.

*E. Mor.* Wiltshire<sup>a</sup> hath men enough to save our heads.

*War.* All Warwickshire will love him for my sake.

*Lan.* And northward Gaveston hath many friends. —  
Adieu, my lord; and either change your mind, 130  
Or look to see the throne, where you should sit,  
To float in blood; and at thy wanton head,  
The glozing head of thy base minion thrown.

[*Exeunt all except* KING EDWARD, KENT, GAVESTON and Attendants.]

*K. Edw.* I cannot brook these haughty menaces;  
Am I a king, and must be overruled? —  
Brother, display my ensigns in the field;  
I'll bandy with the barons and the earls,  
And either die or live with Gaveston.

*Gav.* I can no longer keep me from my lord.

[*Comes forward.*]

*K. Edw.* What, Gaveston! welcome! — Kiss not my  
hand — 140

Embrace me, Gaveston, as I do thee.  
Why should'st thou kneel? know'st thou not who I am?  
Thy friend, thyself, another Gaveston!  
Not Hylas was more mourned of Hercules,  
Than thou hast been of me since thy exile.

*Gav.* And since I went from hence, no soul in hell  
Hath felt more torment than poor Gaveston.

*K. Edw.* I know it. — Brother, welcome home my  
friend.

Now let the treacherous Mortimers conspire,  
And that high-minded Earl of Lancaster: 150  
I have my wish, in that I joy thy sight;  
And sooner shall the sea o'erwhelm my land,  
Than bear the ship that shall transport thee hence.  
I here create thee Lord High Chamberlain,  
Chief Secretary to the state and me,  
Earl of Cornwall, King and Lord of Man.



*Gav.* My lord, these titles far exceed my worth.

*Kent.* Brother, the least of these may well suffice  
For one of greater birth than Gaveston.

*K. Edw.* Cease, brother: for I cannot brook these  
words. 160

Thy worth, sweet friend, is far above my gifts,  
Therefore, to equal it, receive my heart;  
If for these dignities thou be envied,  
I'll give thee more; for, but to honour thee,  
Is Edward pleased with kingly regiment.  
Fear'st thou thy person? thou shalt have a guard:  
Wantest thou gold? go to my treasury:  
Wouldst thou be loved and feared? receive my seal;  
Save or condemn, and in our name command  
Whatso thy mind affects, or fancy likes. 170

*Gav.* It shall suffice me to enjoy your love,  
Which whiles I have, I think myself as great  
As Cæsar riding in the Roman street,  
With captive kings at his triumphant car.

*Enter the BISHOP of COVENTRY*

*K. Edw.* Whither goes my lord of Coventry so fast?

*B. of Cov.* To celebrate your father's exequies.  
But is that wicked Gaveston returned?

*K. Edw.* Ay, priest, and lives to be revenged on  
thee,  
That wert the only cause of his exile.

*Gav.* 'Tis true; and but for reverence of these robes,  
Thou should'st not plod one foot beyond this place. 181

*B. of Cov.* I did no more than I was bound to do;  
And, Gaveston, unless thou be reclaimed,  
As then I did incense the parliament,  
So will I now, and thou shalt back to France.

*Gav.* Saving your reverence, you must pardon me.

*K. Edw.* Throw off his golden mitre, rend his stole,  
And in the channel christen him anew.

*Kent.* Ah, brother, lay not violent hands on him!  
For he'll complain unto the see of Rome. 190

*Gav.* Let him complain unto the see of hell;  
I'll be revenged on him for my exile.

*K. Edw.* No, spare his life, but seize upon his goods;  
Be thou lord bishop and receive his rents,  
And make him serve thee as thy chaplain:  
I give him thee — here, use him as thou wilt.

*Gav.* He shall to prison, and there die in bolts.

*K. Edw.* Ay, to the Tower, the Fleet, or where thou  
wilt.

*B. of Cov.* For this offence, be thou accurst of God!

*K. Edw.* Who's there? Convey this priest to the  
Tower. 200

*B. of Cov.* True, true.

*K. Edw.* But, in the meantime, Gaveston, away,  
And take possession of his house and goods.  
Come, follow me, and thou shalt have my guard  
To see it done, and bring thee safe again.

*Gav.* What should a priest do with so fair a house?  
A prison may best beseem his holiness. [Exeunt.

## SCENE II<sup>a</sup>

*Enter on one side the two MORTIMERS; on the other,  
WARWICK and LANCASTER*

*War.* 'Tis true, the bishop is in the Tower,  
And goods and body given to Gaveston.

*Lan.* What! will they tyrannize upon the church?  
Ah, wicked king! accursèd Gaveston!  
This ground, which is corrupted with their steps,  
Shall be their timeless sepulchre or mine.

*Y. Mor.* Well, let that peevish Frenchman guard him  
sure;  
Unless his breast be sword-proof he shall die.

*E. Mor.* How now! why droops the Earl of Lancaster?

*Y. Mor.* Wherefore is Guy of Warwick discontent?

*Lan.* That villain Gaveston is made an earl. 11

*E. Mor.* An earl!

*War.* Ay, and besides Lord Chamberlain of the realm,  
And Secretary too, and Lord of Man.

*E. Mor.* We may not, nor we will not suffer this.

*Y. Mor.* Why post we not from hence to levy men?

*Lan.* "My Lord of Cornwall," now at every word!  
And happy is the man whom he vouchsafes,  
For vailing of his bonnet, one good look.  
Thus, arm in arm, the king and he doth march: 20  
Nay more, the guard upon his lordship waits;  
And all the court begins to flatter him.

*War.* Thus leaning on the shoulder of the king,  
He nods and scorns and smiles at those that pass.

*E. Mor.* Doth no man take exceptions at the slave?

*Lan.* All stomach him, but none dare speak a word.

*Y. Mor.* Ah, that bewrays their baseness, Lancaster!  
Were all the earls and barons of my mind,  
We'd hale him from the bosom of the king,  
And at the court-gate hang the peasant up, 30  
Who, swoln with venom of ambitious pride,  
Will be the ruin of the realm and us.

*War.* Here comes my lord of Canterbury's grace.

*Lan.* His countenance bewrays he is displeased.

*Enter the ARCHBISHOP of CANTERBURY and an  
Attendant*

*A. of Cant.* First were his sacred garments rent and  
torn,  
Then laid they violent hands upon him; next  
Himself imprisoned, and his goods asseized:

This certify the Pope — away, take horse. [*Exit Attend.*]

*Lan.* My lord, will you take arms against the king?

*A. of Cant.* What need I? God himself is up in arms,  
When violence is offered to the church. 41

*Y. Mor.* Then will you join with us, that be his peers,  
To banish or behead that Gaveston?

*A. of Cant.* What else, my lords? for it concerns me  
near;  
The bishopric of Coventry is his.

*Enter QUEEN ISABELLA*

*Y. Mor.* Madam, whither walks your majesty so fast?

*Q. Isab.* Unto the forest," gentle Mortimer,  
To live in grief and baleful discontent;  
For now, my lord, the king regards me not,  
But dotes upon the love of Gaveston. 50  
He claps his cheeks, and hangs about his neck,  
Smiles in his face, and whispers in his ears;  
And when I come he frowns, as who should say,  
"Go whither thou wilt, seeing I have Gaveston."

*E. Mor.* Is it not strange that he is thus bewitched?

*Y. Mor.* Madam, return unto the court again:  
That sly inveigling Frenchman we'll exile,  
Or lose our lives; and yet, ere that day come,  
The king shall lose his crown; for we have power,  
And courage too, to be revenged at full. 60

*A. of Cant.* But yet lift not your swords against the  
king.

*Lan.* No; but we will lift Gaveston from hence.

*War.* And war must be the means, or he'll stay still.

*Q. Isab.* Then let him stay; for rather than my lord  
Shall be oppressed with civil mutinies,  
I will endure a melancholy life,  
And let him frolic with his minion.

*A. of Cant.* My lords, to ease all this, but hear me  
speak:

We and the rest, that are his counsellors,  
Will meet, and with a general consent 70  
Confirm his banishment with our hands and seals.

*Lan.* What we confirm the king will frustrate.

*Y. Mor.* Then may we lawfully revolt from him.

*War.* But say, my lord, where shall this meeting be?

*A. of Cant.* At the New Temple.

*Y. Mor.* Content.

*A. of Cant.* And, in the meantime, I'll entreat you all  
To cross to Lambeth, and there stay with me.

*Lan.* Come then, let's away.

*Y. Mor.* Madam, farewell! 80

*Q. Isab.* Farewell, sweet Mortimer; and, for my sake,  
Forbear to levy arms against the king.

*Y. Mor.* Ay, if words will serve; if not, I must.

[*Exeunt.*]

### SCENE III<sup>a</sup>

*Enter GAVESTON and KENT*

*Gav.* Edmund, the mighty Prince of Lancaster,  
That hath more earldoms than an ass can bear,  
And both the Mortimers, two goodly men,  
With Guy of Warwick, that redoubted knight,  
Are gone toward Lambeth — there let them remain.

[*Exeunt.*]

### SCENE IV<sup>a</sup>

*Enter LANCASTER, WARWICK, PEMBROKE, the Elder  
MORTIMER, Young MORTIMER, the ARCHBISHOP of  
CANTERBURY and Attendants*

*Lan.* Here is the form of Gaveston's exile:  
May it please your lordship to subscribe your name.

*A. of Cant.* Give me the paper.

[*He subscribes, as do the others after him.*]

*Lan.* Quick, quick, my lord; I long to write my name.

*War.* But I long more to see him banished hence.

*Y. Mor.* The name of Mortimer shall fright the king,  
Unless he be declined from that base peasant.

*Enter* KING EDWARD, GAVESTON, and KENT

**K. Edw.** What, are you moved that Gaveston sits here?

It is our pleasure; we will have it so.

**Lan.** Your grace doth well to place him by your side,  
For nowhere else the new earl is so safe. 11

**E. Mor.** What man of noble birth can brook this sight?

*Quam male conveniunt!*

See what a scornful look the peasant casts!

**Pem.** Can kingly lions fawn on creeping ants?

**War.** Ignoble vassal, that like Phaeton  
Aspir'st unto the guidance of the sun!

**Y. Mor.** Their downfall is at hand, their forces down:  
We will not thus be faced and overpeered.

**K. Edw.** Lay hands on that traitor Mortimer! 20

**E. Mor.** Lay hands on that traitor Gaveston!

**Kent.** Is this the duty that you owe your king?

**War.** We know our duties — let him know his peers.

**K. Edw.** Whither will you bear him? Stay, or ye shall die.

**E. Mor.** We are no traitors; therefore threaten not.

**Gav.** No, threaten not, my lord, but pay them home!  
Were I a king —

**Y. Mor.** Thou villain, wherefore talk'st thou of a king,

That hardly art a gentleman by birth?

**K. Edw.** Were he a peasant, being my minion,<sup>a</sup> 30  
I'll make the proudest of you stoop to him.

**Lan.** My lord, you may not thus disparage us. —  
Away, I say, with hateful Gaveston!

**E. Mor.** And with the Earl of Kent that favours him.

[Attendants remove KENT and GAVESTON.]

**K. Edw.** Nay, then, lay violent hands upon your king,

Here, Mortimer, sit thou in Edward's throne:

Warwick and Lancaster, wear you my crown:  
Was ever king thus overruled as I?

*Lan.* Learn then to rule us better, and the realm.

*Y. Mor.* What we have done, our heart-blood shall  
maintain. 40

*War.* Think you that we can brook this upstart's pride?

*K. Edw.* Anger and wrathful fury stops my speech.

*A. of Cant.* Why are you moved? be patient, my lord,  
And see what we your counsellors have done.

*Y. Mor.* My lords, now let us all be resolute,  
And either have our wills, or lose our lives.

*K. Edw.* Meet you for this, proud overbearing peers?  
Ere my sweet Gaveston shall part from me,  
This isle shall fleet upon the ocean,  
And wander to the unfrequented Inde. 50

*A. of Cant.* You know that I am legate to the Pope;  
On your allegiance to the see of Rome,  
Subscribe, as we have done, to his exile.

*Y. Mor.* Curse him, if he refuse; and then may we  
Depose him and elect another king.

*K. Edw.* Ay, there it goes! but yet I will not yield:  
Curse me, depose me, do the worst you can.

*Lan.* Then linger not, my lord, but do it straight.

*A. of Cant.* Remember how the bishop was abused!  
Either banish him that was the cause thereof, 60  
Or I will presently discharge these lords  
Of duty and allegiance due to thee.

*K. Edw.* It boots me not to threat — I must speak fair:  
[*Aside.*

The legate of the Pope will be obeyed.  
My lord, you shall be Chancellor of the realm;  
Thou, Lancaster, High Admiral of our fleet;  
Young Mortimer and his uncle shall be earls;  
And you, Lord Warwick, President of the North;  
And thou of Wales. If this content you not,  
Make several kingdoms of this monarchy, 70  
And share it equally amongst you all,

So I may have some nook or corner left,  
To frolic with my dearest Gaveston.

*A. of Cant.* Nothing shall alter us — we are resolved.

*Lan.* Come, come, subscribe.

*Y. Mor.* Why should you love him whom the world  
hates so?

*K. Edw.* Because he loves me more than all the world.  
Ah, none but rude and savage-minded men  
Would seek the ruin of my Gaveston;  
You that be noble-born should pity him. 80

*War.* You that are princely-born should shake him off:  
For shame subscribe, and let the lown depart.

*E. Mor.* Urge him, my lord.

*A. of Cant.* Are you content to banish him the realm?

*K. Edw.* I see I must, and therefore am content:  
Instead of ink I'll write it with my tears. [*Subscribes.*

*Y. Mor.* The king is lovesick for his minion.

*K. Edw.* 'Tis done — and now, accursèd hand, fall off!

*Lan.* Give it me — I'll have it published in the streets.

*Y. Mor.* I'll see him presently dispatched away. 90

*A. of Cant.* Now is my heart at ease.

*War.* And so is mine.

*Pem.* This will be good news to the common sort.

*E. Mor.* Be it or no, he shall not linger here.

[*Exeunt all except KING EDWARD.*

*K. Edw.* How fast they run to banish him I love!  
They would not stir, were it to do me good.  
Why should a king be subject to a priest?  
Proud Rome! that hatchest such imperial grooms,  
For these thy superstitious taper-lights,  
Wherewith thy antichristian churches blaze,  
I'll fire thy crazèd buildings, and enforce 100  
The papal towers to kiss the lowly ground!  
With slaughtered priests make Tiber's channel swell,  
And banks raised higher with their sepulchres!  
As for the peers, that back the clergy thus,  
If I be king, not one of them shall live.



*Re-enter GAVESTON*

*Gav.* My lord, I hear it whispered everywhere,  
That I am banished, and must fly the land.

*K. Edw.* 'Tis true, sweet Gaveston — Oh! were it  
false!

The legate of the Pope will have it so,  
And thou must hence, or I shall be deposed. 110  
But I will reign to be revenged of them;  
And therefore, sweet friend, take it patiently.  
Live where thou wilt, I'll send thee gold enough;  
And long thou shalt not stay, or if thou dost,  
I'll come to thee; my love shall ne'er decline.

*Gav.* Is all my hope turned to this hell of grief?

*K. Edw.* Rend not my heart with thy too-piercing  
words:

Thou from this land, I from myself am banished.

*Gav.* To go from hence grieves not poor Gaveston;  
But to forsake you, in whose gracious looks 120  
The blessedness of Gaveston remains:  
For nowhere else seeks he felicity.

*K. Edw.* And only this torments my wretched soul,  
That, whether I will or no, thou must depart.  
Be governor of Ireland in my stead,  
And there abide till fortune call thee home.  
Here, take my picture, and let me wear thine;

*[They exchange pictures.]*

Oh, might I keep thee here as I do this,  
Happy were I! but now most miserable!

*Gav.* 'Tis something to be pitied of a king. 130

*K. Edw.* Thou shalt not hence — I'll hide thee,  
Gaveston.

*Gav.* I shall be found, and then 'twill grieve me more.

*K. Edw.* Kind words and mutual talk makes our grief  
greater:

Therefore, with dumb embracement, let us part —  
Stay, Gaveston, I cannot leave thee thus.

*Gav.* For every look, my lord, drops down a tear:  
Seeing I must go, do not renew my sorrow.

*K. Edw.* The time is little that thou hast to stay,  
And, therefore, give me leave to look my fill:

But come, sweet friend, I'll bear thee on thy way. 140

*Gav.* The peers will frown.

*K. Edw.* I pass not for their anger. — Come, let's go;  
Oh, that we might as well return as go.

*Enter* QUEEN ISABELLA

*Q. Isab.* Whither goes my lord?

*K. Edw.* Fawn not on me, French strumpet! get thee  
gone!

*Q. Isab.* On whom but on my husband should I fawn?

*Gav.* On Mortimer! with whom, ungentle queen —  
I say no more — judge you the rest, my lord.

*Q. Isab.* In saying this, thou wrong'st me, Gaveston;  
Is't not enough that thou corrupt'st my lord, 150

And art a bawd to his affections,

But thou must call mine honour thus in question?

*Gav.* I mean not so; your grace must pardon me.

*K. Edw.* Thou art too familiar with that Mortimer,  
And by thy means is Gaveston exiled;

But I would wish thee reconcile the lords,

Or thou shalt ne'er be reconciled to me.

*Q. Isab.* Your highness knows it lies not in my power.

*K. Edw.* Away then! touch me not — Come, Gaveston.

*Q. Isab.* Villain! 'tis thou that robb'st me of my lord.

*Gav.* Madam, 'tis you that rob me of my lord. 161

*K. Edw.* Speak not unto her; let her droop and  
pine.

*Q. Isab.* Wherein, my lord, have I deserved these  
words?

Witness the tears that Isabella sheds,

Witness this heart, that sighing for thee, breaks,

How dear my lord is to poor Isabel.

*K. Edw.* And witness Heaven how dear thou art to me:  
There weep: for till my Gaveston be repealed,  
Assure thyself thou com'st not in my sight.

[*Exeunt EDWARD and GAVESTON.*

*Q. Isab.* O miserable and distressed queen! 170  
Would, when I left sweet France and was embarked,  
That charming Circe walking on the waves,  
Had changed my shape, or at the marriage-day  
The cup of Hymen had been full of poison,  
Or with those arms that twined about my neck  
I had been stifled, and not lived to see  
The king my lord thus to abandon me!  
Like frantic Juno will I fill the earth  
With ghastly murmur of my sighs and cries;  
For never doted Jove on Ganymede 180  
So much as he on cursèd Gaveston:  
But that will more exasperate his wrath;  
I must entreat him, I must speak him fair;  
And be a means to call home Gaveston:  
And yet he'll ever dote on Gaveston;  
And so am I for ever miserable.

*Re-enter LANCASTER, WARWICK, PEMBROKE, the Elder  
MORTIMER, and Young MORTIMER*

*Lan.* Look where the sister of the King of France,  
Sits wringing of her hands, and beats her breast!

*War.* The king, I fear, hath ill-entreated her.

*Pem.* Hard is the heart that injuries such a saint. 190

*Y. Mor.* I know 'tis 'long of Gaveston she weeps.

*E. Mor.* Why, he is gone.

*Y. Mor.* Madam, how fares your grace?

*Q. Isab.* Ah, Mortimer! now breaks the king's hate  
forth,

And he confesseth that he loves me not.

*Y. Mor.* Cry quittance, madam, then; and love not  
him.

*Q. Isab.* No, rather will I die a thousand deaths:  
And yet I love in vain — he'll ne'er love me.

*Lan.* Fear ye not, madam; now his minion's gone,  
His wanton humour will be quickly left.

*Q. Isab.* Oh, never, Lancaster! I am enjoined 200  
To sue upon you all for his repeal;  
This wills my lord, and this must I perform,  
Or else be banished from his highness' presence.

*Lan.* For his repeal, madam! he comes not back,  
Unless the sea cast up his shipwrecked body.

*War.* And to behold so sweet a sight as that,  
There's none here but would run his horse to death.

*Y. Mor.* But, madam, would you have us call him  
home?

*Q. Isab.* Ay, Mortimer, for till he be restored,  
The angry king hath banished me the court; 210  
And, therefore, as thou lov'st and tender'st me,  
Be thou my advocate unto these peers.

*Y. Mor.* What! would you have me plead for Gaves-  
ton?

*E. Mor.* Plead for him that will, I am resolved.

*Lan.* And so am I, my lord: dissuade the queen.

*Q. Isab.* O Lancaster! let him dissuade the king,  
For 'tis against my will he should return.

*War.* Then speak not for him, let the peasant go.

*Q. Isab.* 'Tis for myself I speak, and not for him.

*Pem.* No speaking will prevail, and therefore cease.

*Y. Mor.* Fair queen, forbear to angle for the fish 221  
Which, being caught, strikes him that takes it dead;  
I mean that vile torpedo,<sup>n</sup> Gaveston,  
That now, I hope, floats on the Irish seas.

*Q. Isab.* Sweet Mortimer, sit down by me awhile,  
And I will tell thee reasons of such weight  
As thou wilt soon subscribe to his repeal.

*Y. Mor.* It is impossible; but speak your mind.

*Q. Isab.* Then thus, but none shall hear it but our-  
selves.

[Talks to Y. MORTIMER apart.]

*Lan.* My lords, albeit the queen win Mortimer,  
Will you be resolute, and hold with me? 231

*E. Mor.* Not I, against my nephew.

*Pem.* Fear not, the queen's words cannot alter him.

*War.* No? do but mark how earnestly she pleads!

*Lan.* And see how coldly his looks make denial!

*War.* She smiles; now for my life his mind is changed!

*Lan.* I'll rather lose his friendship, I, than grant.

*Y. Mor.* Well, of necessity it must be so. —

My lords, that I abhor base Gaveston,

I hope your honours make no question, 240

And therefore, though I plead for his repeal,

'Tis not for his sake, but for our avail;

Nay, for the realm's behoof, and for the king's.

*Lan.* Fie, Mortimer, dishonour not thyself!

Can this be true, 'twas good to banish him?

And is this true, to call him home again?

Such reasons make white black, and dark night day.

*Y. Mor.* My lord of Lancaster, mark the respect.

*Lan.* In no respect can contraries be true.

*Q. Isab.* Yet, good my lord, hear what he can allege.

*War.* All that he speaks is nothing; we are resolved.

*Y. Mor.* Do you not wish that Gaveston were dead?

*Pem.* I would he were! 253

*Y. Mor.* Why then, my lord, give me but leave to  
speak.

*E. Mor.* But, nephew, do not play the sophister.

*Y. Mor.* This which I urge is of a burning zeal

To mend the king, and do our country good.

Know you not Gaveston hath store of gold,

Which may in Ireland purchase him such friends,

As he will front the mightiest of us all? 260

And whereas he shall live and be beloved,

'Tis hard for us to work his overthrow.

*War.* Mark you but that, my lord of Lancaster.

*Y. Mor.* But were he here, detested as he is,  
How easily might some base slave be suborned

To greet his lordship with a poniard,  
And none so much as blame the murderer,  
But rather praise him for that brave attempt,  
And in the chronicle enrol his name  
For purging of the realm of such a plague!

270

*Pem.* He saith true.

*Lan.* Ay, but how chance this was not done before?

*Y. Mor.* Because, my lords, it was not thought upon.  
Nay, more, when he shall know it lies in us  
To banish him, and then to call him home,  
'Twill make him vail the top-flag of his pride,  
And fear to offend the meanest nobleman.

*E. Mor.* But how if he do not, nephew?

*Y. Mor.* Then may we with some colour rise in arms;  
For, howsoever we have borne it out,

280

'Tis treason to be up against the king;  
So we shall have the people of our side,  
Which for his father's sake lean to the king,  
But cannot brook a night-grown mushroom,  
Such a one as my lord of Cornwall is,  
Should bear us down of the nobility.  
And when the commons and the nobles join,  
'Tis not the king can buckler Gaveston;  
We'll pull him from the strongest hold he hath.  
My lords, if to perform this I be slack,  
Think me as base a groom as Gaveston.

290

*Lan.* On that condition, Lancaster will grant.

*War.* And so will Pembroke and I.

*E. Mor.* And I.

*Y. Mor.* In this I count me highly gratified,  
And Mortimer will rest at your command.

*Q. Isab.* And when this favour Isabel forgets,  
Then let her live abandoned and forlorn. —  
But see, in happy time, my lord the king,  
Having brought the Earl of Cornwall on his way,<sup>n</sup>  
Is new returned; this news will glad him much;  
Yet not so much as me; I love him more

300

Than he can Gaveston; would he love me  
But half so much, then were I treble-blessed!

*Re-enter KING EDWARD, mourning*

*K. Edw.* He's gone, and for his absence thus I mourn.  
Did never sorrow go so near my heart  
As doth the want of my sweet Gaveston;  
And could my crown's revenue bring him back,  
I would freely give it to his enemies,  
And think I gained, having bought so dear a friend.

*Q. Isab.* Hark! how he harps upon his minion. 310

*K. Edw.* My heart is as an anvil unto sorrow,  
Which beats upon it like the Cyclops' hammers,  
And with the noise turns up my giddy brain,  
And makes me frantic for my Gaveston.  
Ah! had some bloodless Fury rose from hell,  
And with my kingly sceptre struck me dead,  
When I was forced to leave my Gaveston!

*Lan. Diabolo!* What passions call you these?

*Q. Isab.* My gracious lord, I come to bring you news.

*K. Edw.* That you have parleyed with your Mortimer!  
320

*Q. Isab.* That Gaveston, my lord, shall be repealed.

*K. Edw.* Repealed! the news is too sweet to be true.

*Q. Isab.* But will you love me, if you find it so?

*K. Edw.* If it be so, what will not Edward do?

*Q. Isab.* For Gaveston, but not for Isabel.

*K. Edw.* For thee, fair queen, if thou lov'st Gaveston;  
I'll hang a golden tongue about thy neck,  
Seeing thou hast pleaded with so good success.

*Q. Isab.* No other jewels hang about my neck  
Than these, my lord; nor let me have more wealth 330  
Than I may fetch from this rich treasury —  
Oh, how a kiss revives poor Isabel!

*K. Edw.* Once more receive my hand; and let this be  
A second marriage 'twixt thyself and me.

*Q. Isab.* And may it prove more happy than the first!  
My gentle lord, bespeak these nobles fair,  
That wait attendance for a gracious look,  
And on their knees salute your majesty.

*K. Edw.* Courageous Lancaster, embrace thy king!  
And, as gross vapours perish by the sun, 340  
Even so let hatred with thy sovereign's smile.  
Live thou with me as my companion.

*Lan.* This salutation overjoys my heart.

*K. Edw.* Warwick shall be my chiefest counsellor:  
These silver hairs will more adorn my court  
Than gaudy silks, or rich embroidery.  
Chide me, sweet Warwick, if I go astray.

*War.* Slay me, my lord, when I offend your grace.

*K. Edw.* In solemn triumphs, and in public shows,  
Pembroke shall bear the sword before the king. 350

*Pem.* And with this sword Pembroke will fight for  
you.

*K. Edw.* But wherefore walks young Mortimer aside?  
Be thou commander of our royal fleet;  
Or, if that lofty office like thee not,  
I make thee here Lord Marshal of the realm.

*Y. Mor.* My lord, I'll marshal so your enemies,  
As England shall be quiet, and you safe.

*K. Edw.* And as for you, Lord Mortimer of Chirke,  
Whose great achievements in our foreign war  
Deserves no common place, nor mean reward; 360  
Be you the general of the levied troops,  
That now are ready to assail the Scots."

*E. Mor.* In this your grace hath highly honoured  
me,  
For with my nature war doth best agree.

*Q. Isab.* Now is the King of England rich and strong,  
Having the love of his renownèd peers.

*K. Edw.* Ay, Isabel, ne'er was my heart so light. —  
Clerk of the crown, direct our warrant forth  
For Gaveston to Ireland:



*Enter BEAUMONT with warrant*

Beaumont, fly

As fast as Iris or Jove's Mercury.

370

*Bea.* It shall be done, my gracious lord. *[Exit.]*

*K. Edw.* Lord Mortimer, we leave you to your charge.  
Now let us in, and feast it royally.

Against our friend the Earl of Cornwall comes,

We'll have a general tilt and tournament;

And then his marriage shall be solemnized.

For wot you not that I have made him sure

Unto our cousin,<sup>a</sup> the Earl of Gloucester's heir?

*Lan.* Such news we hear, my lord.

*K. Edw.* That day, if not for him, yet for my sake,  
Who in the triumph will be challenger, 381  
Spare for no cost; we will requite your love.

*War.* In this, or aught your highness shall command  
us.

*K. Edw.* Thanks, gentle Warwick: come, let's in and  
revel. *[Exeunt all except the MORTIMERS.]*

*E. Mor.* Nephew, I must go to Scotland; thou stayest  
here.

Leave now t'oppose thyself against the king.

Thou seest by nature he is mild and calm,

And, seeing his mind so dotes on Gaveston,

Let him without controlment have his will.

The mightiest kings have had their minions:

390

Great Alexander loved Hephestion;

The conquering Hercules for Hylas wept;

And for Patroclus stern Achilles drooped.

And not kings only, but the wisest men:

The Roman Tully loved Octavius;

Grave Socrates wild Alcibiades.

Then let his grace, whose youth is flexible,

And promiseth as much as we can wish,

Freely enjoy that vain, light-headed earl;

For riper years will wean him from such toys.

400

*Y. Mor.* Uncle, his wanton humour grieves not me;  
But this I scorn, that one so basely born  
Should by his sovereign's favour grow so pert,  
And riot it with the treasure of the realm.  
While soldiers mutiny for want of pay,  
He wears a lord's revenue on his back,  
And Midas-like, he jets it in the court,  
With base outlandish cullions at his heels,  
Whose proud fantastic liveries make such show,  
As if that Proteus, god of shapes, appeared. 410  
I have not seen a dapper Jack so brisk;  
He wears a short Italian hooded cloak,  
Larded with pearl, and, in his Tuscan cap,  
A jewel of more value than the crown.  
While others walk below, the king and he  
From out a window laugh at such as we,  
And flout our train, and jest at our attire.  
Uncle, 'tis this makes me impatient.

*E. Mor.* But, nephew, now you see the king is changed.

*Y. Mor.* Then so am I, and live to do him service:  
But, whiles I have a sword, a hand, a heart, 421  
I will not yield to any such upstart.

You know my mind; come, uncle, let's away. [*Exeunt.*]

## ACT THE SECOND

### SCENE I<sup>n</sup>

*Enter Young SPENSER and BALDOCK*

*Bald.* Spenser,  
Seeing that our lord the Earl of Gloucester's dead,  
Which of the nobles dost thou mean to serve?

*Y. Spen.* Not Mortimer, nor any of his side;  
Because the king and he are enemies.

Baldock, learn this of me, a factious lord  
Shall hardly do himself good, much less us;  
But he that hath the favour of a king,  
May with one word advance us while we live:

The liberal Earl of Cornwall is the man 10  
On whose good fortune Spenser's hopes depends.

*Bald.* What, mean you then to be his follower?

*Y. Spen.* No, his companion; for he loves me well,  
And would have once preferred me to the king.

*Bald.* But he is banished; there's small hope of  
him.

*Y. Spen.* Ay, for a while; but, Baldock, mark the  
end.

A friend of mine told me in secrecy  
That he's repealed, and sent for back again;  
And even now a post came from the court  
With letters to our lady from the king; 20  
And as she read she smiled, which makes me think  
It is about her lover Gaveston.

*Bald.* 'Tis like enough; for, since he was exiled  
She neither walks abroad, nor comes in sight.  
But I had thought the match had been broke off,

And that his banishment had changed her mind.

*Y. Spen.* Our lady's first love is not wavering;  
My life for thine she will have Gaveston.

*Bald.* Then hope I by her means to be preferred,  
Having read unto her since she was a child. 30

*Y. Spen.* Then, Baldock, you must cast the scholar off,  
And learn to court it like a gentleman.  
'Tis not a black coat and a little band,  
A velvet-caped coat, faced before with serge,  
And smelling to a nosegay all the day,  
Or holding of a napkin in your hand,  
Or saying a long grace at a table's end,  
Or making low legs to a nobleman,  
Or looking downward with your eyelids close,  
And saying, "Truly, an't may please your honour," 40  
Can get you any favour with great men;  
You must be proud, bold, pleasant, resolute,  
And now and then stab, as occasion serves.

*Bald.* Spenser, thou know'st I hate such formal toys,  
And use them but of mere hypocrisy.  
Mine old lord whiles he lived was so precise,  
That he would take exceptions at my buttons,  
And being like pin's heads, blame me for the bigness;  
Which made me curate-like in mine attire,  
Though inwardly licentious enough, 50  
And apt for any kind of villainy.  
I am none of these common pedants, I,  
That cannot speak without *propterea quod*.

*Y. Spen.* But one of those that saith, *quandoquidem*,  
And hath a special gift to form a verb."

*Bald.* Leave off this jesting, here my lady comes.

*Enter* KING EDWARD'S Niece

*Niece.* The grief for his exile was not so much,  
As is the joy of his returning home.  
This letter came from my sweet Gaveston:

What need'st thou, love, thus to excuse thyself? 60

I know thou could'st not come and visit me:

[*Reads.*] "I will not long be from thee, though I die."

This argues the entire love of my lord;

[*Reads.*] "When I forsake thee, death seize on my heart:"

But stay thee here where Gaveston shall sleep.

[*Puts the letter into her bosom.*]

Now to the letter of my lord the king. —

He wills me to repair unto the court,

And meet my Gaveston? why do I stay,

Seeing that he talks thus of my marriage-day?

Who's there? Baldock!

70

See that my coach be ready, I must hence.

*Bald.* It shall be done, madam.

*Niece.* And meet me at the park-pale presently.

[*Exit BALDOCK.*]

Spenser, stay you and bear me company,

For I have joyful news to tell thee of;

My lord of Cornwall is a-coming over,

And will be at the court as soon as we.

*Y. Spen.* I knew the king would have him home again.

*Niece.* If all things sort out, as I hope they will,

Thy service, Spenser, shall be thought upon.

80

*Y. Spen.* I humbly thank your ladyship.

*Niece.* Come, lead the way; I long till I am there.

[*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE II

*Enter* KING EDWARD, QUEEN ISABELLA, KENT, LANCASTER, Young MORTIMER, WARWICK, PEMBROKE, and Attendants

*K. Edw.* The wind is good, I wonder why he stays;  
I fear me he is wrecked upon the sea.

*Q. Isab.* Look, Lancaster, how passionate he is,  
And still his mind runs on his minion!

*Lan.* My lord —

*K. Edw.* How now! what news? is Gaveston arrived?

*Y. Mor.* Nothing but Gaveston! what means your grace?

You have matters of more weight to think upon;  
The King of France sets foot in Normandy.

*K. Edw.* A trifle! we'll expel him when we please.

But tell me, Mortimer, what's thy device 11  
Against the stately triumph we decreed?

*Y. Mor.* A homely one, my lord, not worth the telling.

*K. Edw.* Pray thee, let me know it.

*Y. Mor.* But, seeing you are so desirous, thus it is:  
A lofty cedar tree, fair flourishing,  
On whose top-branches kingly eagles perch,  
And by the bark a canker creeps me up,  
And gets into the highest bough of all:  
The motto, *Æque tandem.*" 20

*K. Edw.* And what is yours, my lord of Lancaster?

*Lan.* My lord, mine's more obscure than Mortimer's.  
Pliny reports there is a flying fish  
Which all the other fishes deadly hate,  
And therefore, being pursued, it takes the air:  
No sooner is it up, but there's a fowl  
That seizeth it; this fish, my lord, I bear,  
The motto this: *Undique mors est.*"

*Kent.* Proud Mortimer! ungentle Lancaster!  
Is this the love you bear your sovereign? 30  
Is this the fruit your reconciliation bears?  
Can you in words make show of amity,  
And in your shields display your rancorous minds!  
What call you this but private libelling  
Against the Earl of Cornwall and my brother?

*Q. Isab.* Sweet husband, be content, they all love you.

*K. Edw.* They love me not that hate my Gaveston.  
I am that cedar, shake me not too much;  
And you the eagles; soar ye ne'er so high,  
I have the jesses that will pull you down; 40

And *Æque tandem* shall that canker cry  
Unto the proudest peer of Britainy.  
Though thou compar'st him to a flying fish,  
And threatenest death whether he rise or fall,  
'Tis not the hugest monster of the sea,  
Nor foulest harpy that shall swallow him.

*Y. Mor.* If in his absence thus he favours him,  
What will he do whenas he shall be present?

*Lan.* That shall we see; look where his lordship comes.

*Enter GAVESTON*

*K. Edw.* My Gaveston! 50  
Welcome to Tynemouth! welcome to thy friend!  
Thy absence made me droop and pine away;  
For, as the lovers of fair Danae,  
When she was locked up in a brazen tower,  
Desired her more, and waxed outrageous,  
So did it fare with me: and now thy sight  
Is sweeter far than was thy parting hence  
Bitter and irksome to my sobbing heart.

*Gav.* Sweet lord and king, your speech preventeth  
mine, 60  
Yet have I words left to express my joy:  
The shepherd nipt with biting winter's rage  
Frolics not more to see the painted spring,  
Than I do to behold your majesty.

*K. Edw.* Will none of you salute my Gaveston?

*Lan.* Salute him? yes; welcome, Lord Chamberlain!

*Y. Mor.* Welcome is the good Earl of Cornwall!

*War.* Welcome, Lord Governor of the Isle of Man!

*Pem.* Welcome, Master Secretary!

*Kent.* Brother, do you hear them?

*K. Edw.* Still will these earls and barons use me thus.

*Gav.* My lord, I cannot brook these injuries. 71

*Q. Isab.* Ay, me, poor soul, when these begin to jar.  
[*Aside.*

*K. Edw.* Return it to their throats, I'll be thy warrant.

*Gav.* Base, leaden earls, that glory in your birth,  
Go sit at home and eat your tenant's beef;  
And come not here to scoff at Gaveston,  
Whose mounting thoughts did never creep so low  
As to bestow a look on such as you.

*Lan.* Yet I disdain not to do this for you.

[*Draws his sword and offers to stab GAVESTON.*

*K. Edw.* Treason! treason! where's the traitor? 80

*Pem.* Here! here!

*K. Edw.* Convey hence Gaveston; they'll murder him.

*Gav.* The life of thee shall salve this foul disgrace.

*Y. Mor.* Villain! thy life, unless I miss mine aim.

[*Wounds GAVESTON.*

*Q. Isab.* Ah! furious Mortimer, what hast thou done?

*Y. Mor.* No more than I would answer, were he slain.

[*Exit GAVESTON with Attendants.*

*K. Edw.* Yes, more than thou canst answer, though  
he live;

Dear shall you both abide this riotous deed.

Out of my presence! come not near the court.

*Y. Mor.* I'll not be barred the court for Gaveston.

*Lan.* We'll hale him by the ears unto the block. 91

*K. Edw.* Look to your own heads; his is sure enough.

*War.* Look to your own crown, if you back him thus.

*Kent.* Warwick, these words do ill beseem thy years.

*K. Edw.* Nay, all of them conspire to cross me  
thus;

But if I live, I'll tread upon their heads

That think with high looks thus to tread me down.

Come, Edmund, let's away and levy men,

'Tis war that must abate these barons' pride.

[*Exeunt KING EDWARD, QUEEN ISABELLA,  
and KENT.*

*War.* Let's to our castles, for the king is moved. 100

*Y. Mor.* Moved may he be, and perish in his wrath!

*Lan.* Cousin, it is no dealing with him now,



He means to make us stoop by force of arms;  
And therefore let us jointly here protest,  
To persecute that Gaveston to the death.

*Y. Mor.* By heaven, the abject villain shall not live!

*War.* I'll have his blood, or die in seeking it.

*Pem.* The like oath Pembroke takes.

*Lan.* And so doth Lancaster.

Now send our heralds to defy the king;  
And make the people swear to put him down.

110

*Enter a Messenger*

*Y. Mor.* Letters! from whence?

*Mess.* From Scotland, my lord.

[*Giving letters to MORTIMER.*]

*Lan.* Why, how now, cousin, how fares all our friends?

*Y. Mor.* My uncle's taken prisoner by the Scots.

*Lan.* We'll have him ransomed, man; be of good cheer.

*Y. Mor.* They rate his ransom at five thousand pound.  
Who should defray the money but the king,  
Seeing he is taken prisoner in his wars?  
I'll to the king.

*Lan.* Do, cousin, and I'll bear thee company.

*War.* Meantime, my lord of Pembroke and myself  
Will to Newcastle here, and gather head.

121

*Y. Mor.* About it, then, and we will follow you.

*Lan.* Be resolute and full of secrecy.

*War.* I warrant you. [*Exit with PEMBROKE.*]

*Y. Mor.* Cousin, and if he will not ransom him,  
I'll thunder such a peal into his ears,  
As never subject did unto his king.

*Lan.* Content, I'll bear my part — Holla! who's there?

*Enter Guard*

*Y. Mor.* Ay, marry, such a guard as this doth well.

*Lan.* Lead on the way.

130

*Guard.* Whither will your lordships?

*Y. Mor.* Whither else but to the king.

*Guard.* His highness is disposed to be alone.

*Lan.* Why, so he may, but we will speak to him.

*Guard.* You may not in, my lord.

*Y. Mor.* May we not?

*Enter KING EDWARD and KENT*

*K. Edw.* How now!

What noise is this? who have we there? is't you? [*Going.*

*Y. Mor.* Nay, stay, my lord, I come to bring you news;

Mine uncle's taken prisoner by the Scots.

*K. Edw.* Then ransom him.

*Lan.* 'Twas in your wars; you should ransom him.

*Y. Mor.* And you shall ransom him, or else — 141

*Kent.* What! Mortimer, you will not threaten him?

*K. Edw.* Quiet yourself, you shall have the broad seal,<sup>n</sup>

To gather for him throughout the realm.

*Lan.* Your minion Gaveston hath taught you this.

*Y. Mor.* My lord, the family of the Mortimers  
Are not so poor, but, would they sell their land,  
'Twould levy men enough to anger you.

We never beg, but use such prayers as these.

*K. Edw.* Shall I still be haunted thus? 150

*Y. Mor.* Nay, now you're here alone, I'll speak my mind.

*Lan.* And so will I, and then, my lord, farewell.

*Y. Mor.* The idle triumphs, masks, lascivious shows,  
And prodigal gifts bestowed on Gaveston,  
Have drawn thy treasury dry, and made thee weak;  
The murmuring commons, overstretched, break.

*Lan.* Look for rebellion, look to be deposed;  
Thy garrisons are beaten out of France,  
And, lame and poor, lie groaning at the gates.  
The wild Oneyl, with swarms of Irish kerns,

160

Lives uncontrolled within the English pale.  
Unto the walls of York the Scots make road,  
And unresisted drive away rich spoils.

*Y. Mor.* The haughty Dane commands the narrow  
seas,  
While in the harbour ride thy ships unrigged.

*Lan.* What foreign prince sends thee ambassadors?

*Y. Mor.* Who loves thee, but a sort of flatterers?

*Lan.* Thy gentle queen, sole sister to Valois,<sup>n</sup>  
Complains that thou hast left her all forlorn.

*Y. Mor.* Thy court is naked, being bereft of those 170  
That make a king seem glorious to the world;  
I mean the peers, whom thou should'st dearly love:  
Libels are cast again thee in the street:  
Ballads and rhymes made of thy overthrow.

*Lan.* The Northern borderers seeing their houses  
burnt,  
Their wives and children slain, run up and down,  
Cursing the name of thee and Gaveston.

*Y. Mor.* When wert thou in the field with banner  
spread,  
But once? And then thy soldiers marched like players,  
With garish robes, not armour; and thyself, 180  
Bedaubed with gold, rode laughing at the rest,  
Nodding and shaking of thy spangled crest,  
Where women's favours hung like labels down.

*Lan.* And therefore came it, that the fleeing Scots,  
To England's high disgrace, have made this jig:<sup>n</sup>

*Maids of England, sore may you mourn,  
For your lemans you have lost at Bannocksbourn —  
With a heave and a hol*

*What weeneth the King of England,  
So soon to have won Scotland? —*

*With a rombelow!*

*Y. Mor.* Wigmore shall fly,<sup>n</sup> to set my uncle free.

*Lan.* And when 'tis gone, our swords shall purchase  
more.

If ye be moved, revenge it as you can;  
Look next to see us with our ensigns spread.

[*Exit with Young MORTIMER.*]

*K. Edw.* My swelling heart for very anger breaks!  
How oft have I been baited by these peers,  
And dare not be revenged, for their power is great!  
Yet, shall the crowing of these cockerels  
Affright a lion? Edward, unfold thy paws, 200  
And let their lives' blood slake thy fury's hunger.  
If I be cruel and grow tyrannous,  
Now let them thank themselves, and rue too late.

*Kent.* My lord, I see your love to Gaveston  
Will be the ruin of the realm and you,  
For now the wrathful nobles threaten wars,  
And therefore, brother, banish him for ever.

*K. Edw.* Art thou an enemy to my Gaveston?

*Kent.* Ay, and it grieves me that I favoured him.

*K. Edw.* Traitor, begone! whine thou with Mortimer.

*Kent.* So will I, rather than with Gaveston. 211

*K. Edw.* Out of my sight, and trouble me no more!

*Kent.* No marvel though thou scorn thy noble peers,  
When I thy brother am rejected thus.

*K. Edw.* Away! [*Exit KENT.*]

Poor Gaveston, that has no friend but me,  
Do what they can, we'll live in Tynemouth here,  
And, so I walk with him about the walls,  
What care I though the earls begirt us round? —  
Here cometh she that's cause of all these jars. 220

*Enter QUEEN ISABELLA with KING EDWARD'S Niece, two  
Ladies, GAVESTON, BALDOCK and Young SPENSER*

*Q. Isab.* My lord, 'tis thought the earls are up in  
arms.

*K. Edw.* Ay, and 'tis likewise thought you favour  
'em.

*Q. Isab.* Thus do you still suspect me without cause?

*Niece.* Sweet uncle! speak more kindly to the queen.

*Gav.* My lord, dissemble with her, speak her fair.

*K. Edw.* Pardon me, sweet, I had forgot myself.

*Q. Isab.* Your pardon is quickly got of Isabel.

*K. Edw.* The younger Mortimer is grown so brave,  
That to my face he threatens civil wars.

*Gav.* Why do you not commit him to the Tower? 230

*K. Edw.* I dare not, for the people love him well.

*Gav.* Why, then we'll have him privily made away.

*K. Edw.* Would Lancaster and he had both caroused  
A bowl of poison to each other's health!  
But let them go, and tell me what are these.

*Niece.* Two of my father's servants whilst he liv'd —  
May't please your grace to entertain them now.

*K. Edw.* Tell me, where wast thou born? what is  
thine arms?

*Bald.* My name is Baldock, and my gentry  
I fetch from Oxford, not from heraldry. 240

*K. Edw.* The fitter art thou, Baldock, for my turn.  
Wait on me, and I'll see thou shall not want.

*Bald.* I humbly thank your majesty.

*K. Edw.* Knowest thou him, Gaveston?

*Gav.* Ay, my lord;

His name is Spenser, he is well allied;  
For my sake, let him wait upon your grace;  
Scarce shall you find a man of more desert.

*K. Edw.* Then, Spenser, wait upon me; for his sake  
I'll grace thee with a higher style ere long.

*Y. Spen.* No greater titles happen unto me, 250  
Than to be favoured of your majesty!

*K. Edw.* Cousin, this day shall be your marriage-  
feast.

And, Gaveston, think that I love thee well,  
To wed thee to our niece, the only heir<sup>a</sup>  
Unto the Earl of Gloucester late deceased.

*Gav.* I know, my lord, many will stomach me,  
But I respect neither their love nor hate.

*K. Edw.* The headstrong barons shall not limit me;  
He that I list to favour shall be great.  
Come, let's away; and when the marriage ends, 260  
Have at the rebels, and their 'complices! [Exeunt.]

SCENE III<sup>a</sup>

*Enter* KENT, LANCASTER, Young MORTIMER, WARWICK,  
PEMBROKE, *and others*

*Kent.* My lords, of love to this our native land  
I come to join with you and leave the king;  
And in your quarrel and the realm's behoof  
Will be the first that shall adventure life.

*Lan.* I fear me, you are sent of policy,<sup>n</sup>  
To undermine us with a show of love.

*War.* He is your brother, therefore have we cause  
To cast the worst, and doubt of your revolt.

*Kent.* Mine honour shall be hostage of my truth:  
If that will not suffice, farewell, my lords. 10

*Y. Mor.* Stay, Edmund; never was Plantagenet  
False of his word, and therefore trust we thee.

*Pem.* But what's the reason you should leave him  
now?

*Kent.* I have informed the Earl of Lancaster.

*Lan.* And it sufficeth. Now, my lords, know this,  
That Gaveston is secretly arrived,  
And here in Tynemouth frolics with the king.  
Let us with these our followers scale the walls,  
And suddenly surprise them unawares.

*Y. Mor.* I'll give the onset.

*War.* And I'll follow thee. 20

*Y. Mor.* This tottered ensign of my ancestors,  
Which swept the desert shore of that Dead Sea  
Whereof we got the name of Mortimer,<sup>n</sup>  
Will I advance upon this castle's walls.

Drums, strike alarum, raise them from their sport,  
And ring aloud the knell of Gaveston!

*Lan.* None be so hardy as to touch the king;  
But neither spare you Gaveston nor his friends. [*Exeunt.*]

#### SCENE IV<sup>n</sup>

*Enter severally KING EDWARD and Young SPENSER*

*K. Edw.* Oh, tell me, Spenser, where is Gaveston?

*Y. Spen.* I fear me he is slain, my gracious lord.

*K. Edw.* No, here he comes; now let them spoil and  
kill.

*Enter QUEEN ISABELLA, KING EDWARD'S Niece,  
GAVESTON, and Nobles*

Fly, fly, my lords, the earls have got the hold;  
Take shipping and away to Scarborough;  
Spenser and I will post away by land.

*Gav.* Oh, stay, my lord, they will not injure you.

*K. Edw.* I will not trust them; Gaveston, away!

*Gav.* Farewell, my lord.

*K. Edw.* Lady, farewell.

*Niece.* Farewell, sweet uncle, till we meet again. 10

*K. Edw.* Farewell, sweet Gaveston; and farewell,  
niece.

*Q. Isab.* No farewell to poor Isabel thy queen?

*K. Edw.* Yes, yes, for Mortimer, your lover's sake.

*Q. Isab.* Heaven can witness I love none but you:

[*Exeunt all but QUEEN ISABELLA.*]

From my embracements thus he breaks away.  
Oh, that mine arms could close this isle about,  
That I might pull him to me where I would!  
Or that these tears, that drizzle from mine eyes,  
Had power to mollify his stony heart,  
That when I had him we might never part!

*Enter LANCASTER, WARWICK, Young MORTIMER,  
and others. Alarums within*

*Lan.* I wonder how he 'scaped!

*Y. Mor.* Who's this? the queen!

*Q. Isab.* Ay, Mortimer, the miserable queen,  
Whose pining heart her inward sighs have blasted,  
And body with continual mourning wasted:  
These hands are tired with haling of my lord  
From Gaveston, from wicked Gaveston,  
And all in vain; for, when I speak him fair,  
He turns away, and smiles upon his minion.

*Y. Mor.* Cease to lament, and tell us where's the king?

*Q. Isab.* What would you with the king? is't him you  
seek? 30

*Lan.* No, madam, but that cursèd Gaveston.  
Far be it from the thought of Lancaster  
To offer violence to his sovereign.  
We would but rid the realm of Gaveston:  
Tell us where he remains, and he shall die.

*Q. Isab.* He's gone by water unto Scarborough;  
Pursue him quickly, and he cannot 'scape;  
The king hath left him, and his train is small.

*War.* Forslow no time, sweet Lancaster; let's march.

*Y. Mor.* How comes it that the king and he is parted?

*Q. Isab.* That thus your army, going several ways, 41  
Might be of lesser force: and with the power  
That he intendeth presently to raise,  
Be easily suppressed; therefore be gone.

*Y. Mor.* Here in the river rides a Flemish hoy;  
Let's all aboard, and follow him amain.

*Lan.* The wind that bears him hence will fill our sails:  
Come, come aboard, 'tis but an hour's sailing.

*Y. Mor.* Madam, stay you within this castle here.

*Q. Isab.* No, Mortimer, I'll to my lord the king. 50

*Y. Mor.* Nay, rather sail with us to Scarborough.

*Q. Isab.* You know the king is so suspicious,



As if he hear I have but talked with you,  
 Mine honour will be called in question;  
 And therefore, gentle Mortimer, be gone.

*Y. Mor.* Madam, I cannot stay to answer you,  
 But think of Mortimer as he deserves.

[*Exeunt all except* QUEEN ISABELLA.

*Q. Isab.* So well hast thou deserved, sweet Mortimer,  
 As Isabel could live with thee for ever.

In vain I look for love at Edward's hand, 60  
 Whose eyes are fixed on none but Gaveston.

Yet once more I'll importune him with prayer:

If he be strange and not regard my words,

My son and I will over into France,

And to the king my brother there complain,

How Gaveston hath robbed me of his love:

But yet, I hope my sorrows will have end,

And Gaveston this blessed day be slain. [*Exit.*

### SCENE V<sup>a</sup>

*Enter* GAVESTON, *pursued*

*Gav.* Yet, lusty lords, I have escaped your hands,  
 Your threats, your larums, and your hot pursuits;  
 And though divorcèd from King Edward's eyes,  
 Yet liveth Pierce of Gaveston unsurprised,  
 Breathing, in hope (malgrado all your beards,  
 That muster rebels thus against your king),  
 To see his royal sovereign once again.

*Enter* WARWICK, LANCASTER, PEMBROKE, Young MORTIMER, Soldiers, JAMES, and other Attendants of PEMBROKE

*War.* Upon him, soldiers, take away his weapons.

*Y. Mor.* Thou proud disturber of thy country's peace,  
 Corrupter of thy king; cause of these broils, 10

Base flatterer, yield! and, were it not for shame,  
Shame and dishonour to a soldier's name,  
Upon my weapon's point here should'st thou fall,  
And welter in thy gore.

*Lan.* Monster of men!  
That, like the Greekish strumpet,<sup>a</sup> trained to arms  
And bloody wars so many valiant knights;  
Look for no other fortune, wretch, than death!  
King Edward is not here to buckler thee.

*War.* Lancaster, why talk'st thou to the slave?  
Go, soldiers, take him hence, for, by my sword, 20  
His head shall off: Gaveston, short warning  
Shall serve thy turn: it is our country's cause,  
That here severely we will execute  
Upon thy person. Hang him at a bough.

*Gav.* My lord! —

*War.* Soldiers, have him away —  
But for thou wert the favourite of a king,  
Thou shalt have so much honour at our hands —

*Gav.* I thank you all, my lords: then I perceive,  
That heading is one, and hanging is the other,<sup>a</sup>  
And death is all.

*Enter ARUNDEL*

*Lan.* How now, my lord of Arundel? 30

*Arun.* My lords, King Edward greets you all by me.

*War.* Arundel, say your message.

*Arun.* His majesty,  
Hearing that you had taken Gaveston,  
Entreateth you by me, yet but he may  
See him before he dies; for why, he says,  
And sends you word, he knows that die he shall;  
And if you gratify his grace so far,  
He will be mindful of the courtesy.

*War.* How now?

*Gav.* Renowned Edward, how thy name  
Revives poor Gaveston!

*War.* No, it needeth not; 40  
Arundel, we will gratify the king  
In other matters; he must pardon us in this.  
Soldiers, away with him!

*Gav.* Why, my lord of Warwick,  
Will not these delays beget my hopes?  
I know it, lords, it is this life you aim at,  
Yet grant King Edward this.

*Y. Mor.* Shalt thou appoint  
What we shall grant? Soldiers, away with him:  
Thus we'll gratify the king,  
We'll send his head by thee; let him bestow  
His tears on that, for that is all he gets 50  
Of Gaveston, or else his senseless trunk.

*Lan.* Not so, my lords, lest he bestow more cost  
In burying him than he hath ever earned.

*Arun.* My lords, it is his majesty's request,  
And in the honour of a king he swears,  
He will but talk with him, and send him back.

*War.* When? can you tell? Arundel, no; we wot,  
He that the care of his realm remits,  
And drives his nobles to these exigents  
For Gaveston, will, if he sees him once, 60  
Violate any promise to possess him.

*Arun.* Then, if you will not trust his grace in keep,  
My lords, I will be pledge for his return.

*Y. Mor.* 'Tis honourable in thee to offer this;  
But, for we know thou art a noble gentleman,  
We will not wrong thee so, to make away  
A true man for a thief.

*Gav.* How mean'st thou, Mortimer? that is over-base.

*Y. Mor.* Away, base groom, robber of king's renown!  
Question with thy companions and mates. 70

*Pem.* My Lord Mortimer, and you, my lords, each one,  
To gratify the king's request therein,  
Touching the sending of this Gaveston,  
Because his majesty so earnestly

Desires to see the man before his death,  
I will upon mine honour undertake  
To carry him, and bring him back again;  
Provided this, that you my lord of Arundel  
Will join with me.

*War.* Pembroke, what wilt thou do?  
Cause yet more bloodshed? is it not enough 8c  
That we have taken him, but must we now  
Leave him on "had I wist,"<sup>a</sup> and let him go?

*Pem.* My lords, I will not over-woo your honours,  
But if you dare trust Pembroke with the prisoner,  
Upon mine oath, I will return him back.

*Arun.* My lord of Lancaster, what say you in this?

*Lan.* Why, I say, let him go on Pembroke's word.

*Pem.* And you, Lord Mortimer?

*Y. Mor.* How say you, my lord of Warwick?

*War.* Nay, do your pleasures, I know how 'twill prove.

*Pem.* Then give him me.

*Gav.* Sweet sovereign, yet I come  
To see thee ere I die.

*War.* Yet not perhaps, 91  
If Warwick's wit and policy prevail. [Aside.

*Y. Mor.* My lord of Pembroke, we deliver him you;  
Return him on your honour. Sound, away!

*[Exeunt all except PEMBROKE, ARUNDEL, GAVESTON,  
JAMES, and other Attendants of PEM-  
BROKE.]*

*Pem.* My lord of Arundel, you shall go with me.  
My house is not far hence; out of the way  
A little, but our men shall go along.  
We that have pretty wenches to our wives,  
Sir, must not come so near to balk their lips.

*Arun.* 'Tis very kindly spoke, my lord of Pembroke;  
Your honour hath an adamant of power 101  
To draw a prince.

*Pem.* So, my lord. Come hither, James:  
I do commit this Gaveston to thee,

Be thou this night his keeper; in the morning  
We will discharge thee of thy charge: be gone.

*Gav.* Unhappy Gaveston, whither goest thou now?

*[Exit with JAMES and the other Attendants.]*

*Horse-boy.* My lord, we'll quickly be at Cobham.

*[Exeunt.]*

## ACT THE THIRD

### SCENE I<sup>a</sup>

*Enter GAVESTON mourning, JAMES, and other Attendants of PEMBROKE*

*Gav.* O treacherous Warwick! thus to wrong thy friend.

*James.* I see it is your life these arms pursue.

*Gav.* Weaponless must I fall, and die in bands?  
Oh! must this day be period of my life?  
Centre of all my bliss!<sup>a</sup> An ye be men,  
Speed to the king.

*Enter WARWICK and Soldiers*

*War.* My lord of Pembroke's men,  
Strive you no longer — I will have that Gaveston.

*James.* Your lordship does dishonour to yourself,  
And wrong our lord, your honourable friend.

*War.* No, James, it is my country's cause I follow. 10  
Go, take the villain; soldiers, come away.  
We'll make quick work. Commend me to your master,  
My friend, and tell him that I watched it well.  
Come, let thy shadow parley with King Edward.

*Gav.* Treacherous earl, shall I not see the king?

*War.* The King of Heaven perhaps, no other king.  
Away! [*Exeunt WARWICK and Soldiers with GAVESTON.*]

*James.* Come, fellows, it booteth not for us to strive,  
We will in haste go certify our lord. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II<sup>a</sup>

*Enter KING EDWARD and Young SPENSER, BALDOCK, and Nobles of the KING's side, and Soldiers with drums and fifes*

*K. Edw.* I long to hear an answer from the barons  
Touching my friend, my dearest Gaveston.  
Ah! Spenser, not the riches of my realm  
Can ransom him! ah, he is marked to die!  
I know the malice of the younger Mortimer,  
Warwick I know is rough, and Lancaster  
Inexorable, and I shall never see  
My lovely Pierce of Gaveston again!  
The barons overbear me with their pride.

*Y. Spen.* Were I King Edward, England's sovereign,  
Son to the lovely Eleanor of Spain, 11  
Great Edward Longshanks' issue, would I bear  
These braves, this rage, and suffer uncontrolled  
These barons thus to beard me in my land,  
In mine own realm? My lord, pardon my speech:  
Did you retain your father's magnanimity,<sup>n</sup>  
Did you regard the honour of your name,  
You would not suffer thus your majesty  
Be counterbuffed of your nobility.  
Strike off their heads, and let them preach on poles! 20  
No doubt, such lessons they will teach the rest,  
As by their preachments they will profit much,  
And learn obedience to their lawful king.

*K. Edw.* Yea, gentle Spenser, we have been too mild,  
Too kind to them; but now have drawn our sword,  
And if they send me not my Gaveston,  
We'll steel it<sup>n</sup> on their crest, and poll their tops.

*Bald.* This haught resolve becomes your majesty  
Not to be tied to their affection,  
As though your highness were a schoolboy still, 30  
And must be awed and governed like a child.

*Enter the Elder SPENSER,<sup>n</sup> with his truncheon and Soldiers*

*E. Spen.* Long live my sovereign, the noble Edward —  
In peace triumphant, fortunate in wars!

*K. Edw.* Welcome, old man, com'st thou in Edward's  
aid?

Then tell thy prince of whence, and what thou art.

*E. Spen.* Lo, with a band of bowmen and of pikes,  
Brown bills and targeteers, four hundred strong,  
Sworn to defend King Edward's royal right,  
I come in person to your majesty,  
Spenser, the father of Hugh Spenser there, 40  
Bound to your highness everlastingly,  
For favour done, in him, unto us all.

*K. Edw.* Thy father, Spenser?

*Y. Spen.* . . . . . True, an it like your grace,  
That pours, in lieu of all your goodness shown,  
His life, my lord, before your princely feet.

*K. Edw.* Welcome ten thousand times, old man, again.  
Spenser, this love, this kindness to thy king,  
Argues thy noble mind and disposition.  
Spenser, I here create thee Earl of Wiltshire,  
And daily will enrich thee with our favour, 50  
That, as the sunshine, shall reflect o'er thee.  
Beside, the more to manifest our love,  
Because we hear Lord Bruce doth sell his land,  
And that the Mortimers are in hand withal,  
Thou shalt have crowns of us t' outbid the barons:  
And, Spenser, spare them not, lay it on.  
Soldiers, a largess, and thrice welcome all!

*Y. Spen.* My lord, here comes the queen.

*Enter QUEEN ISABELLA, PRINCE EDWARD, and LEVUNE*

*K. Edw.* . . . . . Madam, what news?

*Q. Isab.* News of dishonour, lord, and discontent.  
Our friend Levune, faithful and full of trust, 60  
Informeth us, by letters and by words,



That Lord Valois our brother, King of France,  
Because your highness hath been slack in homage,  
Hath seizèd Normandy into his hands.

These be the letters, this the messenger.

*K. Edw.* Welcome, Levune. Tush, Sib,<sup>a</sup> if this be all,  
Valois and I will soon be friends again. —

But to my Gaveston; shall I never see,  
Never behold thee now? — Madam, in this matter,  
We will employ you and your little son; 70  
You shall go parley with the King of France. —  
Boy, see you bear you bravely to the king,  
And do your message with a majesty.

*P. Edw.* Commit not to my youth things of more  
weight

Than fits a prince so young as I to bear,  
And fear not, lord and father, Heaven's great beams  
On Atlas' shoulder shall not lie more safe,  
Than shall your charge committed to my trust.

*Q. Isab.* Ah, boy! this towardness makes thy mother  
fear

Thou art not marked to many days on earth. 80

*K. Edw.* Madam, we will that you with speed be  
shipped,

And this our son; Levune shall follow you  
With all the haste we can dispatch him hence.  
Choose of our lords to bear you company;  
And go in peace, leave us in wars at home.

*Q. Isab.* Unnatural wars, where subjects brave their  
king;

God end them once! My lord, I take my leave,  
To make my preparation for France.

[Exit with PRINCE EDWARD.]

*Enter ARUNDEL*

*K. Edw.* What, Lord Arundel, dost thou come alone?

*Arun.* Yea, my good lord, for Gaveston is dead. 90

*K. Edw.* Ah, traitors! have they put my friend to death?

Tell me, Arundel, died he ere thou cam'st,  
Or didst thou see my friend to take his death?

*Arun.* Neither, my lord; for, as he was surprised,  
Begirt with weapons and with enemies round,  
I did your highness' message to them all;  
Demanding him of them, entreating rather,  
And said, upon the honour of my name,  
That I would undertake to carry him  
Unto your highness, and to bring him back. 100

*K. Edw.* And tell me, would the rebels deny me that?

*Y. Spen.* Proud recreants!

*K. Edw.* Yea, Spenser, traitors all.

*Arun.* I found them at the first inexorable;  
The Earl of Warwick would not bide the hearing,  
Mortimer hardly; Pembroke and Lancaster  
Spake least: and, when they flatly had denied,  
Refusing to receive me pledge for him,  
The Earl of Pembroke mildly thus bespake:  
"My lords, because our sovereign sends for him,  
And promiseth he shall be safe returned, 110  
I will this undertake, to have him hence,  
And see him re-delivered to your hands."

*K. Edw.* Well, and how fortunes it that he came not?

*Y. Spen.* Some treason, or some villainy was the cause.

*Arun.* The Earl of Warwick seized him on his way;  
For, being delivered unto Pembroke's men,  
Their lord rode home thinking his prisoner safe;  
But ere he came, Warwick in ambush lay,  
And bare him to his death; and in a trench  
Strake off his head, and marched unto the camp. 120

*Y. Spen.* A bloody part, flatly 'gainst law of arms!

*K. Edw.* Oh, shall I speak, or shall I sigh and die!

*Y. Spen.* My lord, refer your vengeance to the sword  
Upon these barons; hearten up your men;

Let them not unrevenged murder your friends!  
Advance your standard, Edward, in the field,  
And march to fire them from their starting holes.

*K. Edw. [kneeling].* By earth, the common mother of  
us all,

By Heaven, and all the moving orbs thereof,  
By this right hand, and by my father's sword, 130  
And all the honours 'longing to my crown,  
I will have heads, and lives for him, as many  
As I have manors, castles, towns, and towers! — [*Rises.*  
Treacherous Warwick! traitorous Mortimer!  
If I be England's king, in lakes of gore  
Your headless trunks, your bodies will I trail,  
That you may drink your fill, and quaff in blood,  
And stain my royal standard with the same,  
That so my bloody colours may suggest  
Remembrance of revenge immortally 140  
On your accursèd traitorous progeny,  
You villains, that have slain my Gaveston!  
And in this place of honour and of trust,  
Spenser, sweet Spenser, I adopt thee here:  
And merely<sup>n</sup> of our love we do create thee  
Earl of Gloucester, and Lord Chamberlain,  
Despite of times, despite of enemies.

*Y. Spen.* My lord, here's a messenger from the barons  
Desires access unto your majesty.

*K. Edw.* Admit him near. 150

*Enter the Herald, with his coat of arms*

*Her.* Long live King Edward, England's lawful lord!

*K. Edw.* So wish not they, I wis, that sent thee hither.  
Thou com'st from Mortimer and his 'complices,  
A ranker rout of rebels never was.  
Well, say thy message.

*Her.* The barons up in arms, by me salute  
Your highness with long life and happiness;

And bid me say, as plainer to your grace,  
That if without effusion of blood  
You will this grief have ease and remedy, 160  
That from your princely person you remove  
This Spenser, as a putrifying branch,  
That deads the royal vine, whose golden leaves  
Empale your princely head, your diadem,  
Whose brightness such pernicious upstarts dim,  
Say they; and lovingly advise your grace,  
To cherish virtue and nobility,  
And have old servitors in high esteem,  
And shake off smooth dissembling flatterers:  
This granted, they, their honours, and their lives, 170  
Are to your highness vowed and consecrate.

*Y. Spen.* Ah, traitors! will they still display their  
pride?

*K. Edw.* Away, tarry no answer, but be gone!  
Rebels, will they appoint their sovereign  
His sports, his pleasures, and his company?  
Yet, ere thou go, see how I do divorce

[*Embraces SPENSER.*

Spenser from me. — Now get thee to thy lords,  
And tell them I will come to chastise them  
For murdering Gaveston; hie thee, get thee gone!  
Edward with fire and sword follows at thy heels. 180

[*Exit Herald.*

My lords, perceive you how these rebels swell?  
Soldiers, good hearts, defend your sovereign's right,  
For now, even now, we march to make them stoop.  
Away! [*Exeunt. Alarums, excursions, a great  
fight, and a retreat sounded, within.*

*Re-enter KING EDWARD, the Elder SPENSER, Young  
SPENSER, and Noblemen of the KING's side*

*K. Edw.* Why do we sound retreat? Upon them, lords!  
This day I shall pour vengeance with my sword

On those proud rebels that are up in arms,  
And do confront and countermand their king.

*Y. Spen.* I doubt it not, my lord, right will prevail.

*E. Spen.* 'Tis not amiss, my liege, for either part  
To breathe awhile; our men, with sweat and dust  
All choked well near, begin to faint for heat; 192  
And this retire refresheth horse and man.

*Y. Spen.* Here come the rebels.

*Enter* Young MORTIMER, LANCASTER, WARWICK, PEMBROKE, *and others*

*Y. Mor.* Look, Lancaster, yonder is Edward  
Among his flatterers.

*Lan.* And there let him be  
Till he pay dearly for their company.

*War.* And shall, or Warwick's sword shall smite in  
vain.

*K. Edw.* What, rebels, do you shrink and sound  
retreat?

*Y. Mor.* No, Edward, no, thy flatterers faint and  
fly. 200

*Lan.* They'd best betimes forsake thee, and their  
trains,  
For they'll betray thee, traitors as they are.

*Y. Spen.* Traitor on thy face, rebellious Lancaster!

*Pem.* Away, base upstart, bravest thou nobles thus?

*E. Spen.* A noble attempt, and honourable deed,  
Is it not, trow ye, to assemble aid,  
And levy arms against your lawful king!

*K. Edw.* For which ere long their heads shall satisfy,  
To appease the wrath of their offended king.

*Y. Mor.* Then, Edward, thou wilt fight it to the  
last, 210

And rather bathe thy sword in subjects' blood,  
Than banish that pernicious company?

*K. Edw.* Ay, traitors all, rather than thus be braved,

Make England's civil towns huge heaps of stones,  
And ploughs to go about our palace gates.

*War.* A desperate and unnatural resolution!  
Alarum! — to the fight!

St. George for England, and the barons' right.

*K. Edw.* Saint George for England, and King  
Edward's right.

[*Alarums. Exeunt the two parties severally.*]

### SCENE III<sup>a</sup>

*Enter KING EDWARD and his followers, with the  
Barons and KENT, captives*

*K. Edw.* Now, lusty lords, now, not by chance of war,  
But justice of the quarrel and the cause,  
Vailed is your pride; methinks you hang the heads,  
But we'll advance them, traitors; now 'tis time  
To be avenged on you for all your braves,  
And for the murder of my dearest friend,  
To whom right well you knew our soul was knit,  
Good Pierce of Gaveston, my sweet favourite.  
Ah, rebels! recreants! you made him away.

*Kent.* Brother, in regard of<sup>n</sup> thee, and of thy land,  
Did they remove that flatterer from thy throne. 11

*K. Edw.* So, sir, you have spoke; away, avoid our  
presence! [*Exit KENT.*]

Accursèd wretches, was't in regard of us,  
When we had sent our messenger to request  
He might be spared to come to speak with us,  
And Pembroke undertook for his return,  
That thou, proud Warwick, watched the prisoner,  
Poor Pierce, and headed him 'gainst law of arms?  
For which thy head shall overlook the rest,  
As much as thou in rage outwent'st the rest. 20

*War.* Tyrant, I scorn thy threats and menaces;  
It is but temporal that thou canst inflict.

*Lan.* The worst is death, and better die to live  
Than live in infamy under such a king.

*K. Edw.* Away with them, my lord of Winchester!<sup>a</sup>  
These lusty leaders, Warwick and Lancaster,  
I charge you roundly — off with both their heads!  
Away!

*War.* Farewell, vain world!

*Lan.* Sweet Mortimer, farewell.

*Y. Mor.* England, unkind to thy nobility, 30  
Groan for this grief, behold how thou art maimed!

*K. Edw.* Go, take that haughty Mortimer to the  
Tower,  
There see him safe bestowed; and for the rest,  
Do speedy execution on them all.  
Begone!

*Y. Mor.* What, Mortimer! can ragged stony walls  
Immure thy virtue that aspires to Heaven? <sup>a</sup>  
No, Edward, England's scourge, it may not be;  
Mortimer's hope surmounts his fortune far.

[*The captive Barons are led off.*]

*K. Edw.* Sound drums and trumpets! March with  
me, my friends, 40  
Edward this day hath crowned him king anew.

[*Exeunt all except Young SPENSER, LEVUNE,  
and BALDOCK.*]

*Y. Spen.* Levune, the trust that we repose in thee,  
Begets the quiet of King Edward's land.  
Therefore begone in haste, and with advice  
Bestow that treasure on the lords of France,  
That, therewith all enchanted, like the guard  
That suffered Jove to pass in showers of gold  
To Danae, all aid may be denied  
To Isabel, the queen, that now in France  
Makes friends, to cross the seas with her young son, 50  
And step into his father's regiment.

*Levune.* That's it these barons and the subtle queen  
Long levelled at.

*Bald.* Yea, but, Levune, thou seest  
These barons lay their heads on blocks together;  
What they intend, the hangman frustrates clean.

*Levune.* Have you no doubt, my lords, I'll clap so  
close<sup>n</sup>

Among the lords of France with England's gold,  
That Isabel shall make her plaints in vain,  
And France shall be obdurate<sup>t</sup> with her tears.

*Y. Spen.* Then make for France, amain — Levune,  
away! 60  
Proclaim King Edward's wars and victories. [*Exeunt.*



## ACT THE FOURTH

### SCENE I<sup>a</sup>

*Enter KENT*

*Kent.* Fair blows the wind for France; blow, gentle  
gale,  
Till Edmund be arrived for England's good!  
Nature, yield to my country's cause in this.  
A brother? no, a butcher of thy friends!  
Proud Edward, dost thou banish me thy presence?  
But I'll to France, and cheer the wrongèd queen,  
And certify what Edward's looseness is.  
Unnatural king! to slaughter noblemen  
And cherish flatterers! Mortimer, I stay  
Thy sweet escape: stand gracious, gloomy night, 10  
To his device.

*Enter Young MORTIMER, disguised*

*Y. Mor.* Holla! who walketh there?  
Is't you, my lord?

*Kent.* Mortimer, 'tis I;  
But hath thy potion wrought so happily?

*Y. Mor.* It hath, my lord; the warders all asleep,  
I thank them, gave me leave to pass in peace.  
But hath your grace got shipping unto France?

*Kent.* Fear it not. *[Exeunt.]*

### SCENE II<sup>a</sup>

*Enter QUEEN ISABELLA and PRINCE EDWARD*

*Q. Isab.* Ah, boy! our friends do fail us all in France:  
The lords are cruel, and the king unkind;  
What shall we do?

*P. Edw.* Madam, return to England,  
And please my father well, and then a fig  
For all my uncle's friendship here in France.  
I warrant you, I'll win his highness quickly;  
'A loves me better than a thousand Spensers.

*Q. Isab.* Ah, boy, thou art deceived, at least in this,  
To think that we can yet be tuned together;  
No, no, we jar too far. Unkind Valois! 10  
Unhappy Isabel! when France rejects,  
Whither, oh! whither dost thou bend thy steps?

*Enter SIR JOHN of HAINAULT*

*Sir J.* Madam, what cheer?

*Q. Isab.* Ah! good Sir John of Hainault,  
Never so cheerless, nor so far distress.

*Sir J.* I hear, sweet lady, of the king's unkindness;  
But droop not, madam; noble minds contemn  
Despair; will your grace with me to Hainault,  
And there stay time's advantage with your son?  
How say you, my lord, will you go with your friends,  
And shake off all our fortunes equally? 20

*P. Edw.* So pleaseth the queen, my mother, me it  
likes:

The King of England, nor the court of France,  
Shall have me from my gracious mother's side,  
Till I be strong enough to break a staff;  
And then have at the proudest Spenser's head.

*Sir J.* Well said, my lord.

*Q. Isab.* Oh, my sweet heart, how do I moan thy wrongs,  
Yet triumph in the hope of thee, my joy!  
Ah, sweet Sir John! even to the utmost verge  
Of Europe, or the shore of Tanais, 30  
We will with thee to Hainault — so we will: —  
The marquis is a noble gentleman;  
His grace, I dare presume, will welcome me.  
But who are these?

*Enter KENT and Young MORTIMER*

*Kent.* Madam, long may you live,  
Much happier than your friends in England do!

*Q. Isab.* Lord Edmund and Lord Mortimer alive!  
Welcome to France! the news was here, my lord,  
That you were dead, or very near your death.

*Y. Mor.* Lady, the last was truest of the twain:  
But Mortimer, reserved for better hap, 40  
Hath shaken off the thralldom of the Tower,  
And lives t'advance your standard, good my lord.

*P. Edw.* How mean you? and the king, my father,  
lives!

No, my Lord Mortimer, not I,<sup>n</sup> I trow.<sup>n</sup>

*Q. Isab.* Not, son! why not? I would it were no  
worse.

But, gentle lords, friendless we are in France.

*Y. Mor.* Monsieur le Grand, a noble friend of yours,  
Told us, at our arrival, all the news —  
How hard the nobles, how unkind the king  
Hath showed himself; but, madam, right makes room 50  
Where weapons want; and, though a many friends  
Are made away, as Warwick, Lancaster,  
And others of our party and faction;  
Yet have we friends, assure your grace, in England  
Would cast up caps, and clap their hands for joy,  
To see us there, appointed for our foes.

*Kent.* Would all were well, and Edward well reclaimed  
For England's honour, peace, and quietness.

*Y. Mor.* But by the sword, my lord, 't must be de-  
served;

The king will ne'er forsake his flatterers. 60

*Sir J.* My lords of England, sith th' ungentle king  
Of France refuseth to give aid of arms  
To this distressed queen his sister here,  
Go you with her to Hainault; doubt ye not,  
We will find comfort, money, men and friends

Ere long, to bid the English king a base.<sup>n</sup>

How say'st, young prince? What think you of the match?

*P. Edw.* I think King Edward will outrun us all.

*Q. Isab.* Nay, son, not so; and you must not discourage Your friends, that are so forward in your aid. 70

*Kent.* Sir John of Hainault, pardon us, I pray;  
These comforts that you give our woeful queen  
Bind us in kindness all at your command.

*Q. Isab.* Yea, gentle brother; and the God of Heaven  
Prosper your happy motion, good Sir John.

*Y. Mor.* This noble gentleman, forward in arms,  
Was born, I see, to be our anchor-hold.  
Sir John of Hainault, be it thy renown,  
That England's queen, and nobles in distress,  
Have been by thee restored and comforted. 80

*Sir J.* Madam, along, and you, my lords, with me,  
That England's peers may Hainault's welcome see.  
[*Exeunt.*]

### SCENE III<sup>n</sup>

*Enter* KING EDWARD, ARUNDEL, *the Elder and*  
Younger SPENSER, *and others*

*K. Edw.* Thus, after many threats of wrathful war,  
Triumpheth England's Edward with his friends;  
And triumph, Edward, with his friends uncontrolled!<sup>n</sup>  
My lord of Gloucester, do you hear the news?

*Y. Spen.* What news, my lord?

*K. Edw.* Why, man, they say there is great execution  
Done through the realm; my lord of Arundel,  
You have the note, have you not?

*Arun.* From the Lieutenant of the Tower, my lord.

*K. Edw.* I pray let us see it. [*Takes the note.*] What  
have we there? 10  
Read it, Spenser. [*Hands the note to Young SPENSER,*  
*who reads the names.*]

Why, so; they barked apace a month ago:  
Now, on my life, they'll neither bark nor bite.  
Now, sirs, the news from France? Gloucester, I trow  
The lords of France love England's gold so well,  
As Isabella gets no aid from thence.  
What now remains? have you proclaimed, my lord,  
Reward for them can bring in Mortimer?

*Y. Spen.* My lord, we have; and if he be in England,  
'A will be had ere long, I doubt it not. 20

*K. Edw.* If, dost thou say? Spenser, as true as death  
He is in England's ground; our portmasters  
Are not so careless of their king's command.

*Enter a Messenger*

How now, what news with thee? from whence come  
these?

*Mess.* Letters, my lord, and tidings forth of France —  
To you, my lord of Gloucester, from Levune.

[*Gives letters to* YOUNG SPENSER.]

*K. Edw.* Read. 27

*Y. Spen.* [*reads*].

"My duty to your honour premised, &c., I have,  
according to instructions in that behalf, dealt with the  
King of France his lords, and effected, that the queen,  
all discontented and discomfited, is gone: whither, if  
you ask, with Sir John of Hainault, brother to the  
marquis, into Flanders. With them are gone Lord  
Edmund, and the Lord Mortimer, having in their com-  
pany divers of your nation, and others; and, as constant  
report goeth, they intend to give King Edward battle in  
England, sooner than he can look for them. This is all  
the news of import.

Your honour's in all service, LEVUNE."

*K. Edw.* Ah, villains! hath that Mortimer escaped?  
With him is Edmund gone associate? 41

And will Sir John of Hainault lead the round?  
Welcome, a God's name, madam, and your son;  
England shall welcome you and all your rout.  
Gallop apace, bright Phœbus, through the sky,  
And dusky night, in rusty iron car,  
Between you both shorten the time, I pray,  
That I may see that most desired day,  
When we may meet these traitors in the field.  
Ah, nothing grieves me, but my little boy 50  
Is thus misled to countenance their ills.  
Come, friends, to Bristow, there to make us strong;  
And, winds, as equal be to bring them in,  
As you injurious were to bear them forth! [Exeunt.]

SCENE IV<sup>a</sup>

*Enter* QUEEN ISABELLA, PRINCE EDWARD, KENT, Young  
MORTIMER, and SIR JOHN of HAINAULT

*Q. Isab.* Now, lords, our loving friends and country-  
men,  
Welcome to England all, with prosperous winds!  
Our kindest friends in Belgia have we left,  
To cope with friends at home; a heavy case  
When force to force is knit, and sword and glaive.  
In civil broils make kin and countrymen  
Slaughter themselves in others, and their sides  
With their own weapons gore! But what's the help?  
Misgoverned kings are cause of all this wreck;  
And, Edward, thou art one among them all, 10  
Whose looseness hath betrayed thy land to spoil,  
Who made the channel overflow with blood  
Of thine own people; patron shouldst thou be,  
But thou —

*Y. Mor.* Nay, madam, if you be a warrior,  
You must not grow so passionate in speeches.

Lords,

Sith that we are by sufferance of Heaven  
Arrived, and armed in this prince's right,  
Here for our country's cause swear we to him

20

All homage, fealty and forwardness;  
And for the open wrongs and injuries  
Edward hath done to us, his queen and land,  
We come in arms to wreak it with the sword;  
That England's queen in peace may repossess  
Her dignities and honours: and withal  
We may remove these flatterers from the king,  
That havoc England's wealth and treasury.

*Sir J.* Sound trumpets, my lord, and forward let us  
march.

Edward will think we come to flatter him.

30

*Kent.* I would he never had been flattered more!

[*Exeunt.*

### SCENE V<sup>n</sup>

*Enter* KING EDWARD, BALDOCK, and Young SPENSER

*Y. Spen.* Fly, fly, my lord! the queen is over-strong;  
Her friends do multiply, and yours do fail.  
Shape we our course to Ireland, there to breathe.

*K. Edw.* What! was I born to fly and run away,  
And leave the Mortimers conquerors behind?  
Give me my horse, and let's reinforce<sup>n</sup> our troops:  
And in this bed of honour die with fame.

*Bald.* Oh, no, my lord, this princely resolution  
Fits not the time; away! we are pursued. [*Exeunt.*

*Enter* KENT, with sword and target

*Kent.* This way he fled, but I am come too late. 10  
Edward, alas! my heart relents for thee.  
Proud traitor, Mortimer, why dost thou chase  
Thy lawful king, thy sovereign, with thy sword?\*

Vile wretch! and why hast thou, of all unkind,<sup>n</sup>  
Borne arms against thy brother and thy king?  
Rain showers of vengeance on my cursèd head,  
Thou God, to whom in justice it belongs  
To punish this unnatural revolt!  
Edward, this Mortimer aims at thy life!  
Oh, fly him, then! But, Edmund, calm this rage, 20  
Dissemble, or thou diest; for Mortimer  
And Isabel do kiss, while they conspire:  
And yet she bears a face of love forsooth.  
Fie on that love that hatcheth death and hate!  
Edmund, away! Bristow to Longshanks' blood  
Is false; be not found single for suspect.<sup>n</sup>  
Proud Mortimer pries near unto thy walks.<sup>n</sup>

*Enter* QUEEN ISABELLA, PRINCE EDWARD, Young  
MORTIMER, and SIR JOHN of HAINAULT

*Q. Isab.* Successful battle gives the God of kings  
To them that fight in right and fear his wrath.  
Since then successfully we have prevailed, 30  
Thankèd be Heaven's great architect, and you.  
Ere farther we proceed, my noble lords,  
We here create our well-belovèd son,  
Of love and care unto his royal person,  
Lord Warden of the realm, and sith the fates  
Have made his father so unfortunate,  
Deal you, my lords, in this, my loving lords,  
As to your wisdoms fittest seems in all.

*Kent.* Madam, without offence, if I may ask,  
How will you deal with Edward in his fall? 40

*P. Edw.* Tell me, good uncle, what Edward do you  
mean?

*Kent.* Nephew, your father: I dare not call him king.

*Y. Mor.* Mylord of Kent, what needs these questions?  
'Tis not in her controlment, nor in ours,  
But as the realm and parliament shall please,



So shall your brother be disposèd of. —  
I like not this relenting mood in Edmund,  
Madam, 'tis good to look to him betimes.

[*Aside to the QUEEN.*

*Q. Isab.* My lord, the Mayor of Bristow knows our mind.

*Y. Mor.* Yea, madam, and they 'scape not easily 50  
That fled the field.

*Q. Isab.* Baldock is with the king.  
A goodly chancellor is he not, my lord?

*Sir J.* So are the Spensers, the father and the son.  
*Kent.* This Edward is the ruin of the realm.

*Enter RICE AP HOWEL, with the Elder SPENSER,  
prisoner, and Attendants*

*Rice.* God save Queen Isabel, and her princely son!  
Madam, the Mayor and citizens of Bristow,  
In sign of love and duty to this presence,  
Present by me this traitor to the state,  
Spenser, the father to that wanton Spenser,  
That, like the lawless Catiline<sup>n</sup> of Rome, 60  
Revelled in England's wealth and treasury.

*Q. Isab.* We thank you all.

*Y. Mor.* Your loving care in this  
Deserveth princely favours and rewards.  
But where's the king and the other Spenser fled?

*Rice.* Spenser the son, created Earl of Gloucester,  
Is with that smooth-tongued scholar Baldock gone,  
And shipped but late for Ireland with the king.

*Y. Mor.* Some whirlwind fetch them back or sink  
them all! — [Aside.

They shall be started thence, I doubt it not.

*P. Edw.* Shall I not see the king my father yet? 70

*Kent.* Unhappy Edward, chased from England's  
bounds. [Aside.

*Sir J.* Madam, what resteth, why stand you in a muse?

*Q. Isab.* I rue my lord's ill-fortune; but alas!  
Care of my country called me to this war.

*Y. Mor.* Madam, have done with care and sad complaint;

Your king hath wronged your country and himself,  
And we must seek to right it as we may.  
Meanwhile, have hence this rebel to the block.

*E. Spen.* Rebel is he that fights against the prince;<sup>n</sup>  
So fought not they that fought in Edward's right. 80

*Y. Mor.* Take him away, he prates;

[*Exeunt Attendants with the Elder SPENSER.*

You, Rice ap Howel,<sup>n</sup>

Shall do good service to her majesty,  
Being of countenance in your country here,  
To follow these rebellious runagates.  
We in meanwhile, madam, must take advice;  
How Baldock, Spenser, and their 'complices,  
May in their fall be followed to their end. [*Exeunt.*

### SCENE VI<sup>n</sup>

*Enter the Abbot, Monks, KING EDWARD, Young SPENSER,  
and BALDOCK (the three latter disguised)*

*Abbot.* Have you no doubt, my lord; have you no fear;

As silent and as careful we will be,  
To keep your royal person safe with us,  
Free from suspect, and fell invasion  
Of such as have your majesty in chase,  
Yourself, and those your chosen company,  
As danger of this stormy time requires.

*K. Edw.* Father, thy face should harbour no deceit.  
Oh! hadst thou ever been a king, thy heart,  
Pierced deeply with a sense of my distress, 10  
Could not but take compassion of my state.

Stately and proud, in riches and in train,  
Whilom I was, powerful and full of pomp:  
But what is he whom rule and empery  
Have not in life or death made miserable?  
Come, Spenser; come, Baldock, come, sit down by  
me;

Make trial now of that philosophy,  
That in our famous nurseries of arts  
Thou suck'dst from Plato and from Aristotle.<sup>a</sup>  
Father, this life contemplative is Heaven. 20  
Oh, that I might this life in quiet lead!  
But we, alas! are chased; and you, my friends,  
Your lives and my dishonour they pursue.  
Yet, gentle monks, for treasure, gold nor fee,  
Do you betray us and our company.

*Monk.* Your grace may sit secure,<sup>a</sup> if none but we  
Do wot of your abode.

*Y. Spen.* Not one alive, but shrewdly I suspect  
A gloomy fellow in a mead below.  
'A gave a long look after us, my lord; 30  
And all the land I know is up in arms,  
Arms that pursue our lives with deadly hate.

*Bald.* We were embarked for Ireland, wretched we!  
With awkward winds and sore<sup>a</sup> tempests driven  
To fall on shore, and here to pine in fear  
Of Mortimer and his confederates.

*K. Edw.* Mortimer! who talks of Mortimer?  
Who wounds me with the name of Mortimer,  
That bloody man? Good father, on thy lap  
Lay I this head, laden with mickle care. 40  
Oh, might I never open these eyes again!  
Never again lift up this drooping head!  
Oh, never more lift up this dying heart!

*Y. Spen.* Look up, my lord.—Baldock, this drowsiness  
Betides no good; here even we are betrayed.

*Enter, with Welsh hooks, RICE AP HOWEL, a Mower, and LEICESTER*

*Mow.* Upon my life, these be the men ye seek.

*Rice.* Fellow, enough. — My lord, I pray be short,  
A fair commission warrants what we do.

*Leices.* The queen's commission, urged by Mortimer;  
What cannot<sup>a</sup> gallant Mortimer with the queen? 50

Alas! see where he sits, and hopes unseen  
To escape their hands that seek to reave his life.

Too true it is, *Quem dies vidit veniens superbum,*  
*Hunc dies vidit fugiens jacentem.*<sup>a</sup>

But, Leicester, leave to grow so passionate.

Spenser and Baldock, by no other names,

I do arrest you of high treason here.

Stand not on titles, but obey the arrest;

'Tis in the name of Isabel the queen.

My lord, why droop you thus? 60

*K. Edw.* O day the last of all my bliss on earth!

Centre of all misfortune!<sup>a</sup> O my stars,

Why do you lour unkindly on a king?

Comes Leicester, then, in Isabella's name

To take my life, my company from me?

Here, man, rip up this panting breast of mine,

And take my heart in rescue of my friends!

*Rice.* Away with them!

*Y. Spen.* It may become thee yet

To let us take our farewell of his grace.

*Abbot.* My heart with pity earns to see this sight, 70  
A king to bear these words and proud commands.

[*Aside.*

*K. Edw.* Spenser, ah, sweet Spenser, thus then must  
we part?

*Y. Spen.* We must, my lord, so will the angry Heavens.

*K. Edw.* Nay, so will hell and cruel Mortimer;  
The gentle Heavens have not to do in this.

*Bald.* My lord, it is in vain to grieve or storm.

Here humbly of your grace we take our leaves;  
Our lots are cast; I fear me, so is thine.

*K. Edw.* In Heaven we may, in earth ne'er shall we  
meet;

And, Leicester, say, what shall become of us? 80

*Leices.* Your majesty must go to Killingworth.

*K. Edw.* Must! it is somewhat hard, when kings must  
go.

*Leices.* Here is a litter ready for your grace,  
That waits your pleasure, and the day grows old.

*Rice.* As good be gone, as stay and be benighted.

*K. Edw.* A litter hast thou? lay me in a hearse,  
And to the gates of hell convey me hence;  
Let Pluto's bells ring out my fatal knell,  
And hags howl for my death at Charon's shore,  
For friends hath Edward none but these, 90  
And these must die under a tyrant's sword.

*Rice.* My lord, be going; care not for these,  
For we shall see them shorter by the heads.

*K. Edw.* Well, that shall be, shall be: part we must!  
Sweet Spenser, gentle Baldock, part we must!  
Hence feignèd weeds! unfeignèd are my woes;  
*[Throws off his disguise.]*

Father, farewell! Leicester, thou stay'st for me,  
And go I must. Life, farewell, with my friends.

*[Exeunt KING EDWARD and LEICESTER.]*

*Y. Spen.* Oh! Is he gone? Is noble Edward gone?  
Parted from hence? never to see us more? 100  
Rend, sphere of Heaven! and, fire, forsake thy orb!  
Earth, melt to air! gone is my sovereign,  
Gone, gone, alas! never to make return.

*Bald.* Spenser, I see our souls are fleeting hence;  
We are deprived the sunshine of our life:  
Make for a new life, man; throw up thy eyes,  
And heart and hands to Heaven's immortal throne;  
Pay nature's debt with cheerful countenance;  
Reduce we all our lessons unto this,

To die, sweet Spenser, therefore live we all; 110  
Spenser, all live to die, and rise to fall.

*Rice.* Come, come, keep these preachments till you  
come to the place appointed. You, and such as you are,  
have made wise work in England; will your lordships  
away?

*Mow.* Your lordship, I trust, will remember me?

*Rice.* Remember thee, fellow! what else? Follow  
me to the town. [*Exeunt.*

## ACT THE FIFTH

### SCENE I<sup>a</sup>

*Enter* KING EDWARD, LEICESTER, *the* BISHOP of  
WINCHESTER, *and* TRUSSEL

*Leices.* Be patient, good my lord, cease to lament,  
Imagine Killingworth Castle were your court,  
And that you lay for pleasure here a space,  
Not of compulsion or necessity.

*K. Edw.* Leicester, if gentle words might comfort me,  
Thy speeches long ago had eased my sorrows;  
For kind and loving hast thou always been.  
The griefs of private men are soon allayed,  
But not of kings. The forest deer, being struck,  
Runs to an herb that closeth up the wounds; 10  
But, when the imperial lion's flesh is gored,  
He rends and tears it with his wrathful paw,  
And highly scorning that the lowly earth  
Should drink his blood, mounts up to the air.  
And so it fares with me, whose dauntless mind  
The ambitious Mortimer would seek to curb,  
And that unnatural queen, false Isabel,  
That thus hath pent and mewed me in a prison;  
For such outrageous passions cloy my soul,  
As with the wings of rancour and disdain, 20  
Full often am I soaring up to Heaven,  
To plain me to the gods against them both.  
But, when I call to mind I am a king,  
Methinks I should revenge me of my wrongs,  
That Mortimer and Isabel have done.  
But what are kings, when regiment is gone,

But perfect shadows in a sunshine day?  
My nobles rule, I bear the name of king;  
I wear the crown, but am controlled by them,  
By Mortimer, and my unconstant queen, 30  
Who spots my nuptial bed with infamy;  
Whilst I am lodged within this cave of care,  
Where so row at my elbow still attends,  
To company my heart with sad laments,  
That bleeds within me for this strange exchange.  
But tell me, must I now resign my crown,  
To make usurping Mortimer a king?

*B. of Win.* Your grace mistakes; it is for England's  
good,  
And princely Edward's right we crave the crown.

*K. Edw.* No, 'tis for Mortimer, not Edward's head; 40  
For he's a lamb, encompassèd by wolves,  
Which in a moment will abridge his life.  
But if proud Mortimer do wear this crown,  
Heavens turn it to a blaze of quenchless fire!  
Or like the snaky wreath of Tisiphon,<sup>a</sup>  
Engirt the temples of his hateful head;  
So shall not England's vine be perishèd,  
But Edward's name survives, though Edward dies.

*Leices.* My lord, why waste you thus the time away?  
They stay your answer; will you yield your crown? 50

*K. Edw.* Ah, Leicester, weigh how hardly I can brook  
To lose my crown and kingdom without cause;  
To give ambitious Mortimer my right,  
That like a mountain overwhelms my bliss,  
In which extreme my mind here murdered is.  
But what the heavens appoint, I must obey!  
Here, take my crown; the life of Edward too;

[*Taking off the crown.*]

Two kings in England cannot reign at once.  
But stay awhile, let me be king till night,  
That I may gaze upon this glittering crown; 60  
So shall my eyes receive their last content,



My head, the latest honour due to it,  
 And jointly both yield up their wishèd right.  
 Continue ever thou celestial sun;  
 Let never silent night possess this clime:  
 Stand still you watches of the element;  
 All times and seasons, rest you at a stay,  
 That Edward may be still fair England's king!  
 But day's bright beam doth vanish fast away,  
 And needs I must resign my wishèd crown.  
 Inhuman creatures! nursed with tiger's milk!  
 Why gape you for your sovereign's overthrow!  
 My diadem I mean, and guiltless life.  
 See, monsters, see, I'll wear my crown again!

70

*[He puts on the crown.]*

What, fear you not the fury of your king?  
 But, hapless Edward, thou art fondly led;  
 They pass not for thy frowns as late they did,  
 But seek to make a new-elected king;  
 Which fills my mind with strange despairing thoughts,  
 Which thoughts are martyrèd with endless torments, 80  
 And in this torment comfort find I none,  
 But that I feel the crown upon my head;  
 And therefore let me wear it yet awhile.

*Trus.<sup>n</sup>* My lord, the parliament must have present  
 news,

And therefore say, will you resign or no?

*[The KING rageth.]*

*K. Edw.* I'll not resign, but whilst I live be king.  
 Traitors, be gone! and join you with Mortimer!  
 Elect, conspire, install, do what you will —  
 Their blood and yours shall seal these treacheries!

*B. of Win.* This answer we'll return, and so farewell.

*[Going with TRUSSEL.]*

*Leices.* Call them again, my lord, and speak them fair;  
 For if they go, the prince shall lose his right. 92

*K. Edw.* Call thou them back, I have no power to  
 speak.

*Leices.* My lord, the king is willing to resign.

*B. of Win.* If he be not, let him choose.

*K. Edw.* Oh, would I might! but Heavens and earth  
conspire

To make me miserable! Here, receive my crown;

Receive it? no, these innocent hands of mine

Shall not be guilty of so foul a crime.

He of you all that most desires my blood,

100

And will be called the murderer of a king,

Take it. What, are you moved? pity you me?

Then send for unrelenting Mortimer,

And Isabel, whose eyes, being turned to steel,

Will sooner sparkle fire than shed a tear.

Yet stay, for rather than I'll look on them,

Here, here! *[Gives the crown.]*

Now, sweet God of Heaven,

Make me despise this transitory pomp,

And sit for aye enthronized in Heaven!

Come, death, and with thy fingers close my eyes,

110

Or if I live, let me forget myself.

*B. of Win.* My lord —

*K. Edw.* Call me not lord; away — out of my sight:

Ah, pardon me: grief makes me lunatic!

Let not that Mortimer protect<sup>n</sup> my son;

More safety there is in a tiger's jaws,

Than his embracements. Bear this to the queen,

Wet with my tears, and dried again with sighs;

*[Gives a handkerchief.]*

If with the sight thereof she be not moved,

Return it back and dip it in my blood.

120

Commend me to my son, and bid him rule

Better than I. Yet how have I transgressed,

Unless it be with too much clemency?

*Trus.* And thus most humbly do we take our leave.

*K. Edw.* Farewell;

*[Exeunt the BISHOP of WINCHESTER and TRUSSEL.]*

I know the next news that they bring

So shall your brother be disposèd of. —  
I like not this relenting mood in Edmund,  
Madam, 'tis good to look to him betimes.

[*Aside to the QUEEN.*]

*Q. Isab.* My lord, the Mayor of Bristow knows our mind.

*Y. Mor.* Yea, madam, and they 'scape not easily 50  
That fled the field.

*Q. Isab.* Baldock is with the king.

A goodly chancellor is he not, my lord?

*Sir J.* So are the Spensers, the father and the son.

*Kent.* This Edward is the ruin of the realm.

*Enter RICE AP HOWEL, with the Elder SPENSER, prisoner, and Attendants*

*Rice.* God save Queen Isabel, and her princely son!  
Madam, the Mayor and citizens of Bristow,  
In sign of love and duty to this presence,  
Present by me this traitor to the state,  
Spenser, the father to that wanton Spenser,  
That, like the lawless Catiline<sup>a</sup> of Rome, 60  
Revelled in England's wealth and treasury.

*Q. Isab.* We thank you all.

*Y. Mor.* Your loving care in this  
Deserveth princely favours and rewards.  
But where's the king and the other Spenser fled?

*Rice.* Spenser the son, created Earl of Gloucester,  
Is with that smooth-tongued scholar Baldock gone,  
And shipped but late for Ireland with the king.

*Y. Mor.* Some whirlwind fetch them back or sink  
them all! — [Aside.]

They shall be started thence, I doubt it not.

*P. Edw.* Shall I not see the king my father yet? 70

*Kent.* Unhappy Edward, chased from England's  
bounds. [Aside.]

*Sir J.* Madam, what resteth, why stand you in a muse?

*Q. Isab.* I rue my lord's ill-fortune; but alas!  
Care of my country called me to this war.

*Y. Mor.* Madam, have done with care and sad complaint;

Your king hath wronged your country and himself,  
And we must seek to right it as we may.  
Meanwhile, have hence this rebel to the block.

*E. Spen.* Rebel is he that fights against the prince;<sup>a</sup>  
So fought not they that fought in Edward's right. 80

*Y. Mor.* Take him away, he prates;

[*Exeunt Attendants with the Elder SPENSER.*

You, Rice ap Howel,<sup>a</sup>

Shall do good service to her majesty,  
Being of countenance in your country here,  
To follow these rebellious runagates.  
We in meanwhile, madam, must take advice;  
How Baldock, Spenser, and their 'complices,  
May in their fall be followed to their end. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE VI<sup>a</sup>

*Enter the Abbot, Monks, KING EDWARD, Young SPENSER,  
and BALDOCK (the three latter disguised)*

*Abbot.* Have you no doubt, my lord; have you no fear;

As silent and as careful we will be,  
To keep your royal person safe with us,  
Free from suspect, and fell invasion  
Of such as have your majesty in chase,  
Yourself, and those your chosen company,  
As danger of this stormy time requires.

*K. Edw.* Father, thy face should harbour no deceit.  
Oh! hadst thou ever been a king, thy heart,  
Pierced deeply with a sense of my distress, 10  
Could not but take compassion of my state.

So shall your brother be disposed of. —  
 I like not this relenting mood in Edmund,  
 Madam, 'tis good to look to him betimes.

[*Aside to the QUEEN.*

*Q. Isab.* My lord, the Mayor of Bristow knows our mind.

*Y. Mor.* Yea, madam, and they 'scape not easily 50  
 That fled the field.

*Q. Isab.* Baldock is with the king.  
 A goodly chancellor is he not, my lord?

*Sir J.* So are the Spensers, the father and the son.

*Kent.* This Edward is the ruin of the realm.

*Enter RICE AP HOWEL, with the Elder SPENSER, prisoner, and Attendants*

*Rice.* God save Queen Isabel, and her princely son!  
 Madam, the Mayor and citizens of Bristow,  
 In sign of love and duty to this presence,  
 Present by me this traitor to the state,  
 Spenser, the father to that wanton Spenser,  
 That, like the lawless Catiline<sup>n</sup> of Rome, 60  
 Revelled in England's wealth and treasury.

*Q. Isab.* We thank you all.

*Y. Mor.* Your loving care in this  
 Deserveth princely favours and rewards.  
 But where's the king and the other Spenser fled?

*Rice.* Spenser the son, created Earl of Gloucester,  
 Is with that smooth-tongued scholar Baldock gone,  
 And shipped but late for Ireland with the king.

*Y. Mor.* Some whirlwind fetch them back or sink  
 them all! — [Aside.

They shall be started thence, I doubt it not.

*P. Edw.* Shall I not see the king my father yet? 70

*Kent.* Unhappy Edward, chased from England's  
 bounds. [Aside.

*Sir J.* Madam, what resteth, why stand you in a muse?

*Q. Isab.* I rue my lord's ill-fortune; but alas!  
Care of my country called me to this war.

*Y. Mor.* Madam, have done with care and sad complaint;

Your king hath wronged your country and himself,  
And we must seek to right it as we may.  
Meanwhile, have hence this rebel to the block.

*E. Spen.* Rebel is he that fights against the prince;<sup>n</sup>  
So fought not they that fought in Edward's right. 80

*Y. Mor.* Take him away, he prates;

[*Exeunt Attendants with the Elder SPENSER.*

You, Rice ap Howel,<sup>n</sup>

Shall do good service to her majesty,  
Being of countenance in your country here,  
To follow these rebellious runagates.  
We in meanwhile, madam, must take advice;  
How Baldock, Spenser, and their 'complices,  
May in their fall be followed to their end. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE VI<sup>n</sup>

*Enter the Abbot, Monks, KING EDWARD, Young SPENSER,  
and BALDOCK (the three latter disguised)*

*Abbot.* Have you no doubt, my lord; have you no fear;

As silent and as careful we will be,  
To keep your royal person safe with us,  
Free from suspect, and fell invasion  
Of such as have your majesty in chase,  
Yourself, and those your chosen company,  
As danger of this stormy time requires.

*K. Edw.* Father, thy face should harbour no deceit.  
Oh! hadst thou ever been a king, thy heart,  
Pierced deeply with a sense of my distress, 10  
Could not but take compassion of my state.

Stately and proud, in riches and in train,  
Whilom I was, powerful and full of pomp:  
But what is he whom rule and empery  
Have not in life or death made miserable?  
Come, Spenser; come, Baldock, come, sit down by  
me;

Make trial now of that philosophy,  
That in our famous nurseries of arts  
Thou suck'dst from Plato and from Aristotle.<sup>a</sup>  
Father, this life contemplative is Heaven. 20  
Oh, that I might this life in quiet lead!  
But we, alas! are chased; and you, my friends,  
Your lives and my dishonour they pursue.  
Yet, gentle monks, for treasure, gold nor fee,  
Do you betray us and our company.

*Monk.* Your grace may sit secure,<sup>a</sup> if none but we  
Do wot of your abode.

*Y. Spen.* Not one alive, but shrewdly I suspect  
A gloomy fellow in a mead below.  
'A gave a long look after us, my lord; 30  
And all the land I know is up in arms,  
Arms that pursue our lives with deadly hate.

*Bald.* We were embarked for Ireland, wretched we!  
With awkward winds and sore<sup>a</sup> tempests driven  
To fall on shore, and here to pine in fear  
Of Mortimer and his confederates.

*K. Edw.* Mortimer! who talks of Mortimer?  
Who wounds me with the name of Mortimer,  
That bloody man? Good father, on thy lap  
Lay I this head, laden with mickle care. 40  
Oh, might I never open these eyes again!  
Never again lift up this drooping head!  
Oh, never more lift up this dying heart!

*Y. Spen.* Look up, my lord.—Baldock, this drowsiness  
Betides no good; here even we are betrayed.

*Enter, with Welsh hooks, RICE AP HOWEL, a Mower, and LEICESTER*

*Mow.* Upon my life, these be the men ye seek.

*Rice.* Fellow, enough. — My lord, I pray be short,  
A fair commission warrants what we do.

*Leices.* The queen's commission, urged by Mortimer;  
What cannot<sup>a</sup> gallant Mortimer with the queen? 50

Alas! see where he sits, and hopes unseen  
To escape their hands that seek to reave his life.

Too true it is, *Quem dies vidit veniens superbum,*  
*Hunc dies vidit fugiens jacentem.*<sup>a</sup>

But, Leicester, leave to grow so passionate.

Spenser and Baldock, by no other names,

I do arrest you of high treason here.

Stand not on titles, but obey the arrest;

'Tis in the name of Isabel the queen.

My lord, why droop you thus? 60

*K. Edw.* O day the last of all my bliss on earth!

Centre of all misfortune!<sup>a</sup> O my stars,

Why do you lour unkindly on a king?

Comes Leicester, then, in Isabella's name

To take my life, my company from me?

Here, man, rip up this panting breast of mine,

And take my heart in rescue of my friends!

*Rice.* Away with them!

*Y. Spen.* It may become thee yet  
To let us take our farewell of his grace.

*Abbot.* My heart with pity earns to see this sight, 70  
A king to bear these words and proud commands.

[*Aside.*

*K. Edw.* Spenser, ah, sweet Spenser, thus then must  
we part?

*Y. Spen.* We must, my lord, so will the angry Heavens.

*K. Edw.* Nay, so will hell and cruel Mortimer;  
The gentle Heavens have not to do in this.

*Bald.* My lord, it is in vain to grieve or storm.



Lords,

Sith that we are by sufferance of Heaven  
Arrived, and armèd in this prince's right,  
Here for our country's cause swear we to him

20

All homage, fealty and forwardness;  
And for the open wrongs and injuries  
Edward hath done to us, his queen and land,  
We come in arms to wreak it with the sword;  
That England's queen in peace may repossess  
Her dignities and honours: and withal  
We may remove these flatterers from the king,  
That havoc England's wealth and treasury.

*Sir J.* Sound trumpets, my lord, and forward let us  
march.

Edward will think we come to flatter him.

30

*Kent.* I would he never had been flattered more!

[*Exeunt.*

### SCENE V<sup>n</sup>

*Enter* KING EDWARD, BALDOCK, *and* Young SPENSER

*Y. Spen.* Fly, fly, my lord! the queen is over-strong;  
Her friends do multiply, and yours do fail.  
Shape we our course to Ireland, there to breathe.

*K. Edw.* What! was I born to fly and run away,  
And leave the Mortimers conquerors behind?  
Give me my horse, and let's reinforce<sup>n</sup> our troops:  
And in this bed of honour die with fame.

*Bald.* Oh, no, my lord, this princely resolution  
Fits not the time; away! we are pursued. [*Exeunt.*

*Enter* KENT, *with sword and target*

*Kent.* This way he fled, but I am come too late. 10  
Edward, alas! my heart relents for thee.  
Proud traitor, Mortimer, why dost thou chase  
Thy lawful king, thy sovereign, with thy sword?\*

Vile wretch! and why hast thou, of all unkind,<sup>n</sup>  
Borne arms against thy brother and thy king?  
Rain showers of vengeance on my cursèd head,  
Thou God, to whom in justice it belongs  
To punish this unnatural revolt!  
Edward, this Mortimer aims at thy life!  
Oh, fly him, then! But, Edmund, calm this rage, 20  
Dissemble, or thou diest; for Mortimer  
And Isabel do kiss, while they conspire:  
And yet she bears a face of love forsooth.  
Fie on that love that hatcheth death and hate!  
Edmund, away! Bristow to Longshanks' blood  
Is false; be not found single for suspect.<sup>n</sup>  
Proud Mortimer pries near unto thy walks.<sup>n</sup>

*Enter* QUEEN ISABELLA, PRINCE EDWARD, Young  
MORTIMER, and SIR JOHN of HAINAULT

*Q. Isab.* Successful battle gives the God of kings  
To them that fight in right and fear his wrath.  
Since then successfully we have prevailed, 30  
Thankèd be Heaven's great architect, and you.  
Ere farther we proceed, my noble lords,  
We here create our well-belovèd son,  
Of love and care unto his royal person,  
Lord Warden of the realm, and sith the fates  
Have made his father so infortunate,  
Deal you, my lords, in this, my loving lords,  
As to your wisdoms fittest seems in all.

*Kent.* Madam, without offence, if I may ask,  
How will you deal with Edward in his fall? 40

*P. Edw.* Tell me, good uncle, what Edward do you  
mean?

*Kent.* Nephew, your father: I dare not call him king.

*Y. Mor.* My lord of Kent, what needs these questions?  
'Tis not in her controlment, nor in ours,  
But as the realm and parliament shall please,

So shall your brother be disposèd of. —  
I like not this relenting mood in Edmund,  
Madam, 'tis good to look to him betimes.

[*Aside to the QUEEN.*

*Q. Isab.* My lord, the Mayor of Bristow knows our mind.

*Y. Mor.* Yea, madam, and they 'scape not easily 50  
That fled the field.

*Q. Isab.* Baldock is with the king.  
A goodly chancellor is he not, my lord?

*Sir J.* So are the Spensers, the father and the son.

*Kent.* This Edward is the ruin of the realm.

*Enter RICE AP HOWEL, with the Elder SPENSER, prisoner, and Attendants*

*Rice.* God save Queen Isabel, and her princely son!  
Madam, the Mayor and citizens of Bristow,  
In sign of love and duty to this presence,  
Present by me this traitor to the state,  
Spenser, the father to that wanton Spenser,  
That, like the lawless Catiline<sup>n</sup> of Rome, 60  
Revelled in England's wealth and treasury.

*Q. Isab.* We thank you all.

*Y. Mor.* Your loving care in this  
Deserveth princely favours and rewards.  
But where's the king and the other Spenser fled?

*Rice.* Spenser the son, created Earl of Gloucester,  
Is with that smooth-tongued scholar Baldock gone,  
And shipped but late for Ireland with the king.

*Y. Mor.* Some whirlwind fetch them back or sink  
them all! — [Aside.  
They shall be started thence, I doubt it not.

*P. Edw.* Shall I not see the king my father yet? 70

*Kent.* Unhappy Edward, chased from England's  
bounds. [Aside.

*Sir J.* Madam, what resteth, why stand you in a muse?

*Q. Isab.* I rue my lord's ill-fortune; but alas!  
Care of my country called me to this war.

*Y. Mor.* Madam, have done with care and sad complaint;

Your king hath wronged your country and himself,  
And we must seek to right it as we may.  
Meanwhile, have hence this rebel to the block.

*E. Spen.* Rebel is he that fights against the prince;<sup>n</sup>  
So fought not they that fought in Edward's right. 80

*Y. Mor.* Take him away, he prates;

[*Exeunt Attendants with the Elder SPENSER.*

You, Rice ap Howel,<sup>n</sup>

Shall do good service to her majesty,  
Being of countenance in your country here,  
To follow these rebellious runagates.  
We in meanwhile, madam, must take advice,  
How Baldock, Spenser, and their 'complices,  
May in their fall be followed to their end. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE VI<sup>n</sup>

*Enter the Abbot, Monks, KING EDWARD, Young SPENSER,  
and BALDOCK (the three latter disguised)*

*Abbot.* Have you no doubt, my lord; have you no fear;

As silent and as careful we will be,  
To keep your royal person safe with us,  
Free from suspect, and fell invasion  
Of such as have your majesty in chase,  
Yourself, and those your chosen company,  
As danger of this stormy time requires.

*K. Edw.* Father, thy face should harbour no deceit.  
Oh! hadst thou ever been a king, thy heart,  
Pierced deeply with a sense of my distress, 10  
Could not but take compassion of my state.

Stately and proud, in riches and in train,  
Whilom I was, powerful and full of pomp:  
But what is he whom rule and empery  
Have not in life or death made miserable?  
Come, Spenser; come, Baldock, come, sit down by  
me;

Make trial now of that philosophy,  
That in our famous nurseries of arts  
Thou suck'dst from Plato and from Aristotle.<sup>a</sup>  
Father, this life contemplative is Heaven. 20  
Oh, that I might this life in quiet lead!  
But we, alas! are chased; and you, my friends,  
Your lives and my dishonour they pursue.  
Yet, gentle monks, for treasure, gold nor fee,  
Do you betray us and our company.

*Monk.* Your grace may sit secure,<sup>a</sup> if none but we  
Do wot of your abode.

*Y. Spen.* Not one alive, but shrewdly I suspect  
A gloomy fellow in a mead below.  
'A gave a long look after us, my lord; 30  
And all the land I know is up in arms,  
Arms that pursue our lives with deadly hate.

*Bald.* We were embarked for Ireland, wretched we!  
With awkward winds and sore<sup>a</sup> tempests driven  
To fall on shore, and here to pine in fear  
Of Mortimer and his confederates.

*K. Edw.* Mortimer! who talks of Mortimer?  
Who wounds me with the name of Mortimer,  
That bloody man? Good father, on thy lap  
Lay I this head, laden with mickle care. 40  
Oh, might I never open these eyes again!  
Never again lift up this drooping head!  
Oh, never more lift up this dying heart!

*Y. Spen.* Look up, my lord.—Baldock, this drowsiness  
Betides no good; here even we are betrayed.

*Enter, with Welsh hooks, RICE AP HOWEL, a Mower, and LEICESTER*

*Mow.* Upon my life, these be the men ye seek.

*Rice.* Fellow, enough. — My lord, I pray be short,  
A fair commission warrants what we do.

*Leices.* The queen's commission, urged by Mortimer;  
What cannot<sup>a</sup> gallant Mortimer with the queen? 50

Alas! see where he sits, and hopes unseen  
To escape their hands that seek to reave his life.

Too true it is, *Quem dies vidit veniens superbum,*  
*Hunc dies vidit fugiens jacentem.*<sup>a</sup>

But, Leicester, leave to grow so passionate.

Spenser and Baldock, by no other names,

I do arrest you of high treason here.

Stand not on titles, but obey the arrest;

'Tis in the name of Isabel the queen.

My lord, why droop you thus? 60

*K. Edw.* O day the last of all my bliss on earth!

Centre of all misfortune!<sup>a</sup> O my stars,

Why do you lour unkindly on a king?

Comes Leicester, then, in Isabella's name

To take my life, my company from me?

Here, man, rip up this panting breast of mine,

And take my heart in rescue of my friends!

*Rice.* Away with them!

*Y. Spen.* It may become thee yet  
To let us take our farewell of his grace.

*Abbot.* My heart with pity earns to see this sight, 70  
A king to bear these words and proud commands.

[*Aside.*

*K. Edw.* Spenser, ah, sweet Spenser, thus then must  
we part?

*Y. Spen.* We must, my lord, so will the angry Heavens.

*K. Edw.* Nay, so will hell and cruel Mortimer;  
The gentle Heavens have not to do in this.

*Bald.* My lord, it is in vain to grieve or storm.

Here humbly of your grace we take our leaves;  
Our lots are cast; I fear me, so is thine.

*K. Edw.* In Heaven we may, in earth ne'er shall we  
meet;

And, Leicester, say, what shall become of us? 80

*Leices.* Your majesty must go to Killingworth.

*K. Edw.* Must! it is somewhat hard, when kings must  
go.

*Leices.* Here is a litter ready for your grace,  
That waits your pleasure, and the day grows old.

*Rice.* As good be gone, as stay and be benighted.

*K. Edw.* A litter hast thou? lay me in a hearse,  
And to the gates of hell convey me hence;  
Let Pluto's bells ring out my fatal knell,  
And hags howl for my death at Charon's shore,  
For friends hath Edward none but these, 90  
And these must die under a tyrant's sword.

*Rice.* My lord, be going; care not for these,  
For we shall see them shorter by the heads.

*K. Edw.* Well, that shall be, shall be: part we must!  
Sweet Spenser, gentle Baldock, part we must!  
Hence feignèd weeds! unfeignèd are my woes;

*[Throws off his disguise.]*

Father, farewell! Leicester, thou stay'st for me,  
And go I must. Life, farewell, with my friends.

*[Exeunt KING EDWARD and LEICESTER.]*

*Y. Spen.* Oh! Is he gone? Is noble Edward gone?  
Parted from hence? never to see us more? 100

Rend, sphere of Heaven! and, fire, forsake thy orb!  
Earth, melt to air! gone is my sovereign,  
Gone, gone, alas! never to make return.

*Bald.* Spenser, I see our souls are fleeting hence;  
We are deprived the sunshine of our life:  
Make for a new life, man; throw up thy eyes,  
And heart and hands to Heaven's immortal throne;  
Pay nature's debt with cheerful countenance;  
Reduce we all our lessons unto this,

To die, sweet Spenser, therefore live we all; 110  
Spenser, all live to die, and rise to fall.

*Rice.* Come, come, keep these preachments till you  
come to the place appointed. You, and such as you are,  
have made wise work in England; will your lordships  
away?

*Mow.* Your lordship, I trust, will remember me?

*Rice.* Remember thee, fellow! what else? Follow  
me to the town. [*Exeunt.*



*K. Edw.* These looks of thine can harbour nought but death:

I see my tragedy written in thy brows.  
Yet stay; awhile forbear thy bloody hand,  
And let me see the stroke before it comes,  
That even then when I shall lose my life,  
My mind may be more steadfast on my God.

*Light.* What means your highness to mistrust me thus?

*K. Edw.* What mean'st thou to dissemble with me thus?

*Light.* These hands were never stained with innocent blood, 80

Nor shall they now be tainted with a king's.

*K. Edw.* Forgive my thought for having such a thought.

One jewel have I left; receive thou this. [*Giving jewel.*

Still fear I, and I know not what's the cause,

But every joint shakes as I give it thee.

Oh, if thou harbourest murder in thy heart,

Let this gift change thy mind, and save thy soul!

Know that I am a king: Oh, at that name

I feel a hell of grief! where is my crown?

Gone, gone! and do I still remain alive? 90

*Light.* You're overwatched, my lord; lie down and rest.

*K. Edw.* But that grief keeps me waking, I should sleep;

For not these ten days have these eyelids closed.

Now as I speak they fall, and yet with fear

Open again. Oh, wherefore sitt'st thou here?

*Light.* If you mistrust me, I'll begone, my lord.

*K. Edw.* No, no, for if thou mean'st to murder me,  
Thou wilt return again, and therefore stay. [*Sleeps.*

*Light.* He sleeps.

*K. Edw.* [*waking*]. Oh, let me not die yet! Oh,  
stay a while! 100

*Light.* How now, my lord?

*K. Edw.* Something still buzzeth in mine ears,  
And tells me if I sleep I never wake;  
This fear is that which makes me tremble thus.  
And therefore tell me, wherefore art thou come?

*Light.* To rid thee of thy life. — Matrevis, come!

*Enter MATREVIS and GURNEY*

*K. Edw.* I am too weak and feeble to resist —  
Assist me, sweet God, and receive my soul!

*Light.* Run for the table.

*K. Edw.* Oh, spare me, or dispatch me in a trice. 110  
[MATREVIS brings in a table.]

*Light.* So, lay the table down, and stamp on it,  
But not too hard, lest that you bruise his body.

[KING EDWARD is murdered.]

*Mat.* I fear me that this cry will raise the town,  
And therefore, let us take horse and away.

*Light.* Tell me, sirs, was it not bravely done?

*Gur.* Excellent well: take this for thy reward.

[GURNEY stabs LIGHTBORN, who dies.]

Come, let us cast the body in the moat,  
And bear the king's to Mortimer our lord:

Away! [Exeunt with the bodies.]

## SCENE VI<sup>a</sup>

*Enter Young MORTIMER and MATREVIS*

*Y. Mor.* Is't done, Matrevis, and the murderer dead?

*Mat.* Ay, my good lord; I would it were undone!

*Y. Mor.* Matrevis, if thou now growest penitent  
I'll be thy ghostly father; therefore choose,  
Whether thou wilt be secret in this,  
Or else die by the hand of Mortimer.

*Mat.* Gurney, my lord, is fled, and will, I fear,  
Betray us both, therefore let me fly.

*Y. Mor.* Fly to the savages!

*Mat.* I humbly thank your honour. [*Exit.*

*Y. Mor.* As for myself, I stand as Jove's huge tree,<sup>1</sup>  
And others are but shrubs compared to me. 11  
All tremble at my name, and I fear none;  
Let's see who dare impeach me for his death!

*Enter* QUEEN ISABELLA

*Q. Isab.* Ah, Mortimer, the king my son hath news  
His father's dead, and we have murdered him!

*Y. Mor.* What if he have? the king is yet a child.

*Q. Isab.* Ay, but he tears his hair, and wrings his hands,  
And vows to be revenged upon us both.  
Into the council-chamber he is gone,  
To crave the aid and succour of his peers. 20  
Ay me! see where he comes, and they with him;  
Now, Mortimer, begins our tragedy.

*Enter* KING EDWARD THE THIRD, Lords, and Attendants

*1st Lord.* Fear not, my lord, know that you are a  
king.

*K. Edw. Third.* Villain! —

*Y. Mor.* Ho, now, my lord!

*K. Edw. Third.* Think not that I am frighted with  
thy words!

My father's murdered through thy treachery;  
And thou shalt die, and on his mournful hearse  
Thy hateful and accursèd head shall lie.  
To witness to the world, that by thy means  
His kingly body was too soon interred. 30

*Q. Isab.* Weep not, sweet son!

*K. Edw. Third.* Forbid me not to weep; he was my  
father;  
And, had you loved him half so well as I,

You could not bear his death thus patiently.

But you, I fear, conspired with Mortimer.

*1st Lord.* Why speak you not unto my lord the king?

*Y. Mor.* Because I think it scorn to be accused.

Who is the man dares say I murdered him?

*K. Edw. Third.* Traitor! in me my loving father speaks,

And plainly saith, 'twas thou that murder'dst him. 40

*Y. Mor.* But has your grace no other proof than this?

*K. Edw. Third.* Yes, if this be the hand of Mortimer.

[*Showing letter.*

*Y. Mor.* False Gurney hath betrayed me and himself.

[*Aside.*

*Q. Isab.* I feared as much; murder cannot be hid.

[*Aside.*

*Y. Mor.* It is my hand; what gather you by this?

*K. Edw. Third.* That thither thou didst send a murderer.

*Y. Mor.* What murderer? Bring forth the man I sent.

*K. Edw. Third.* Ah, Mortimer, thou knowest that he is slain;

And so shalt thou be too. — Why stays he here?

Bring him unto a hurdle, drag him forth; 50

Hang him, I say, and set his quarters up;

But bring his head back presently to me.

*Q. Isab.* For my sake, sweet son, pity Mortimer.

*Y. Mor.* Madam, entreat not, I will rather die,  
Than sue for life unto a paltry boy.

*K. Edw. Third.* Hence with the traitor! with the murderer!

*Y. Mor.* Base Fortune, now I see, that in thy wheel

There is a point, to which when men aspire,

They tumble headlong down: that point I touched,

And, seeing there was no place to mount up higher, 60

Why should I grieve at my declining fall? —

Farewell, fair queen; weep not for Mortimer,

That scorns the world, and, as a traveller,  
Goes to discover countries yet unknown.

*K. Edw. Third.* What! suffer you the traitor to delay?

[*Young MORTIMER is taken away by 1st Lord and Attendants.*]

*Q. Isab.* As thou receivedest thy life from me,  
Spill not the blood of gentle Mortimer!

*K. Edw. Third.* This argues that you spilt my father's  
blood,

Else would you not entreat for Mortimer.

*Q. Isab.* I spill his blood? no.

70

*K. Edw. Third.* Ay, madam, you; for so the rumour  
runs.

*Q. Isab.* That rumour is untrue; for loving thee,  
Is this report raised on poor Isabel.

*K. Edw. Third.* I do not think her so unnatural.

*2nd Lord.* My lord, I fear me it will prove too true.

*K. Edw. Third.* Mother, you are suspected for his  
death,

And therefore we commit you to the Tower

Till farther trial may be made thereof;

If you be guilty, though I be your son,

Think not to find me slack or pitiful.

80

*Q. Isab.* Nay, to my death, for too long have I lived,  
Whenas my son thinks to abridge my days.

*K. Edw. Third.* Away with her, her words enforce  
these tears,

And I shall pity her if she speak again.

*Q. Isab.* Shall I not mourn for my belovèd lord,  
And with the rest accompany him to his grave?

*2nd Lord.* Thus, madam, 'tis the king's will you shall  
hence.

*Q. Isab.* He hath forgotten me; stay, I am his mother.

*2nd Lord.* That boots not; therefore, gentle madam,  
go.

*Q. Isab.* Then come, sweet death, and rid me of this  
grief.

[*Exit.* 90]

*Re-enter* 1st Lord, *with the head of* Young MORTIMER

1st Lord. My lord, here is the head of Mortimer.

K. Edw. Third. Go fetch my father's hearse, where it shall lie;

And bring my funeral robes. *[Exeunt Attendants.*

Accursèd head,

Could I have ruled thee then, as I do now,  
Thou had'st not hatched this monstrous treachery! —  
Here comes the hearse; help me to mourn, my lords.

●

*Re-enter Attendants with the hearse and funeral robes*

Sweet father, here unto thy murdered ghost  
I offer up this wicked traitor's head;  
And let these tears, distilling from mine eyes,  
Be witness of my grief and innocence. *[Exeunt. 100*

THE text followed, in the main, is that of Bullen. The spelling and punctuation have been modernized, and a few slight changes have been made in the subdivision of scenes. Editorial interpolations in the way of readings have in all cases been enclosed in double brackets: [ ]. Marlowe's own stage directions are indicated by single brackets.

## NOTES

Figures in black type refer to pages; those in light face to lines.

### TAMBURLAINE THE GREAT

#### PART THE FIRST

*Tamburlaine* was probably written and first acted in 1587. It was first published in 1590, in which year there were two editions. The play was received with great favour, as is attested by at least four subsequent editions in rapid succession. Marlowe probably got his material for the play chiefly from Thomas Fortescue's English translation (*Foreste*, 1571) of Pedro Mexia's life of Timur,<sup>1</sup> published at Seville in 1543. Perondinus's *Vita Magni Tamerlanis* (Florence, 1551) doubtless gave him suggestions when describing Tamburlaine's person. He may have derived hints from Herodotus, Euripides, and Xenophon for his description of Persian effeminacy.

29 : 1-2. **From jiggng veins . . . pay.** These words may be regarded as the death-knell of rhyme and clownish conceits. See Introduction, pp. 4-5.

36 : 170. **And Jove may.** And may Jove. Marlowe endows his Persian characters with a knowledge of Greek mythology.

43 : 205. **As far . . . wings.** Cf. Ovid (*Trist.*, III, x, line 45): "Et quamvis Boreas jactatis insonet alis."

44 : 243. **Whose statues . . . Scythia.** Cf. Ovid (*Ex Ponto*, III, ii, lines 95-96):

"Manis amor juvenum, quamvis abiere tot anni,  
In Scythia magnum nunc quoque nomen habet."

45 : 11. **Pitch.** A projecting point of some part of the body, as the shoulder. Here it means height in general. The word also meant the height to which a falcon rises before swooping down on its prey.

<sup>1</sup> Tamburlaine means Timur the lame.



**51 : 9. Clouts . . . pin.** Terms of archery. The pin passed through the centre of the clout, or white mark, fastening it to the butt or target.

**63 : 57. the young Arabian.** Alcidas, to whom Zenocrate had been betrothed.

**79 : 96. Plato's wondrous year.** A cycle of about 26,000 years, the period of time required for the equinoxes to complete their revolution. See Plato's *Timæus*.

**84 : 81. Pen.** This refers to his sword.

**89 : 5. sent ye . . . flags.** The sense of *sent out* seems to be understood with the *when* clause, "Have sent ye out, when first my milk-white flags were sent out (appeared)."

**91 : 95. conceit of foil.** Expectation of defeat.

**92 : 115-127. Save . . . nobility.** Mr. Edward T. McLaughlin paraphrases this long sentence as follows: "I, Tamburlaine, the inflexible conqueror, am allowing myself to be tempted by Zenocrate to conclude terms with her father. Such a hesitation would be unworthy, were it not in tribute to beauty, which touches every high-minded hero, and also were not the enticement resisted, as I will resist it, and thus prove myself more resolute than Jove himself."

**93 : 138. As if . . . us.** As if we must lose our lives.

**96 : 256. Make ready my coach.** Cf. Ophelia's speech, "Come, my coach," etc. (*Hamlet*, IV, v).

## PART THE SECOND

**106. Soria.** Syria, according to Cunningham and Bullen. Dyce, however, thinks it may refer to Tyre, which, since the rise of the Arabic power in the East, had been known as Sor.

**108 : 28. Giants as big.** On the contrary, the inhabitants are almost dwarfs. Cf. *Doctor Faustus*, Scene i, 124. — **37. The Terrene . . . falls.** A mistake of Marlowe's, whose ideas of geography seem vague. The Danube, of course, does not fall into the Mediterranean, but into the Black Sea.

**115 : 31. Their legs . . . air.** Both Bullen and Cunningham omitted this line.

**120 : 208. And . . . Europe.** The bracketed words were inserted by Cunningham to complete the line.

**127 : 40. And if.** If; *and* and the shortened form *an* are frequently so used in our old literature.

**129** : 87-88. **Helen** (... Tenedos). Cf. *Doctor Faustus*, xiii, 91-92 :

"Was this the face that launched a thousand ships

And burnt the topless towers of Ilium?"

**138** : 1. **northward**. Cunningham suggests this ought to be *southward*, since Balsera itself was pretty far south.

**146** : 101. **for running away again**. In order to prevent you running away again. — 134. **Good . . . take it**. "Here Almeda must be supposed to look tremblingly at Tamburlaine." (Cunningham.)

**147** : 137-138. **king . . . arms**. An allusion to granting heraldic coat-of-arms, played upon by Tamburlaine.

**152** : 32. **foil**. Defilement, dishonour.

**153** : 56. **for being seen**. In order not to be seen.

**154** : 114. **about the females' miss**. Because the females are missing.

**157** : 78. **She anoints her throat**. Mr. J. P. Collier shows that this incident is borrowed from *Orlando Furioso*, Book xxix.

**158** : 1. **Holla . . . Asia**. This line was parodied in derision by many writers. See Pistol's parody, for example, in 2 *Henry IV*, II, iv, lines 177 ff.

**159** : 48-49. **hedges . . . colts**. *Hedges* apparently refers to teeth, and *kicking colts* to tongues, as is shown three lines below.

**161** : 119. **Like . . . high**. Compare Spenser's *Faërie Queene* (1590), I, vii, stanza 32 for this and the five succeeding lines. The variations are so slight that Bullen is led to suggest that Marlowe must have seen the passage in MS.

**165**. **spare**. To spare. This refers to the kings out of harness.

**176** : 136. **quickly sail to India**. These lines have been considered by some commentators as an anticipation of the present Suez Canal. It is, however, a matter of historical record that the Egyptians under Sesostriis (reigned 1394-1328 B.C.) commenced a canal for the purpose of uniting the Red Sea at Arsinoe (Suez) with the easternmost branch of the Nile. This was completed by Ptolemy Philadelphus II about 277 B.C. Marlowe's lines, however, were probably inspired by the project of Venice to pierce the Isthmus of Suez, after her commercial supremacy had suffered so severely from Vasco da Gama's discovery of the sea-route to India by way of the Cape of Good Hope.

**178** : 199. **And . . . sovereignty**. And plead in vain how unpleasing is sovereignty when it is bought with the price of the death of such a father.

## THE TRAGICAL HISTORY OF DOCTOR FAUSTUS

The earliest extant edition of *Doctor Faustus* is that of 1604; the second edition (1609) agrees almost exactly with the first; a third edition, published in 1616, differs materially from the earlier quartos, containing many new scenes and many alterations. The present text follows that of the edition of 1604, with a few emendations adopted in the texts of Dyce and Bullen.

Marlowe founded his tragedy on a famous German work, "The History of Dr. Johann Faust, the widely-noised conjuror and master of the Black Art," which was first printed in Frankfort-on-the-Main in 1587. The earliest known English translation bears the date of 1592 and was entitled *The History of the damnable Life and deserved Death of Dr. John Faustus*. See Introduction, pp. 12-13.

**182. The Pope.** In the quartos of 1604 and 1609 the Pope is not mentioned by name, but in the scene inserted in the third edition of 1616 he is addressed by Bruno as "Pope Adrian." This "Saxon Bruno" was introduced as a rival who had been overcome by Pope Adrian. There is nothing, however, to identify either as historical characters and no foundation in fact, whether as referring to the pontificate of Adrian VI (1522-1523) or any other. — **Emperor of Germany.** Charles V, emperor from 1519 to 1556. — **The Seven Deadly Sins.** Pride, covetousness, lust, anger, gluttony, envy, and sloth. In Scene vi, *anger* is called *wrath*; and *lust*, *lechery*.

**183 : 2. mate.** Confound, defeat. Marlowe is wrong; the Carthaginians under Hannibal were victorious at the Battle of Lake Trasimenus. — **4. In courts of kings.** *Nor* is understood before these words. — **7-8. perform The form.** Show forth the outline. — **9. appeal our plaud.** Appeal for our applause.

**184.** Dyce suggests that the Chorus, before going out, drew a curtain, and disclosed Faustus sitting in his study. — **27. Justinian.** Under his reign (527-565) the civil jurisprudence was digested in the *Code*, the *Pandects*, and the *Institutes*.

**185 : 45. Che sera sera.** For *che sarà sarà*, the modern form of an old Italian proverb. The correct modern rendering of it would be, according to Professor Ward, *What shall be, will be* (That which is fixed by fate to happen will happen); or, *What*

*shall be, shall be* (That which is fixed by fate to happen will inevitably happen). The use of *shall* and *will* in Elizabethan times was not at all settled. — 63. **German Valdes and Cornelius.** Cornelius is the famous Cornelius Agrippa. Valdes is not known. In Scene ii it is said that "they two are infamous throughout the world." It has been suggested that Valdes refers to Paracelsus.

186 : 71. **that.** The magical book. — 74. **Jove.** Here used as *God*. — 88. **the public schools.** The university class rooms at Wittenberg. Marlowe probably had Oxford in mind. The term is still in use at the English universities. — 91. **the Prince of Parma.** Alexander Farnese, Prince (from 1586, Duke) of Parma. — 94. **the fiery keel . . . bridge.** A reference to the "demon fire-ship" with which the Dutch, besieged in Antwerp (1584-1585), effected a breach in the bridge built by the Duke of Parma across the Scheldt.

187 : 101-102. **but . . . object.** Perhaps no more than : that will receive no objection. The words are probably corrupt. — 114. **sweet Musseus.** Cf. Virgil's *Æneid*, VI, 667. — 116. **shadows.** The shadows raised by Agrippa the magician. — 124. **Lapland giants.** Laplanders are, on the contrary, small. Cf. *Tamburlaine*, Part the Second, I, Scene i, line 28.

189. The scene is before Faustus's house, as Wagner presently speaks of his master being within, at dinner. — 25. **the place of execution.** Faustus's dining-room, where execution is done upon meat and drink.

190. The scene is a grove. See the conversation of Faustus and Valdes near the end of Scene i.

194. The scene, Dyce suggests, is probably a street. — 16. **Qui mihi discipulus.** The first words of W. Lily's "Ad discipulos carmen de moribus."

195 : 54. **round slop.** *Slop* is used in early English in the sense of an over-garment. *Round slop* were loose breeches or large trunk-hose, and the word has the same general meaning among seamen to-day.

197 : 42. **Solamen . . . doloris.** The origin of this proverb is unknown, though its purport may originally have come from Seneca. The idea has often been expressed. Cf. Chaucer (*Troilus and Criseyde*, i. 708) and Milton (*Paradise Regained*, i. 398).

201 : 163. **thunder and lightning.** "Thunder should be pronounced as a monosyllable, and lightning as a trisyllable (*light-en-ing*)." (A. W. Ward.)

**202 : 172. characters and planets.** Probably a hendiadys for *characters of planets*. — 180. **I warrant thee.** I warrant thee that the book contains what I say. — The scene is a room in Faustus's house. Following Wagner, Bullen, and Ward, a new scene has been begun here, though no interruption in the dialogue is shown in the quartos of 1604 and 1609. In the quarto of 1616 Scene v ends with the first two lines, as here arranged, of Scene vi. Then a new scene begins with the lines of the Chorus given here at the end of Scene vi.

**203 : 21-23. swords . . . dispatch myself.** "These imaginary temptations to suicide are merely the delusions (cf. Macbeth's dagger) of Faustus's own self-tortured mind, which are to be distinguished from his temptation to suicide by Mephistophiles, xiii, 52." (A. W. Ward.) — 28. **he . . . Thebes.** Amphion, who moved rocks by the sound of his lyre. Cf. Tennyson's poem, *Amphion*. — 37. **centric earth.** In the Ptolemaic or pre-Copernican system of astronomy the earth is regarded as the *centre* of the heavenly system. Hence, the term *centric*. — 46. **situ et tempore.** Both as to the direction of, and time occupied by, their revolutions.

**204 : 79. Remember this.** Mephistophiles refers to his own previous speech.

**205 : 116. Ovid's flea.** This refers to the lascivious *Carmen de Pulice*, which was formerly believed to be by Ovid. Bernhardt describes it as "a production of the later Middle Ages."

**208 : 11. to this day.** To-day. — The scene is the Pope's privy chamber. — 13. **Maro's.** Virgil's (Publius Virgilius Maro). In the Middle Ages Virgil was reputed as a magician, and so Faustus would naturally take special interest in him. One of his magical exploits was the cutting through of a mile of stone in one night. — 17. **a sumptuous temple.** St. Mark's at Venice.

**209 : 40. double cannons.** This may mean simply large cannon or cannon with double bores. — 43. **Africa.** Perhaps the writer of the *History of the Damnable Life of Faustus* (from which the passage is taken) had in mind the obelisk brought to Rome from Thebes in Egypt in A.D. 353, by the Emperor Constantius.

**212.** The scene is an inn yard.

**213.** As Dyce points out, a scene is evidently wanting between the *Exeunt* at the end of Scene viii and the *Enter* of Robin and Ralph. — 3. **a simple purchase.** A clear gain or acquisition. — 7. **Drawer.** The louts obviously mistake. The vintner was the keeper of a public house who sold the wine; the drawer, his servant

who drew it for guests. — 12. *etc.* The actor was left at liberty to furnish his own abuse.

**214 : 18. a matter of truth.** A charge affecting their credit for truth. — 19. *t'one.* The one; compare the use of *tother* for *the other*.

**215.** Before this scene, another (in which figure Martino, Frederick, and Benvolio, gentlemen of the Imperial Court) is added in the quarto of 1616. The present scene is an apartment in the Emperor's palace. Much of the text of this scene is closely borrowed from the prose *History*.

**216 : 44. so far forth.** To such an extent.

**218.** The scene, as Faustus presently indicates, is first a "fair and pleasant green." It then changes to a room in Faustus's house at Wittenberg, where Faustus falls asleep in his chair.

**219 : 25. at any hand.** In any case; in any way. — 30. *am I made man.* Am I a made man. — 32. *the quality . . . hey-ding-ding.* Dr. Furnivall points out that the reference is to the refrain of *Old Simon the King* (See Percy's Folio, *Loose and Humorous Songs*). — 40. *Thy fatal time.* The time allotted to thee by fate. — 46. *Doctor Lopus.* Dr. Roderigo Lopez, physician to Queen Elizabeth. As Marlowe died before Lopez came into notoriety, it is hardly possible to credit Marlowe himself with this allusion.

**220 : 57. the dearest horse.** That is, he shall have to pay most dearly for it.

**221.** The scene is laid at the court of the Duke of Vanholt (Anhalt). Before this scene in the quarto of 1616 is inserted another, in which the Horse-courser tells the story of the jest Faustus played upon him.

**222.** This scene is inside Faustus's house.

**224 : 52. to do thee right.** To pay thee thy due. — 52. *Mephistophiles . . . dagger.* Cf. Faustus's imaginary temptations to suicide, Scene vi, 23.

**225 : 75. Faustus . . . blood.** This stage direction is by Dyce.

**226 : 108-109. the monarch . . . arms.** Marlowe's mythology seems to be in error here. But Van der Velde thinks that "the monarch of the sky" means the sky itself, which is mirrored in the spring Arethusa, and thus lends it an azure hue. Moreover, Arethusa was a general name given by the Greeks to springs. — 114. *sift.* Cf. *St. Luke* xxii. 31, "Satan hath desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat." — 115. *furnace.* An allusion to the furnace from which Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego were

delivered (*Daniel* iii.). — This scene, laid in a room in Faustus's house, has been described by Mr. Fleay as the only dramatic death-bed scene that can be compared in horror to 2 *Henry VI*, III, iii.

**228 : 74. O lente . . . equi!** "By an exquisite touch of nature — the brain involuntarily summoning words employed for other purposes in happier hours — Faust cries aloud the line which Ovid whispered in Corinna's arms." (J. A. Symonds.) Cf. Ovid, *Amores*, i. 13, 40.

**229 : 84–85. Mountain . . . God.** Cf. *Hosea* x. 8, and *Revelation* vi. 16. — **106. Pythagoras' metempsychosis.** To Pythagoras, a Greek philosopher of Samos, is ascribed the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, which was first held by the ancient Egyptians.

**230.** Before the entrance of the Chorus, there is in the quarto of 1616 a short scene between the Scholars, when they find the mangled limbs of Faustus. — **6. Only to wonder at.** To content themselves with wondering at; not to essay. — **9. Terminat . . . opus.** "The source of this line, which has an Ovidian sound, but does not occur in Ovid, remains undiscovered." (A. W. Ward.)

## THE JEW OF MALTA

An incidental reference to the death of the Duke of Guise (see Prologue, line 3 and note) proves that *The Jew of Malta* was written after 1588; probably before 1592. There is no earlier edition of the play than the quarto of 1633. It was frequently acted, under Henslowe's management, between 1591–1592 and 1596. As in *Tamburlaine*, Marlowe sought his plot in oriental history, although no direct source is known. He embodied hearsay versions of the siege of Malta by the Turks under Selim, son of the Sultan Solymán, in 1565, and of another attack on the island by the Spaniards. The indebtedness of Shakespeare's *Merchant of Venice* to *The Jew of Malta* is too well known to require comment.

**233 : 1. Machiavel.** Niccolò Machiavelli (1469–1527), the celebrated Florentine statesman and political writer. He was frequently introduced on the Elizabethan stage as the personification of all that was false and perfidious in state policy. — **3. the Guise.** The Duke of Guise, who was responsible for the Massacre of St. Bartholomew in 1572, and was assassinated in 1588.

**235 : 4. Sabans.** The old editions have Samintes. But, as Bullen points out, there is no connection between them and "the men

of Uz." The Sabans were natives of Saba, Sabea, or Sheba, a kingdom in southern Arabia.

**236 : 39. halcyon's bill.** It was a common belief in folklore that the beak of a stuffed halcyon (kingfisher) suspended freely would take the direction of the wind.

**239.** The scene is here supposed to be shifted to a street or to the Exchange.

**240 : 193. Ego . . . proximus.** Misquoted from Terence's *Andria*, IV, i, 12, "Proximus sum egomet mihi."

**241.** The scene is in the senate- or council-house.

**247 : 214.** Dyce suggests that on the Jews' departure the scene is shifted to a street near Barabas's house.

**250 : 293. unseen hypocrisy.** Cunningham reads *unforeseen*, and explains the meaning to be, "A steady, consistent piece of acting is better than having to put on the hypocrite at a moment's warning."

— **309. waters.** Bullen suggests that this word should be *cloisters*.

**252 : 352. thus.** The old edition has a † inserted here, probably to represent the sign Barabas made with his hand to indicate the notch in the plank under which the treasure was concealed.

**254.** The scene is before Barabas's house, now turned into a nunnery.

**255 : 25. wealth.** Bullen suggests that this should be *youth*. But is not youth wealth? Certainly such a use is no more far-fetched than many other Elizabethan conceits. — **39. Bueno . . . era.** This line in the early editions is scarcely intelligible Spanish. Marlowe probably had little real knowledge of that language. The reading given here is the result of the most plausible guesses of the commentators and may be translated "Good for all (people) my wealth was not."

**256 : 63. Hermoso . . . dineros.** The reading now generally followed, meaning "Beautiful is the pleasure of money."

**257 : 32. lately lost.** Rhodes was wrested from the Knights of St. John by Solyman II in 1522.

**258.** The scene is the market-place. — **24. Heave . . . dog.** Cf. *Merchant of Venice*, I, iii, where Shylock says to Antonio, "Still have I borne it with a patient shrug."

**263 : 175. nose.** Barabas was represented on the stage with a large false nose, as was Shylock in all probability.

**264.** The scene shifts here to the outside (front) of Barabas's house.



**267 : 303. Jebusite.** The Jebusites were one of the seven Canaanitish nations which, according to the *Old Testament*, were doomed to destruction.

**270.** The scene is the outside of Bellamira's house; she makes her appearance on a balcony.

**271.** The scene is a street. — **above.** On the gallery at the back of the stage. — **10. What sight.** What a sight. The article was often omitted. — **10. Lodowick.** "Here, and elsewhere in the play, *Lodowick* should be written and pronounced as in Italian, *Lodovico*. The error is probably due to the copyist who first transcribed the play for the press." (Thayer.)

**272.** The scene is a room in Barabas's house. — **3. held in hand.** "Kept in expectation, having their hopes flattered." (Dyce.)

**275.** The scene is still Barabas's house, but an interval of time has elapsed.

**277 : 59. he . . . spoon.** A very old proverb. Cf. Chaucer's *Squire's Tale*, lines 602-603.

**278 : 93. by the eye.** In abundance. — **101. In few.** In short. — **102. juice of hebon.** A deadly poison, variously identified as ebony (ebony), henbane, or the German *eibe*, yew. Cf. Shakespeare's *hebenon*, *Hamlet* I, v, 62.

**279.** The scene is the interior of the council-house.

**280.** The scene is the interior of the convent.

**281 : 49. crucified a child.** Crucifixion was a crime of which the Jews were frequently accused. It gave Christians a pretext for extortion, especially when a sovereign happened to need ready money.

**282.** The scene is a street in Malta.

**285 : 114. the Turk.** Ithamore.

**286.** The scene is a room in the house of Barabas.

**287 : 26-27. he stands . . . bacon.** It would appear from the following scene that the body was placed upright against the wall outside of the house. — The scene is outside Barabas's house.

**288.** The scene is a veranda of Bellamira's house.

**290 : 44. Turk of tenpence.** A contemptuous term, common at the time.

**291 : 105. by Dis above.** This blunder is intentionally made. — **106. Shalt live . . . my love.** Cf. the beginning of Marlowe's well-known lyric, *The Passionate Shepherd to His Love*, "Come live with me, and be my love."

**292 : 124. ream.** A play upon *realm* and *kingdom*; realm often was written without the *l*, and was commonly pronounced *ream*. —

**138. division.** "Divisions for the voice are intended to be sung in one breath to one syllable. The performance of this style of music is called running a division." (Stainer and Barrett's *Dictionary of Musical Terms*.)

**293.** This scene is in the street. Dyce suggests that it is Barabas's house. But as Barabas presently asks Pilia-Borsa, "Pray, when, sir, shall I see you at my house?" he would appear to be wrong.

**295.** The scene is a veranda of Bellamira's house.

**296 : 25. Snickle hard too fast.** A corrupt passage. *Snickle* is a noose, here perhaps a verb. Cunningham proposes, "snickle hard and fast."

**297 : 77. elder.** "Judas is said to have hanged himself on an elder tree." (Ellis.)

**299.** The scene is inside the council-house.

**301.** The scene is outside the city wall, over which Barabas's body has been thrown, according to the governor's orders.

**302.** The scene is an open place in the city.

**303.** The scene here shifts to the governor's residence, inside the citadel.

**306.** The scene is outside the city walls.

**308.** The scene is a street in Malta. — The scene is a hall in the citadel, with a gallery at the end.

## EDWARD THE SECOND

Edward II was entered in the Stationers' Registers on July 6, 1593, and first published in 1594. This edition was not known until a copy of it was discovered in 1876 in the library at Cassel. Other editions followed in 1598, 1612, and 1622. They are all practically the same and have but few corrupt passages. The play was probably written about 1590. Professor Ward and Dr. Wagner incline to the belief that Marlowe derived his history mainly from Robert Fabyan's *New Chronicles of England and France* (1516). He probably also used the narratives of Stow and Holinshed. Dramatizations of English history were well known long before Marlowe; but this was an early successful application of history to biographical tragedy and was not without its effect on Shakespeare.

**315.** The scene is a street in London. The play is not divided into acts and scenes in the original editions.

**317 : 61. boy.** At this time all women's parts were performed by boys. Actresses did not appear on the English stage until the Restoration. — **74. Lancaster.** Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, was a bitter opponent of the King, an enemy to Gaveston, and the most powerful nobleman in the realm.

**318 : 102. Four earldoms.** Leicester and Derby had been bestowed upon his father, Edmund, Earl of Lancaster ; these had been inherited by Thomas, who added to them Lincoln and Salisbury through his marriage with Alice, daughter and heiress of Henry de Lacy. — **117. Brother.** Kent was half-brother to King Edward II, his mother being Margaret of France, the second wife of Edward I.

**319 : 127. Wiltshire.** It is not known that either of the Mortimers had any special interest or influence in Wiltshire.

**321.** The scene is at Westminster.

**323 : 47. Unto the forest.** Dyce says these words "would imply that the scene was at Windsor," where there was a forest. This, however, does not seem necessary. The scene was more probably in London, as a little later the archbishop says, "I'll entreat you all to cross to Lambeth." The phrase *unto the forest* simply means *into the desert, away from the world*.

**324.** "This scene of five lines, both awkward and unnecessary, is an example of the play's occasionally clumsy construction." (E. T. McLaughlin.) — Scene iv is at the New Temple, London, as indicated in Scene ii.

**325 : 30. peasant . . . minion.** Piers Gaveston was the son of a Gascon knight and had been a playfellow and close companion of Edward from childhood.

**331 : 223. torpedo.** A kind of eel that stuns by giving a species of electric shock.

**333 : 299. brought . . . on his way.** Accompanied.

**335 : 359-362. Whose . . . Scots.** The historical character, the elder Mortimer, was not placed in command of a Scottish expedition, nor was England at that time engaged in any foreign war. "Regarding the First Act as a whole, we must credit Marlowe with a clear exposition of the central thought of the play, viz. Edward and his favourites *vs.* a strong combination of powerful nobles. Isabel and Kent, at present on the king's side, are set in motion toward a transfer of regard. . . . The construction of Scene iv is poor. Gaveston's exile is demanded, resisted, obtained; he leaves

England; Isabel entreats, and finally secures his recall; he is summoned; and, after a general pacification of kings and barons, a new resistance is threatened — all in the single scene." (E. T. McLaughlin.)

**336 : 378. cousin.** Here used for *niece*. She was Margaret de Clare, daughter of the elder Gilbert de Clare, Earl of Gloucester, and Johanna of Acre, daughter of King Edward I. She was married to Gaveston in 1307.

**338.** The scene, Dyce suggests, is in a hall in Gloucester house.

**339 : 55. to form a verb.** A slang phrase meaning *to put a thing neatly; to say the right thing*.

**341 : 20. Æque tandem.** Justly at length. The meaning is that Gaveston, the canker, will finally get justice, and be killed. — **28. Undique mors est.** On all sides death.

**345 : 143. the broad seal.** "A brief, or letters patent, under the Great Seal, authorizing a person to collect alms for a particular purpose." (O. W. Tancock.)

**346 : 168. Valois.** This title is not accurately used as Isabella's three brothers (Louis X, Philip V, Charles IV) did not belong to the house of Valois. Her cousin (Philip IV of Valois) ascended the throne in 1328. — **185. this jig.** This song is taken almost entirely from Fabyan's *Chronicle*, p. 420. It does not occur in Holinshed. — **192. Wigmore shall fly.** Wigmore (Castle) shall be sold. This property of the Mortimer family was in Hereford, on the Welsh border.

**348 : 254. the only heir.** In reality her two sisters were also heiresses in equal right.

**349.** The scene is in the neighbourhood of Tynemouth Castle. — **5. of policy.** In deceit, in craft. — **22-23. that Dead Sea . . . Mortimer.** An erroneous explanation of the origin of the name. A famous ancestor of the Mortimer family had been a crusader and won renown by the shores of the Dead Sea (*Mortuum Mare*). This fact and the similarity of the Latin name to *de Mortuo mari*, the Latinized form of Mortemer, a town in Normandy, readily suggested such an origin. Cunningham says, "In all Latin deeds the Mortimers are called 'de mortuo mari.'"

**350.** The scene is inside Tynemouth Castle.

**352.** Scene: the open country.

**353 : 15. Greekish strumpet.** Helen of Troy. — **29. That heading . . . other.** A soldier and nobleman would expect beheading, which was honourable; a felon would expect hanging.

**355** : 82. "**had I wist.**" "An exclamation implying repentance of a rash deed." (Dyce.)

**357.** The scene is laid near Deddington or Warwick. — 5. **Centre . . . bliss.** "The meaning is: Must this day, which was to be, which seemed to be, the point on which all bliss centred, since on it I was to see the King, must this day be the end of my life? What a melancholy contrast! The very thought of the *bliss* bids him urge Pembroke's men to speed to the King." (O. W. Tancock.) Cf. IV, vi, 61-62.

**358.** The scene is near Boroughbridge, in Yorkshire. — 16. **mag-nanimity.** Cf. the classical use of this word, as in the *Æneid*, VI, 649, and III, 704. Here it means the courage of a man superior to all control. — 27. **steel it.** Try this matter with our swords; compare, *try our steel.*

**359. the Elder Spenser.** This scene represents the elder Spenser as a stranger, introduced to the King by his son, although actually he must have been well known to him, as he was one of the most influential of the barons.

**360** : 66. **Sib.** According to Wagner, "An endearing abbreviation of Isabel." More probably an abbreviation of *gossip*.

**362** : 145. **merely.** Of my pure love, and for no other reason.

**365.** The scene is laid in another part of the battle-field. — 10. **in regard of.** In care for; having regard to.

**366** : 25. **Winchester.** The elder Spenser, who was Earl of Winchester. — 36-37. **can ragged stony walls . . . Heaven?** Cf. the lines of Lovelace:

"Stone walls do not a prison make,  
Nor iron bars a cage."

**367** : 56. **clap so close.** Strike so secretly.

**368.** The scene is in the neighbourhood of the Tower of London. — Scene ii is in Paris.

**370** : 44. **not I.** "I will not advance my standard against the King my father." (O. W. Tancock.) — **I trow.** I assure you.

**371** : 66. **to bid . . . a base.** To challenge to a race or encounter. The phrase probably refers to the old game of prisoner's base. — The scene is an apartment in the King's palace at Westminster. — 3. **uncontrolled.** The word refers to Edward, not to friends.

**373.** The scene is in the neighbourhood of Harwich.

**374.** The scene is in the neighbourhood of Bristol. — 6. **rein-force.** The word is here used in the sense of *encourage, hearten*, rather than in the modern sense of strength by reinforcements.

**375 : 14. of all unkind.** Most unnatural of all. — **26. be not . . . suspect.** Be not found walking alone (lest thereby you fall a victim of foul play), because of suspicion against you. — **10-27. This way he fled . . . thy walks.** This soliloquy is introduced for the purpose of informing the audience of the views and character of Kent.

**376 : 60. Catiline.** The allusion is merely general abuse.

**377 : 79. the prince.** The King. — **81. Rice ap Howell.** Holinshed, p. 339, says, "Lord Henry, Earl of Leicester, and the Lord William de la Zouche and one Rice ap Howell that was lately delivered out of the Tower where he was prisoner" were sent by the Queen into Wales "to see if they might find means to apprehend the King by help of their acquaintance in those parts, all three of them having lands thereabouts." — The scene is in the abbey of Neath.

**378 : 19. Thou suck'dst . . . Aristotle.** Plato, and particularly Aristotle, were read in Latin translations at the Universities during the Middle Ages. Not many in England knew Greek at that time. — **26. sit secure.** Be free from care. Cf. *Judges* xviii. 7. — **34. sore.** A dissyllable.

**379 : 50. cannot.** Cannot do. The verb is here used absolutely. — **53-54. Quem . . . jacentem.** Seneca, *Thyestes*, 613. — **61-62. O day the last . . . misfortune.** Cf. note on III, i, 5.

**382.** The scene is an apartment in Kenilworth Castle.

**383 : 45. Tisiphon.** Cf. Virgil, *Æneid*, VI, 571:

"Tisiphone . . . torvosque sinistra  
Intentans angues."

**384 : 84. Trussel.** Sir William Trussel was proctor for the parliament which met at Westminster on January 7, 1327. A few days later he renounced homage and fealty to the King, who had already given his consent to the election of his son and who was then in confinement at Kenilworth.

**385 : 115. protect.** Be Protector of. "The King's fear and love for his son," as Mr. Tancock remarks, "are delicately used to draw the sympathy of the audience and to prevent his complaints from being too wearisome and unmanly."

**387.** The scene is an apartment in the royal palace. — **7. wolf.** "The allusion is to the Greek proverb, τὸν λύκον τῶν ὥτων ἔχω." (Wagner.) *Wolf* refers to the King. — **11. to erect your son.** To make your son king.

**391.** The scene is inside Kenilworth Castle. — **17. air of life.** Breath of life. Latin, *aura vite*. — **19. dungeon.** It is conjectured

that the castle in which the King was confined was Berkeley, though he was undoubtedly removed thence later to Kenilworth. His description of the vault or dungeon would seem to apply to the former.

**392 : 23. old Edward.** He was only forty-three at the time of his murder. Stow often speaks of him as the "old king."

**393.** The scene is an apartment in the royal palace. — **6. this letter.** The story of the ambiguous Latin line, as Professor Ward (*Hist. of Dram. Lit.*, I, 198) points out, is "taken from a contemporary account of Thomas de la Moor, who was an eyewitness of Edward II's resignation." Probably Marlowe derived it from Holinshed.

**394 : 14. being dead.** He being dead. — **31. poison flowers.** Cf. *The Jew of Malta*, III, v, 65-106, and IV, vi, 45-49. Poisoning was a fashionable crime in Marlowe's time. Gifts, such as flowers, were ingeniously employed to poison persons at a distance. — **32. To strangle . . . throat.** Lawn is a piece or strip of linen. "There was a species of torture in which a man was bound tightly to a frame, his nostrils were plugged, and a jet of water was sent down his throat carrying with it a strip of linen, which was drawn out from time to time to prevent complete suffocation. Cf. *Engl. Hist. Review*, April, 1889, p. 237. Such a mode of stopping the breath would have left no mark. For a notice of a different kind of water torture, compare *Aurora Leigh*, p. 17." (O. W. Tancock.)

**395 : 60-62. onus . . . provinciam.** These are Ciceronianisms, taking off the precise Latinity of the puritan, *i.e.* purist who affects them. — **68. Major . . . nocere.** Cf. Ovid, *Metam.*, VI, 195. — The scene is now at Westminster.

**397.** The scene is within Berkeley Castle.

**398 : 25. lock.** *Lake* in the old edition. *Lock* is suggested by Mr. Bullen, who also thinks *lake* may mean the dungeon. — "A change of scene is supposed to the dungeon. The actor who personated Lightborn most probably drew a curtain and discovered the captive king." (Dyce.)

**399 : 71. bed.** It is not clear just what were the stage arrangements in this scene. There was very probably no bed in the dungeon. Dyce suggests that the bed was thrust upon the stage from the wing, after Gurney and Matrevis withdrew.

**401.** The scene is an apartment in the royal palace.

**402 : 10. Jove's huge tree.** The oak. A common allusion in the Elizabethan dramatists. Cf. *As you Like It*, III, ii, 218.

## GLOSSARY

Terms readily found in an unabridged dictionary, an encyclopædia, or a gazetteer are for the most part not included in this list.

- Abide**, pay for.
- Acantha**, probably *Acanthus*, near Mount Athos.
- Adamant**, magnet, loadstone.
- Again**, against.
- Albanus**, Pietro d' Abano (*circa* 1250-1316), an Italian physician and alchemist.
- Almain**, German.
- Amorous**, effeminate.
- Answerable** (to), in keeping (with).
- Aphorism**, a maxim of medical art.
- Argier**, Algiers.
- Argue**, prove, manifest.
- Artier**, artery.
- Asant'**, Zante.
- Assure**, pledge; solemnly promise.
- Astracism**, constellation.
- Avouch**, maintain as true, make good.
- Azamor**, a maritime town of Morocco.
- Bagdeth**, Bagdad.
- Baliol**, probably a misprint for *Belial*.
- Balsera**, Bassora or Basra, a city on the Shat-el-Arab, fifty-five miles from the Persian Gulf.
- Bandy**, exchange blows; contend.
- Basilisk**, "pieces of ordnance, so called from their fancied resemblance to the fabulous serpent of that name" (Cunningham).
- Bazzo**, bashaw; now written pasha.
- Baston**, stick, cudgel.
- Belcher**, a facetious term — probably = spitfire.
- Belgia**, Lower Germany, or the Netherlands, in which Hainault, a part of modern Belgium, was included.
- Beyers**, refreshments taken between meals.
- Biledull**, Beled-ul-Jerid (the land of dates), situated south of the Barbary States.
- Bills**, prescriptions or advertisements.
- Blubbered**, swollen with grief — a word formerly not used with a ridiculous significance.
- Bombard**, the earliest kind of cannon.
- Borno**, Bornu, a region in the eastern part of Central Africa.
- Boss**, a fat woman.
- Bottle**, bundle.
- Brave**, gaily dressed, fine.
- Brave**, scorn, insult.
- Britainy**, Britain.
- But**, only; for no other reason than.
- Byather**, Biafra, on the African west coast, north of the equator.
- Call**, offer salvation to. Cf. *St. Matthew*, xxii. 14, "Many are called, but few chosen."
- Carbonado**, grilled or broiled piece of flesh.
- Case**, couple.
- Cast**, consider; conjecture; plot.
- Catzerie**, roguery.
- Cavalieros**, mounds for the mounting of cannon.
- Cazzo** (Italian), a vulgar Italian oath; a base fellow.
- Chafe**, quarrel.
- Chafer**, a brazier.
- Champion**, an old spelling of *champaign*, level, open country.
- Channel**, gutter; neck or throat.
- Chirke**, Chirk, a parish in Wales near the border.
- Coal-black Sea**, the Black Sea.



**Compass**, cheat.  
**Competitor**, companion, associate, sharer.  
**Conceit**, fancy, imagination; thought, mind; anticipation.  
**Consort**, band.  
**Controulment**, control, check, restraint.  
**Convertite**, convert.  
**Countenance**, importance.  
**Counterbuff**, beat, insult.  
**Countervail**, equal.  
**Covent**, convent.  
**Cross**, a coin having a cross-shaped impression on one side.  
**Crossbite**, to cheat in return.  
**Cullion**, scoundrel; base fellow.  
**Curse**, excommunicate.  
**Curstly**, crossly.  
**Custom**, enter at the custom-house, or pay the duty.

**Dalliance**, idle delay.  
**Dardania**, Troy.  
**Dated**, allotted.  
**Dead**, kill.  
**Diametrically**, diametrically.

**Earn**, yearn; be sad.  
**Ebena**, probably a personification of *Even*, *Evening*.  
**Ecstasy**, violent emotion.  
**Egregious**, eminent, distinguished.  
**Emlden**, Emden, a town of ancient East Friesland.  
**Empale**, enclose, encircle.  
**Entertain**, receive into service.  
**Entreat**, treat.  
**Envy**, hate.  
**Erring**, wandering.  
**Exercise**, sermon.  
**Exigent**, need, extremity

**Fact**, deed.  
**Fear**, make fear, frighten.  
**Fleet**, float.  
**Foil**, defeat; dishonour.  
**Foil**, to defile.  
**Follower**, successor.  
**Forslow**, to waste, neglect.  
**Fustian**, nonsensical jargon; also, a punning perversion of *Faustus*.

**Gaudy**, adorned, ornamented.  
**Gear**, business.  
**Gentleman**, nobleman.  
**Glozing**, flattering.  
**Gorgon**, Demogorgon.  
**Grantland**, Greenland.  
**Gravel**, puzzle.  
**Guallatia**, probably Gualata, a large oasis in Sahara, between Morocco and Timbaktu.  
**Happily**, haply.  
**Haught**, lofty.  
**Hay**, hey-de-guy, a rural dance.  
**Hey-pass**, juggler, from the term *hey-pass* employed by jugglers.  
**Hook**, spear.  
**Horse-courser**, horse-dealer.  
**Hypostasis**, sediment.

**Ill**, ill deed.  
**Imbecility**, incapacity.  
**Impartial**, unkind — misused for *partial*.  
**Imprecation**, prayer.  
**Incivil**, brutal.  
**Incony**, dainty, sweet.  
**Injurious**, insolent, offensive.

**Jaertis**, the Jaxartes River, now the Syr Darya in Bokhara.  
**Jerome's Bible**, the Vulgate or Latin version of the Scriptures attributed to St. Jerome, by whom most of it was written.  
**Jet**, strut.  
**Jig**, merry or satirical verses.  
**John the Great**, Prester John, a fabulous Christian monarch of the twelfth century.  
**Jubaltèr**, Gibraltar.

**Kern**, an irregular foot-soldier.  
**Killingworth**, Kenilworth.  
**Knave's acre**, Poultney Street, chiefly inhabited by dealers in old goods and glass bottles.

**Lady Vanity**, an allegorical character in the old moralities.  
**Lake**, ditch.  
**Lantchidol**, "Lantchidol is that part of the Indian Ocean which

- lies between Java and New Holland (Australia) " (Broughton).  
**Leave**, cease.  
**Let**, hinder.  
**Linstock**, the stick holding the match to set off a cannon.  
**Looseness**, unrestrained conduct.  
**Lown**, rascal; a variant of *loon*.  
**Lure**, probably means light. But compare the term in falconry, meaning a decoy.  
**Mail**, bag or trunk. Fr. *malle*.  
**Make a leg**, to bow.  
**Malgrado**, in spite of (Ital.).  
**Manage**, wield; conduct, lead.  
**Manico**, Manica, or Manika, a district of the Mozambique territory; Mashonaland.  
**Mare Major(e)**, the old name of the Black Sea — so called by Marco Polo.  
**Mare Rosso**, the Red Sea.  
**Mate**, confound, humble. Cf. *checkmate*.  
**May**, can.  
**Merchant**, trading vessel.  
**Merely**, purely.  
**Mithridate**, an antidote for poisons.  
**Motion**, mention.  
**Move**, exasperate.  
**Muffles**, a term used depreciatively of the Swiss and Germans.  
**Muschatto**, mustachio, moustache.  
**Natolia**, Anatolia, a large region of Asiatic Turkey, nearly identical with Asia Minor.  
**Need**, must.  
**New Temple**, the new building of the Templars, modelled on the temple near the Holy Sepulchre, Jerusalem.  
**Oblia**, Olbia, a Greek colony in Scythia, now Stomogil, on the river Bug, Russia.  
**on cai me on**, the Greek *ὄν καὶ μὴ ὄν* of Aristotle, "being and not being."  
**Once**, once for all.  
**Orminius' Mount**, probably Armenyes in Transylvania.  
**Ostry**, inn, hostelry.  
**Outlanish**, foreign.  
**Outrageous**, beyond all bounds.  
**Overpeer**, look down upon.  
**Paramour**, mistress — a term formerly used without any disreputable meaning.  
**Pass**, care; be moved.  
**Passionate**, agitated by strong feeling; sorrowful; compassionate.  
**Peevish**, wayward.  
**Phyteus**, probably a form of *Pythius*.  
**Pioneer**, the old form of *pioneer*.  
**Plage**, region, clime.  
**Plainer**, complainer, one who makes plaint.  
**Plate**, a silver coin.  
**Podolia**, a Russian province.  
**Port**, gate.  
**Portague**, a Portuguese gold coin.  
**Portingale**, Portugal.  
**Portly**, stately.  
**Practice**, artifice.  
**Presently**, at once.  
**Prest**, ready.  
**Pretend**, intend; portend.  
**Prevail**, avail.  
**Prevent**, anticipate.  
**Proceed**, make progress; prosper.  
**Profess**, adopt; be a teacher of.  
**Progne**, Procne.  
**Proof**, point.  
**Propterea quod**, because.  
**Prorox**, viceroy.  
**Protest**, swear.  
**Purchase**, plunder, loot.  
**Pyramides**, probably obelisks, although formerly it also meant the spires of churches.  
**Quandoquidem**, seeing that.  
**Quiet**, fixed.  
**Quit**, acquitted; free (of blame).  
**Quite**, requite.  
**Rack**, torture.  
**Racking**, scudding.  
**Raze**, graze, touch.  
**Reave**, take away, steal.  
**Rebate**, blunt.

**Rebourn**, pay back, hand over.  
**Reburs**, repair.  
**Rebursant**, -do.  
**Rebus**, to desert.  
**Reby**, require; long and a little.  
**Rebursant**, made to repair.  
**Rebus**, humbling inform, satisfy.  
**Rebus**, consideration regard for the particular circumstances, or for the difference in circumstances.  
**Reb**, remain.  
**Rebus**, retreat.  
**Rebursed**, sent back.  
**Rebursant**, in Africa, where Nemeas had a temple.  
**Rhodon**, *Redia*, in the Duchy of Saxe-Altenburg.  
**Rho**, *Riza* or *Rize*, a town near Astrakhan.  
**Rivo Cantillano**, an exclamation used at drinking bouts.  
**Running**, quickly prepared, hasty.  
**Rutter**, tripper, ritter.  
**Saba**, Salween; the queen of Sheba.  
**Sarrell**, seraglio, harem.  
**Scalonia**, Ascalon.  
**Scumble**, collect, scrape.  
**Sclavonian**, natives of Scalonia (Ascalon).  
**Secur**, a slang term for chastise.  
**Several**, separate.  
**Shadow**, image forth.  
**Shall**, is sure to, will certainly.  
**Shaver**, a term of belittlement or contempt originally applied to priests with shaven crown.  
**Shot**, musketeers.  
**Should**, would certainly.  
**Silverlings**, silver coins. Cf. *Isatah* vii. 23.  
**Snickle**, a noose; hangman's halter.  
**So**, if; if so be; provided that.  
**Sollar**, attle; loft.  
**Sonnet**, a particular set of notes on the trumpet or cornet, different from a flourish; a sennet.  
**Sort**, turn; a small company.  
**Stand**, insist.  
**State**, majesty; power: person of state.

**State**, establish.  
**Stomach**, and a schinger, meat is a cure for ice.  
**Stay**, await, stay for, break in, stand still.  
**Still**, constantly, incessantly; always.  
**Still**, still.  
**Stuba**, a confluent of the river Danube.  
**Stomach**, feel anger at, take offence.  
**Steep**, humiliate, put down.  
**Sure**, assured.  
**Taint**, touch in tilting.  
**Tall**, brave, bold.  
**Tanti**, so much for that 'or them.  
**Terminus**, terminus, limit.  
**Terrene Sea**, *Terrene Main*, the Mediterranean.  
**Tessla**, now Tesegdeft, a town of Morocco, south of Mogador.  
**Timeless**, untimely; premature.  
**Tire**, prey, seize; a term in falconry.  
**To**, equal to.  
**Tattered**, tattered.  
**Towardness**, fitness—the opposite of *frowardness*.  
**Train**, stratagem.  
**Train**, entice, lure, entangle.  
**Trier**, Treves.  
**Triumph**, tournament.  
**Trowl**, roll.  
**Tyras**, the Dniester River.  
**Ure**, practice.  
**Vail**, lower, humble; lower the flag.  
**Valurous**, valuable.  
**Vanholt**, Anhalt.  
**Weed**, garment.  
**Wertenberg**, Wittenberg.  
**When**, an exclamation of impatience.  
**When as**, when.  
**While**, until.  
**Will**, desire.  
**Yet**, even now.  
**Zoacum**, a tree described in the Koran, Chap. xxvii.



- Rejeem**, pay back, hand over.  
**Rejuce**, repair.  
**Regiment**, rule.  
**Remit**, neglect.  
**Reny**, abjure; deny one's faith.  
**Resistless**, unable to resist.  
**Resolve**, ~~dissolve~~; inform, satisfy.  
**Respect**, consideration; regard for the particular circumstances, or for the difference in circumstances.  
**Rest**, remain.  
**Retire**, retreat.  
**Retorqued**, bent back.  
**Rhamnus**, in Attica, where Nemesis had a temple.  
**Rhodes**, Roda, in the Duchy of Saxe-Altenburg.  
**Riso**, Riza or Rize, a town near Trebizond.  
**Rivo Castiliano**, an exclamation used at drinking bouts.  
**Running**, quickly prepared, hasty.  
**Rutter**, trooper, ritter.  
  
**Saba**, Sabæa; the queen of Sheba.  
**Sarell**, seraglio, harem.  
**Scalonia**, Ascalon.  
**Scamble**, collect, scrape.  
**Sclavonian**, natives of Scalonia (Ascalon).  
**Scour**, a slang term for *chastise*.  
**Several**, separate.  
**Shadow**, image forth.  
**Shall**, is sure to, will certainly.  
**Shaver**, a term of belittlement or contempt originally applied to priests with shaven crown.  
**Shot**, musketeers.  
**Should**, would certainly.  
**Silverlings**, silver coins. Cf. *Isaiah* vii. 23.  
**Snickle**, a noose; hangman's halter.  
**Sod**, if; if so be; provided that.  
**Sollar**, attic; loft.  
**Sonnet**, a particular set of notes on the trumpet or cornet, different from a flourish; a sennet.  
**Sort**, turn; a small company.  
**Stand**, insist.  
**State**, majesty; power person of state.  
  
**State**, establish.  
**Stavesacre**, kind of larkspur, used as a cure for lice.  
**Stay**, await, stay for; break off; stand still.  
**Still**, constantly, unceasingly; always.  
**Still**, distil.  
**Stoka**, a confluent of the river Danube.  
**Stomach**, feel anger at, take offence.  
**Stoop**, humiliate, put down.  
**Sure**, affianced.  
  
**Taint**, touch in tilting.  
**Tall**, brave, bold.  
**Tanti**, so much for that (or them).  
**Terminine**, terminus, limit.  
**Terrene Sea**, **Terrene Main**, the Mediterranean.  
**Tesella**, now Tesegdelt, a town of Morocco, south of Mogador.  
**Timeless**, untimely; premature.  
**Tire**, prey, seize; a term in falconry.  
**To**, equal to.  
**Tottered**, tattered.  
**Towardness**, fitness — the opposite of *frowardness*.  
**Train**, stratagem.  
**Train**, entice, lure, entangle.  
**Trier**, Treves.  
**Triumph**, tournament.  
**Trowl**, roll.  
**Tyras**, the Dniester River.  
  
**Ure**, practice.  
  
**Vail**, lower, humble; lower the flag.  
**Valurous**, valuable.  
**Vanholt**, Anhalt.  
  
**Weed**, garment.  
**Wertenberg**, Wittenberg.  
**When**, an exclamation of impatience.  
**When as**, when.  
**While**, until.  
**Will**, desire.  
  
**Yet**, even now.  
  
**Zoacum**, a tree described in the Koran, Chap. xxvii.









